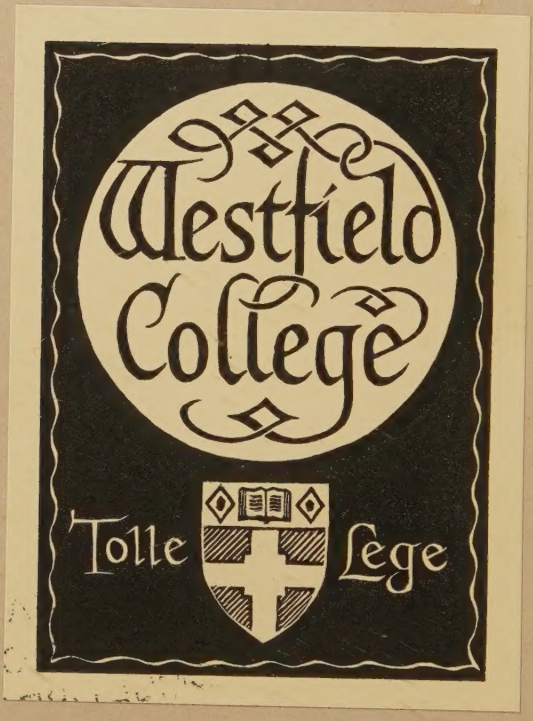
A HANDBOOK OF PRESENT-DAY ENGLISH

II

ENGLISH ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX

1

Author Kruisinga, E.
Class No. PE 1105 (2:i)
Accession No. 11208



QM Library
23 1242371 2

WITHDRAWN
FROM STOCK
QMUL LIBRARY

11208
26.4.30

ENGLISH ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX

1

A HANDBOOK OF PRESENT-DAY ENGLISH

BY

E. KRUISINGA

PART II

ENGLISH ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX

1

FOURTH EDITION

KEMINK EN ZOON
OVER DEN DOM TE UTRECHT
1925

First published in 1911. Second Edition in 1915. Third Edition in 1922. Fourth Edition (in three volumes) in 1925.

Preface to the Third Edition

When the first edition of this book was published, I intended to add a volume treating of the phenomena in Modern English that may be called idiomatic rather than grammatical. It has been found, however, that a book on this subject, if scientific, would result in a series of isolated studies on the remnants of earlier systems of grammar. What is useful from a practical point of view may best be treated by reference to the native language of the student, as may be seen from such a book as Krüger's *Schwierigkeiten*, or my own smaller *Grammar and Idiom*.

The present volume aims at giving a scientific description of the structure of Present English. For the reason given in the preface to the preceding volume, on *English Sounds*, no historical treatment has been attempted. It seems to the author that students of language have cause to apply to themselves the warning which Professor Dicey addressed to students of law in the Preface to his *Lectures on the Law of the Constitution*, when he advised them "to consider whether the habit of looking too exclusively at the steps by which the constitution has been developed does not prevent students from paying sufficient attention to the law of the constitution as it now actually exists."

Although the book has remained substantially unchanged, its size has increased considerably. In the second edition a new chapter, on *Sentence-Structure*, was added; also some *excursus*, in which related constructions were compared. This method has been applied more frequently in the present edition, which is further enlarged by a fuller treatment of *Prepositions*. The chapter on *Sentence-Structure* has been largely re-written, and nearly all the other chapters have been considerably altered.

In deference to the wish expressed by some reviewers I have

generally given the sources of my quotations. I have not invariably been able to do so, however. In most of such cases it is quite evident that the sentence has been taken from a newspaper, although the reference has been lost; and, after all, it is of little importance, for nobody will surely want to verify these, although no doubt it may make a difference whether a passage is quoted from the *Athenaeum* or the *Daily Mail*. Other sentences, especially those illustrating spoken English, have been noted down as they were heard from English speakers; apart from other objections it would naturally be useless to give the names of the speakers. The conviction that these quotations represent good English must proceed from the confidence the reader has in the judgment of the writer, or from his own knowledge.

Even in the quotations from printed sources the learner must largely rely on the writer's knowledge of living English, and his ability to distinguish between what is literary and colloquial, serious or jocular, standard English or vulgar English. I trust, however, that no competent critic will find any quotations that are seriously misinterpreted, although differences of opinion must naturally arise when it comes to deciding whether a construction is permissible in literary English or is only allowed in familiar conversation.

So many students of Modern English grammar, both friends and strangers, have shown their interest in the work, suggesting corrections, pointing out difficulties that had been overlooked, or supplying useful quotations, that it would be impossible to mention them all by name. But they may be assured that I am grateful for their cooperation. My indebtedness to Mr. J. H. Schutt, however, is too great to be included in this general acknowledgement. Soon after the first few sheets had been printed he undertook to read the proofs, and there is hardly a sheet but has been improved and added to by his suggestions.

Amersfoort, January 1922. E. KRUISINGA.

Preface to the Fourth Edition

The short time that has elapsed since the publication of the preceding edition has naturally prevented great changes. The first volume, on Verbs, however, has been altered in many ways. I have tried to show that the non-finite verb in present English is equal in importance to the finite verb, if, indeed, this distinction is to be upheld at all. Some may be inclined to charge me with over-refinement in the making of distinctions. But scholars know that even the minutest distinction may be of value. Thus the distinction of an apparent and a genuine accusative with infinitive enables us to account for the use of the nominative with infinitive; it is also the explanation of the use of the prepositional accusative with infinitive after such verbs as *to ask* or *to beg* (see § 387).

Such minuteness is also valuable for the student of historical grammar. The distinction just mentioned causes us to see that the genuine accusative with infinitive is in most cases a construction of very recent origin. We find here an illustration of the truth of a remark by Professor Meillet, *Linguistique historique et linguistique générale* (p. 5): L'observation des faits actuels est encore plus capable d'expliquer le passé que l'étude du passé d'expliquer le present.

On the other hand, I hope it will be found that I have made complete use of the results of historical study as far as they really help to explain the facts of the present language. It will be evident, at any rate, that historical language-study has been decisive with regard to the method according to which the facts have been presented.

Some of the problems dealt with here have been treated at greater length in articles which have appeared in the periodical

English Studies. When the first two hundred pages of the book had been printed, I met my friend Mr. H. Poutsma who offered to read the proofs. Those who know his *Grammar of Late Modern English* will understand how greatly the present book has benefited by his knowledge and acuteness. His readiness is one more proof of his disinterested love of learning, but at the same time of a friendship which I value very highly.

Amersfoort, October 1924. E. K.

CONTENTS

THE PARTS OF SPEECH

Page

Verbs . . . . . 3—357

Simple Forms . . . . . 3— 25

The Finite Verb: Endings of the present and of the preterite. Imperative. Subjunctive.

The Non-finite Verb: Gerund and Present Participle. Past Participle. Infinitive.

Irregular Verbs. Forms and Verbs used in literary English only.

Compound Forms . . . . . 25— 30

Tense. Aspect. Mood. Voice. Group-Verbs.

Conjugation of the Verb *to call* . . . . . 30— 31

Use of the Finite Verbal Forms . . . . . 32—125

Persons 32

Tenses . . . . . 32— 54

Time and Tense. The Present Tense. The Preterite. The modal Preterite. The Perfect. The Pluperfect. The modal Pluperfect. The Future Tenses. The modal Future. Other Forms for the Future.

The Tenses Compared . . . . . 54— 58

Present and Preterite. Present and Future. Present and Perfect. Perfect and Preterite. Pluperfect and Preterite. Perfect and Perfect Future.

Concord of Tense . . . . . 59— 64

Page

Aspect . . . . . 64— 91

Imperfective and perfective aspect of verbs. The iterative, the frequentative, and the inchoative aspect. Grammatical forms to express differences of aspect in various modern languages. Auxiliaries of aspect. Progressive. Progressive and Non-progressive forms compared.

Moods . . . . . 92—108

Imperative. Subjunctive: 1. as an Optative. 2. as a Potential. Concord: Character of the Subjunctive. The Emphatic Mood. The Indicative.

Voice . . . . . 108—125

Verbs with one plain object. Passive constructions with *there* and *it*. Doubtful objects. Objects of an infinitive with *to*. Object and Predicative Adjunct. Prepositional Object. Two Objects. Object and Prepositional Adjunct. Plain Object and Prepositional Object. Impersonal Passive. Use of the Passive. Passive with *to become* and *to get*.

Use of the Non-Finite Verb . . . . . 125—276

Plain Infinitive . . . . . 125—141

Functions in the Sentence . . . . . 125—135

With auxiliaries. As an Adjunct to Verbs. Accusative-with-Infinitive. Infinitive in exclamatory sentences.

Tense, Aspect, and Voice . . . . . 135—137

Subject of the Plain Infinitive . . . . . 137—138

Apparent Plain Infinitive. . . . . 138—139

Character of the Plain Infinitive . . . . . 140—141

Infinitive with to . . . . . 141—185

Functions in the Sentence . . . . . 141—172

Adjunct. Object. Subject and Nominal Predicate. Plain Accusative-with-Infinitive. Nominative-with-Infinitive. Prepositional Accusative-and-Infinitive. Free Infinitive. Infinitive in exclamations.

Page

Subject of the Infinitive with *to* . . . . . 172—173
Tenses of the Infinitive with *to* . . . . . 173—178
Aspect of the Infinitive with *to* . . . . . 178—179
Voice of the Infinitive with *to* . . . . . 179—184
Character of the Infinitive with *to* . . . . . 184—185

Gerund . . . . . 185—211
Functions in the Sentence . . . . . 185—190
Subject. Nominal predicate. Object. Prepositional adjunct. In free adjuncts. Non-prepositional adjunct.
Subject of the Gerund . . . . . 190—201
Tenses of the Gerund . . . . . 202—204
Voice of the Gerund . . . . . 204—207
Character of the Gerund . . . . . 207—211

Infinitive with to and Gerund Compared . . . . 212—229
Infinitive only. Gerund only. Both Infinitive and Gerund.

Verbal Nouns and Subordinate Clauses . . . . . 229—231

Participles . . . . . 231—266
Attributive Use . . . . . 231—235
Predicative Use . . . . . 235—243
Present Participle. Past Participle. Accusative-and-Present Participle. Nominative-and-Present Participle. Accusative-and-Past Participle.

Infinitive and Participle Compared . . . . . 243—250
Infinitive and Present Participle. Passive Infinitive and Past Participle.
Participles in Free Adjuncts . . . . . 250—260
Related Participle. Absolute Participle. Unrelated Participle. Development of participles into prepositions and conjunctions.
Tense and Voice of the Participle . . . . . 260—264
Character of the Participles . . . . . 264—266

Gerund and Participle Compared . . . . . 266—276

Auxiliaries . . . . . 276—357
Classes of Auxiliaries. Preterites. Auxiliaries

Page

without an accompanying Verb. Repetition of Auxiliaries. Auxiliaries as independent verbs . 276—288
To Be . . . . . 288—294
Can and Could . . . . . 294—297
To Dare . . . . . 297—299
To Do . . . . . 299—306
To Have . . . . . 306—316
To Let . . . . . 316—318
May and Might . . . . . 318—324
Must . . . . . 324—328
Need . . . . . 328—330
Ought . . . . . 330—331
Shall and *Should* in principal clauses . . . 331—337
Shall and *Should* in subordinate clauses . . 337—345
Functions of *shall* and *may* in subordinate clauses . . . . . 345—346
Have, Must, Shall Compared . . . . . 346—347
Used . . . . . 347—348
Will and Would . . . . . 348—354
Can, Will, Used Compared . . . . . 354—357

PHONETIC SYMBOLS

Vowels and Diphthongs

Strong-Stressed

ɑ	*in*	fɑm	*farm*	ai	*in*	main	*mine*		
i	*in*	bit	*beat*	au	*in*	haus	*house*		
ì	*in*	nìt	*knit*	ɔi	*in*	bɔi	*boy*		
u	*in*	fud	*food*	ei	*in*	neim	*name*		
ù	*in*	fùt	*foot*	ou	*in*	roud	*road*		
ɔ	*in*	lɔ	*law*	iə	*in*	hiər	*hear*		
əə	*in*	bəəd	*bird*	ɛə	*in*	kɛər	*care*		
e	*in*	bred	*bread*	uə	*in*	puər	*poor*		
æ	*in*	mæt	*mat*	ɔə	*in*	drɔər	*drawer*		
o	*in*	hot	*hot*						
ʌ	*in*	nʌt	*nut*						

Weak-Stressed

ï	*in*	krïeit	*create*
ĭ	*in*	leidĭ	*lady*
ŏu	*in*	felŏu	*fellow*
ŭ	*in*	væljŭ	*value*
ə	*in*	entər	*enter*
		əgou	*ago*

Consonants and Vowellikes

ŋ	*in*	siŋ	*sing*	þ	*in*	þin	*thin*
š	*in*	šu	*shoe*	ð	*in*	ðouz	*those*
ž	*in*	vìžən	*vision*				

THE PARTS OF SPEECH

1.

VERBS

SIMPLE FORMS

1. We distinguish the forms of:

a. the finite verb.

b. the non-finite verb.

The Finite Verb

2. A regular English verb has two endings for the finite forms:

a. for the third person singular of the present tense, indicative mood.

b. for the preterite tense.

3. In literary English there are further forms for the second and third persons of the singular of the present tense, and the second person singular of the preterite, all in the indicative mood.

Present Tense

4. The ending of the third person singular of the present tense (indicative mood) is:

1. [ĭz] when the verb ends in a hissing-sound: [hi wìšĭz, reidžĭz] *he wishes, rages.*

2. [z] when the verb ends in a voiced sound (not a hiss): [hi kəlz, steiz, entəz] *he calls, stays, enters.*

3. [s] when the verb ends in breathed sound (not a hiss): [hi houps] *he hopes.*

On the phonetic changes words undergo when [z] is added, see *English Sounds*, on *Glides* (ch. 2 and 4).

5. These forms are called forms of the third person, although there is only one other, unchanged, form. The latter is called first or second person according to the pronoun-subject *(I wish, you wish)*.

6. In literary English, especially in the language of the Bible and in poetry, the present tense of the indicative mood has two other endings:

1. [-ĭst] in the second person singular (with the pronoun *thou)*;
2. [-ĭþ] in the third person singular:

[ðau kʌmĭst, hi kʌmĭþ] *thou comest, he cometh.*

The endings are also [st, þ], especially in poetry when the metre requires it.

Preterite

7. The preterite is neutral with regard to person. The ending for the tense is:

1. [ĭd] when the verb ends in [d, t]: [end, endĭd; weit, weitĭd] *end, ended; wait, waited.*
2. [d] when the verb ends in a voiced sound (not *d*): [kɔl, kɔld; bæg, bægd; stei, steid; entə, entəd] *call, called; bag, bagged; stay, stayed; enter, entered.*
3. [t] when the verb ends in a breathed sound (not *t*): [stop, stopt] *stop, stopped.*

1. On the loss of final consonants in the preterite, as in [ræŋt, ɑst] *ranked, asked,* see *English Sounds,* on *Assimilation in familiar English* (ch. 4).

2. On other phonetic changes see the note to 4.

3. In poetry and in the reading of the Bible and the Liturgy, the ending is often read [ĭd], or rather [id], in all cases.

8. In literary English the preterite of the indicative mood has a special ending in the second person singular, viz. [-st]. In that case the tense-ending is always [-ĭd], or [id], not [d] or [t]. Hence we hear [ðau kɔlĭdst] *thou calledst,* not [kɔldst]; also [ðau ləənĭdst, nilĭdst, tšaidĭdst] *thou learnedst, kneeledst, chidedst,* etc.

In the preterites of irregular verbs usage varies between [ĭst] and [st]: [bædst, swɛərĭst] *badst, swarest;* both forms in [ðau brɔtĭst, brɔtst] *thou brought(e)st;* [ðau sedĭst, sedst] *thou saidest, saidst;* [ðau kɑst, kɑstĭdst] *thou cast, castedst;* [ðau maitst, maitĭst] *thou mightst, mightest;* [ðau sɔĭst, sɔst] *thou sawest, sawst.*

9. Historically speaking, the threefold endings of the third person of the present and of the preterite are developments of a single ending [-ĭz; -ĭd]. It might be thought correct, therefore, to speak of a full ending [-ĭz, -ĭd] which is shortened to [-z, -d], and which, again, may be changed into [-s, -t] by assimilation to the preceding breathed consonant.

Such a statement, however, would misrepresent the facts of present English:

1. the assimilation of [z, d] to [s, t] is not a phenomenon of living English.

2. if the full ending were really the basis, we should expect [entərĭz, entərĭd] as well as [entərĭŋ], according to 12.

Imperative

10. The imperative has no ending; it is generally distinguished from the indicative by the absence of a subject. When a pronoun-subject is added the imperative may differ from the indicative by its stress on the pronoun, and by the intonation of the sentence.

Subjunctive

11. The subjunctive of the present tense differs from the indicative in having no personal endings.

The Non-Finite Verb

Form in -ing

12. The non-finite form in [-ĭŋ] *-ing* is called a *gerund* or a *present participle,* according as it is used in the function of a noun or an adjective: [kʌmĭŋ, siĭŋ] *coming, seeing.*

1. Words in syllabic *l,* such as *fiddle,* either retain this, or have non-syllabic *l;* see *English Sounds.*

2. Words spelt with final *-r* always have [-ər] before [-ĭŋ]: [entər, entərĭŋ] *enter, entering.* See 9.

Past Participle **13.** The past participle is identical in form with the preterite.

Infinitive **14.** The infinitive has no ending, but it usually has *to* prefixed to it: *to come, to see.*

The plain infinitive and the infinitive with *to* are essentially different forms.

Irregular Verbs

15. Verbs that do not form their preterite (and past participle) according to 7 are called irregular. The forms of the preterite and past participle of these verbs may or may not be identical.

The irregular verbs may be:

1. **consonantal**: *burn, burnt, burnt.*
2. **vocalic**: *break, broke, broken; bind, bound, bound.*

The consonantal verbs generally correspond to the verbs called *weak* in Old Germanic grammar, the vocalic verbs to the *strong* verbs. It would be incorrect, however, to introduce these terms into the grammar of living English.

For one thing, some of the consonantal verbs were originally strong (e. g. *burst, let*), whereas some of the vocalic verbs were originally weak (e.g. *bleed, feed*). But it seems a more serious objection that strong verbs means verbs with ablaut, and to a speaker of present English the character, not only of the vowel-change of *read*, preterite *read* and *bleed, bled*, but also of the vowel-change in these verbs and in nouns *(man, men)* is essentially the same, i.e. unintelligible.

Consonantal Verbs **16.** To the consonantal class there belong a number of verbs in a vowellike with the ending [t], although the regular ending (see 7) would have been [d].

dwell	dwelt	burn	burnt
smell	smelt	learn	learnt
spell	spelt	pen	pent 'to enclose,
spill	spilt		
spoil	spoilt		

1. The preterites and past participles of all these verbs are also found with the regular spellings *(burned*, etc.*)*. In some (perhaps in all) cases the pronunciation is also regular, viz. [-d]; [d] is certainly used in the case of *smell, spell, spill; burn, learn*, and *pen*.

But these pronunciations are generally either pedantic attempts to follow the spelling, or they are archaic. Hence the preterite and past participle of *to spoil* must be [spɔild] *spoiled* in its biblical sense *to rob*.

To pen, when it means 'to write', is always regular. The preterite *penned* 'enclosed' is also pronounced [pend], because the word is not very familiar. The past participle is most frequently [pent] because it is practically an adjective in most cases. In a clearly verbal function the participle may also be [pend] rather than [pent].

She has spoilt her children; she never refused them anything.

The dress is quite spoilt; I shall never be able to get the stain out.

But this is a people robbed and spoiled. Isaiah 42, 22.

Mr. S. has penned a biting satire on the present economic system. Athenaeum, $^{14}/_{9}$, 12.

Shortly before sunset the gorge echoed with liquid tinklings, and an aged goatherd appeared with his flock of brown sheep and tawny goats, which with the help of a wild-eyed boy he penned in another big cave on the side opposite.

Compton Mackenzie, Sylvia and Michael p. 302.

What bliss within this narrow den is pent.

Faust (translated by Taylor).

I must have a walk, I can't bear being pent up in a room all day.

With a sort of pity for those penned in the crowded room.
Benson, Thread of Gold p. 39.

2. According to Michaëlis-Jones *(Phonetic English Dictionary)* the preterite and past participle of *to earn* is [əənt, əənd] *earned.*

17. A second group of consonantal verbs consists of such as end in a vowellike followed by a *d*, including *to gird* where *r* is now silent. They also have [-t], instead of [ĭd].

[bĭld] build	[bĭlt] built
gild	gilt
bend	bent
blend	blent 'to mix'
lend	lent
rend	rent
send	sent
spend	spent
gird	girt

Two of these, *bend* and *gild*, often have a regular participle [bendĭd, gildĭd] *bended, gilded,* chiefly in figurative or poetic use *(on his bended knee, gilded spurs,* also *The Gilded Chamber,* i.e. the House of Lords). In poetry we also find *builded*

The regular form *blended* is more usual than *blent.*

I've builded a throne for my queen. Gibson.

Our teas are pure and well-blended.

A common persecution soon blended the nonconformists into one.

Her spirit, that had seemed to be caught up into some realm of ecstasy where pain was inextricably blent with joy, sank back into the material bondage.

18. Some verbs have the same form for the present, preterite, and past participle. But all these **invariable** verbs end in — *d*, or — *t*; we may look upon them as a special class of the consonantal verbs.

The following verbs are always unchanged in the preterite and past participle.

burst	set	cast	shed	cost	shred
cut	shut	hit	slit	hurt	split
let	spread	put	thrust	rid	

19. Some verbs in *-t* are occasionally found unchanged in the preterite or past participle, although they generally take [ĭd].

Thus are we knit by more than earthly ties. Frankau, One of Us, p. 4.

He bent forward, wet his fingers, picked up the coal and threw it back into the fire. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 2, § 2, p. 464.

20. Separate mention may be made of one more verb:

beat beat beaten

It differs from the other verbs of this group in having the same ending for the past participle that is chiefly found with the vocalic verbs (see 21 and 25).

The past participle *beat* [bit] is occasionally used, chiefly in the sense 'to conquer in battle', and in the phrase *dead-beat* 'utterly exhausted'.

Late in the afternoon they returned home, dead-beat. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 28 p. 351.

Vocalic Verbs **21.** The vocalic verbs, arranged according to their vowels, are the following.

1.	ai —	au —	au
	bind	bound	bound
	find	found	found
	grind	ground	ground
	wind	wound	wound
2.	ai —	ei —	ei
	lie	lay	lain
3.	ai —	ī —	ī
	bite	bit	bitten
	light	lit	lit 'to illuminate'

chide	chid	chidden 'to scold'
hide	hid	hidden
slide	slid	slidden

The past participle *bit* occurs in the phrase *the biter bit;* the past participles *chid, hid, slid,* are also found. *Slid* is perhaps more usual than *slidden. Chide* is also inflected regularly; the verb *to alight* is usually regular: *alighted;* less often the simple verb.

> The rich autumn foliage was lighted by the low sun.
> Shorthouse, Inglesant ch. 4. p. 52.
>
> One lamp was lighted. Hichens, Ambition ch. 13 p. 140.
>
> (The bird) rose again, and after several evolutions lit in the marsh away from the water. Times W. $^{19}/_{1}$, 17.

4.	ai	— o	—	o
	shine	shone		shone
5.	ai	— ɔ	—	ɔ
	fight	— fought	—	fought
6.	ai	— ou	—	ì
	drive	drove		driven
	ride	rode		ridden
	(a)rise	(a)rose		(a)risen
	smite	smote		smitten
	stride	strode		stridden
	strive	strove		striven
	thrive	throve		thriven
	write	wrote		written

The preterite is also *strided, thrived.*
Note also the ironic phrase *English as she is wrote.*

7.	ai	— u	—	ou
	fly [1])	flew		flown
8.	ai	— ʌ	—	ʌ
	strike	struck		struck

1) *To fly* 'run away' has for its preterite and past participle *fled;* see 23, 3.

9. æ — ʌ — ʌ
hang hung hung

To hang is mostly regular when it means 'to execute by hanging'.

10. e — o — o
get got got
forget forgot forgotten
tread trod trodden

11. ei — ou — ou
break broke broken

12. ei — ù — ei
forsake forsook forsaken
take took taken

13. ei — u — ei
slay slew slain

14. ɛə ɔə ɔ
bear bore borne
forbear forbore forborne
swear swore sworn
tear tore torn
wear wore worn

15. ì — æ — æ
sit sat sat
spit spat spat

16. ì — æ — i
bid [bæd] bade bidden
Also forbid forbade forbidden.

In spoken English *bid* is only used in the sense of 'to bid at an auction, to bid for votes.' In these meanings it is generally invariable, but Kirkpatrick (Handbook) gives as an example: *He bade for the picture at an auction.*

In literary English it means 'to order', with the preterite [bæd] *bade*, also *bad*, and the past participle *bidden;* the preterite and past participle *bid* are also found.

Custom bade him blow his horn.

The two Earls were bidden to be diligent.
The proposed expedition bade fair to be successful.
A haggard man bid them depart.
Eden Phillpotts, Eng. Rev. Oct. 13, p. 344.
Charlie did as he was bid. Trollope, Three Clerks p. 239.

17. ì — æ — ʌ

begin	began	begun
drink	drank	drunk
ring	rang	rung
shrink	shrank	shrunk
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
spin	span	spun
spring	sprang	sprung
stink	stank	stunk
swim	swam	swum

All these verbs also occur with [ʌ] in the preterite, e.g. *drunk*, *rung*, etc.

His wife span for domestic uses. Dobbs, Education p. 17.

18. ì — ei — ì

give	gave	given

19. ì — ʌ — ʌ

dig	dug	dug
stick	stuck	stuck
cling	clung	clung
fling	flung	flung
sling	slung	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
sting	stung	stung
string	strung	strung
swing	swung	swung
wring	wrung	wrung
win	won	won

To dig is also regular.

20. i — e — e

bleed	bled	bled
feed	fed	fed
lead	led	led
meet	met	met
[rid] read	[red] read	[red] read
speed	sped	sped

The preterite *pled* (from *to plead)*, found in Punch (Sept. 24, 1913 p. 371/1), is jocular. Ellinger, in his review (Beiblatt zur Anglia, 35 p. 372) quotes a passage from *The Literary Digest* that shows that *pled* is not necessarily jocular, but rather colloquial, or vulgar.

21. i — e — i

eat	[et] ate, eat	eaten

The preterites [eit, it] *ate, eat* are less usual.

22. i — ɔ — i

see	saw	seen

23. i — ou — ou

freeze	froze	frozen
heave	hove	hove
(be)speak	(be)spoke	(be)spoken
steal	stole	stolen
weave	wove	woven

Both *heave* and *weave* also have the regular form *heaved, weaved.* The form *hove* is only used in the nautical sense of the word.

He heaved a deep sigh.
The body was hove overboard.
The anchor was hove up for good.
The ship hove in sight.
The ship was hove to (i.e. was brought to a standstill by setting the sails so as to counteract one another).

24. ɔ — e — ɔ

fall	fell	fallen

25.	ɔ	— u —	ɔ	
	draw	drew	drawn	

Also *to withdraw.*

26.	ou	— e —	e	
	hold	held	held	
	behold	beheld	beheld	
27.	ou	— (j)u —	ou	
	blow	blew	blown	
	grow	grew	grown	
	know	knew	known	
	throw	threw	thrown	
28.	u	— o —	o	
	shoot	shot	shot	
29.	u	— ou —	ou	
	choose	— chose —	chosen	
30.	ʌ	æ	ʌ	
	run	ran	run	
31.	ʌ	ei	ʌ	
	come	came	come	

Mixed Verbs **22.** Some verbs have forms partly according to the consonantal, partly according to the vocalic verbs. We call them **mixed.**

The following verbs have a vocalic preterite and a consonantal past participle.

crow crew crowed

The verb to *crow* usually has a preterite *crowed* when it means 'to utter the cry of a cock', but *crew* is also used, in literary English. With reference to persons (children), or in a figurative sense 'to exult over', it is always *crowed.*

The black-cock deem'd it day, and crew.
The Cock crow'd lustier late and early.
The baby laughed and crowed the whole time.
I am not going to be crowed over by you.

stave stove staved

The past participle is also *stove*, as a nautical term.

This ship was too much damaged; it had to be staved ('broken up').

The fore compartment is stove in (after a collision of two ships).

(a)wake (a)woke (a)waked

The verb *to wake* also has the past participles *waked* and *woken* (rare). There is also a past participle *awoke*.

Mr. Chamberlain has waked up the country. Pilot.

In the first place Mr. Pollard considers that Mr. C. has woken us up. Pilot.

Lately he had always woken up when she came to bed. Sinister Street p. 40.

23. Some mixed verbs have forms with vowel-change and a regular consonantal ending (see 7) at the same time:

1. say [sed] said

Note that the third person singular of the Present tense is [sez] *says*.

In archaic English the second person singular of the Present Tense is regularly *sayest* [sei-ĭst,], or *sayst* [seist]; the third person singular *saith* [seþ] and [seiþ] [1]).

2. sell sold
   tell told
3. flee [2]) fled
   creep crept
   keep kept
   leap [lept] leapt, leaped; also [lipt] leaped
   sleep slept

---

1) [seiþ] in Wyld, *Teaching of Reading*, p. 79; [seist] in Montgomery, *Types of Standard English* p. 19.

2) In colloquial English *flee* is not used; *fly* is used instead in the present tense and the forms derived from it (*flying*) See 21,7.

	sweep	swept
	weep	wept
4.	hear	heard
5.	shoe	shod; also [šud] shoed

24. The following verbs show vowel-change and irregular consonantal endings.

1. cleave cleft 'to divide'

This verb also has the regular preterite and past participle [klivd] *cleaved*. There is also a preterite *clove*, and past participle *cloven*. In the Bible we find the preterite *clave*; the past participle *clove* occurs in poetry.

There is also another verb to *cleave* 'to stick to'; this is regular. But in literary English the preterite *clave* is also found.

The sections into which our society is cleft.

Our swift frigate cleaved through the water.

He struck the earth with his feet, and it clove asunder, and swallowed him.

He clave the rocks in the wilderness. Psalm 78, 16.

I cleaved to a cause that I felt to be pure and true.

Many of the Danes clave to their ancient worship.

His tongue clave to his mouth.

deal	dealt
dream	[dremt] dreamt or dreamed
feel	felt
lean	[lent] leant or leaned
kneel	knelt
leave	left
mean	meant

There are also regular preterites and past participles of *dream*, *kneel*, and *lean:* [drimd, nild, lind] *dreamed*, *kneeled*, *leaned;* these forms are little used (see note to 16).

2.	buy	bought
3.	catch	caught
4.	bring	brought

	think	thought	
5.	seek	sought	
	beseech	besought	
	teach	taught	
6.	[luz] lose	[lost] lost	

25. Some verbs have a regular consonantal preterite, and a past participle with vowel-change (and the ending *-n*). Others have no vowel-change in the past participle, but they may be included here because the participle in *-n* is almost exclusively found with the vocalic verbs (the only exception, besides the verbs under *b* here, is *beat* in 20).

a.	rive	rived	riven
	shear	sheared	shorn
b.	hew	hewed	hewn
	mow	mowed	mown
	saw	sawed	sawn
	[sou] sew	[soud] sowed	sown
	show [1])	showed	shown
	sow	sowed	sown
	[stru] strew	[strud] strewed	[strun] strewn [2])

All of these also have the regular past participles *hewed, mowed,* etc., chiefly (or exclusively) in predicative use.

Anomalous Verbs

26. A number of verbs are quite irregular *(anomalous verbs).*

go	went	gone
make	made	
stand	stood	

Nearly all the other anomalous verbs are irregular in the third person singular. They also have the adverb *not* joined to them directly, without the auxiliary *to do.* In that case

1) Often archaically spelt *shew.*

2) The spelling with *o [strow, strowed, strown],* and the pronunciation with [ou] instead of [u], are obsolete.

not is usually shortened to [nt], and the verb itself also undergoes changes in that combination.

The negative forms can also be used with the adverb [not] pronounced fully. This is necessary when the auxiliary is repeated and *not* has a strong stress to contradict a preceding statement:

> "I am ready." — "You are not ready."
>
> After a prolonged absence, she returns, and informs us she was mistaken: Mr. Gadbrooke is *not* at home. Sweet, Spoken English p. 78.

This applies equally to all the auxiliaries mentioned in the following pages. See below, on *to do*.

To Be

27. Present: [æm] *(I) am*
[ɑr] *(you, we, they) are*
[ìz] *(he, she, it) is*

Shortened forms: [aim]
[juər, wiər, ðɛər]
[hiz, šiz, ìts]

Negative forms: [aim not] *I am not*
[ɑnt] *(we you, they) are not*
[ìznt] *(he, she, it) is not*

1. Note that in the negative form of the first person singular *not* has its strong vowel, whereas in all the other persons it is [nt]. Hence in qestions we also find *not* [not] after *I*, whereas in all other persons it is joined on to the verbal form: [æm ai not] *am I not?*, but [ɑnt wi] *aren't we?*, etc., and [ìznt hi] *isn't he?*, etc.

In questions, however, the form [ɑnt] is used in the first person singular in educated English: [aim rait, ɑnt ai?] *I am right, aren't I? "Aren't I to see Sylvia?" Michael asked, laughing* (Sinister Street p. 1088).

2. In very colloquial (some would say: vulgar) English

the negative form for all persons is [eint] *ain't.*

Preterite: [woz, wəz] *(I, he, she, it) was*
[wəər, wər] *(you we they) were* [1])
Negative forms: [woznt] *(I, he, she, it) was not*
[wəənt] *(you, we, they) were not*
Imperative: [bi] *be*
Infinitive: [tə bi] *to be*
Present Part. and Gerund: [biĭŋ] *being*
Past Part: [bin, bìn] *been*

Forms in Literary English

28. In the present tense the form *be* is occasionally found for *are:*

> When it is remembered that more than half the King's subjects are Hindus,...., it seems hardly necessary to insist upon the importance of knowing something at least about Hindu life and ideas; yet few there be that realize it. Athenaeum, September 7, 1907.

For the second person singular we find the forms:
(thou) art [ɑt] for the present tense.
(thou) wast, wert [wost, wəət] for the preterite; the latter form is now rarely used.

The literary language has, moreover, special forms for the subjunctive mood.

Present: *be;* also *(thou) beest* [biĭst].
Preterite: *were* in all persons, except *(thou) wert.*

To Dare

29. dare durst dared

In colloquial English the preterite and past participle are usually *dared;* negative *didn't dare*, or *daren't* [dɛənt] [2]).

---

1) Instead of [wəər] there is a less common form [wɛər]; see Montgomery, *Types* p. 28 f.

2) The spelling *dared not* may also represent [dɛənt].

In the present tense the third person is both *dares* and *dare*. Literary English uses the second persons *darest* [dɛəst, dɛərĭst] for the present tense; *daredst* [dɛərĭdst], and *durst* [dəəst] for the preterite.

30. In combination with *say* the verb forms a semi-compound, chiefly in the first person of the present tense: *I dare say*, also spelt in one word *I daresay*. In reported speech we find *he dares say; he dared say* or he *dared to say*.

Philip dared say it was a little ... Snaith, Principal Girl p. 169

He dared say a good deal would depend upon its success. Times W. 2/1, 14.

To Do

31.

Present:	[du] (*I you, we they*) *do*
	[dʌz] (*he, she, it*) *does*
Negative forms:	[dount] *do not, don't*
	[dʌznt] *does not, doesn't*
Preterite:	[dìd] *did*
Negative form:	[dìdnt] *did not, didn't*
Imperative:	[du] *do*
Infinitive:	[tə du] *to do*
Present Part. and Gerund:	[duĭŋ] *doing*
Past Part.:	[dʌn] *done*

In familiar English also *don't* for *doesn't*.

Forms in Literary English only

32. For the second and third persons of the present the forms generally are:

1. of the verb with full meaning:
   (*thou*) *doest* [duĭst]
   (*he*) *doeth* [duĭþ]
2. of the auxiliary verb:
   (*thou*) *dost* [dʌst]
   (*he*) *doth* [dʌþ].

To Have

33. Present: [hæv; əv, v] (*I, you, we, they*) *have*
[hæz; əz, z, s] (*he, she it*) *has*
Negative forms: [hævnt] *have not*
[hæznt] *has not*
Preterite: [hæd; d] *had*
Negative form: [hædnt] *had not*
Imperative: [hæv] *have*
Infinitive: [tə hæv, tŭəv tŭv] *to have*
Present Part. and Gerund: [hævĭŋ] *having*

34. The weak forms [əz, z, s; d] *has, had* are only used when *to have* is an enclitic auxiliary of tense without *not: He has told everything. He's got a lot of money. I'd forgotten all about it.*

But [hæz, hæd] in *He has not told us; He has a lot of money; I had to pay the money back;* and in questions: *Has he told everything?*

35. In literary English the present tense has special forms for the second and third persons singular:

(*thou*) *hast* [hæst]; (*he*) *hath* [hæþ].

Defective Verbs **36.** The following verbs occur only in the present tense and the preterite; or in a single form only.

Can

37. Present: [kæn, kən] *can;* negative: [kant] *cannot.*
Preterite: [kùd, kəd] *could;* negative: [kùdnt] *could not.*
In literary English the second persons singular of the present tense and the preterite are *(thou) canst* [kænst]; *couldst, couldest,* [kùdst, kùdĭst].

May

38. Present: [mei] *may;* negative: [meint] *may not.*

Preterite: [mait] *might;* negative: [maitnt] *might not.*

In literary English the second persons singular of the present tense and the preterite are *mayst, mayest* [meist, meiĭst]; *mightst, mightest* [maitst, maitĭst].

Shall

39. Present: [šæl, šl] *shall;* negative [šant] *shall not.*

Preterite: [šùd, šəd] *should:* negative: [šùdnt] *should not.*

In literary English the second persons singular are *(thou) shalt* [šælt]; *shouldst, shouldest* [šùdst, šùdĭst].

Will

40. Present: [wìl, l] *will;* negative: [wount] *will not.*

Preterite: [wùd, wəd, əd] *would;* negative [wùdnt] *would not.*

In literary English the second persons singular of the present tense and the preterite are *(thou) wilt; wouldst.*

Must, Ought

41. *Must* and *ought* have neither personal nor tense-endings.

Note [mʌstnt, mʌsnt; ɔtnt] *must not, ought not.*

In literary English there is the second person singular *(thou) must, oughtst.*

Need

42. *Need* is irregular in that the third person singular is both *need* and *needs.* The negative form is [nidnt] *need not.* The form *need* is also used for the preterite.

Used

43. [just] is used in the function of a preterite, generally with *to* and infinitive immediately after it. The negative form is *usedn't,* often spelt *usen't* [1]) and generally pronounced

---

1) Compare *daredn't* ant *daren't; and* [mʌsnt] *mustn't.*

[ju:snt], but also *did not use;* the past participle *used* is rare.

Sometimes he used to tell us of his expeditions through the woods and fields round his home. Sweet, Spoken English p. 50.

People did not use to eat so much meat as they do now. id. Element. no. 15 p 66.

But Stella did not begin to speak, as she was used, of her determination to have her own way in spite of everybody. Sinister Street p. 816.

Forms and Verbs used in Literary English only

Forms used in literary English only

44. A number of verbs, including several of those mentioned in 21 ff., have some forms which only occur in archaic English (especially in the Bible), and in the higher literary language.

45. Many verbs with *o* in their preterite, such as *got, spoke, swore,* have archaic preterites with *a.* These are *get; break, drive, speak; bear, tear, swear, wear,* with the preterites *gat; brake, drave, spake; bare, tare, sware, ware.*

46. Note further the preterites *slang, slank* (of to *sling, slink*); the past participles *forgot, trod* (of *to forget, tread*).

47. The preterites and past participles of *to understand, write, build,* are also *understanded, writ, builded. Help* forms *holp,* p. p. *holpen.* Further, there are the past participles *paven, shapen, shaven,* mostly used as adjectives.

48. The verb *to clothe* is regular in spoken English. In literary English the preterite and past participle are also *clad.* In spoken English there is the adjective *clad.*

She was clad about the shoulders in a mantle of foreign style and pattern. Meredith, Harrington ch. p. 25.

49. The verbs *to distract, reach, work* have the regular forms *distracted, reached, worked.* But in archaic English

there are also the forms *distraught*, *raught*, *wrought*. In spoken English there is the adjective *wrought*.

Verbs used in literary English only

50. beget begot, begat, begotten, begot
The preterite *begat* occurs in the Bible; see 45.

51. bereave bereft

The verb is also regular: *bereaved*, especially in reference to the loss of relatives by death. In reference to other possessions (nearly exclusively immaterial) *bereft* is the more usual form.

The accident which had bereaved the father of his child.

Bereft of hope, life, etc.

Here he lurked about, like a spectre, among the scenes of former power and prosperity, now bereft of home, of family and friend, Washington Irving, The Sketch-Book p. 306.

The treachery and desertion of many of his followers is said to have desolated his heart, and to have bereaved him of all further comfort. id. p. 307.

The past participle *reft* is not frequent.

It was now reft for a time from the southern province. Wakeman, Introd. p. 63.

52. bide bode, bid bid
abide abode abode

These two verbs are also used with the regular inflection: *bided, abided.*

They held their peace and bided their time.

... whose name abode on Northumbrian tongues as the embodiment of good and just government.

One of the few Southerners in public life who abided faithful to the Constitution when the battle of secession began.

53. lade laded laded, laden

These are the forms used in the meaning 'to put the cargo

on board a ship'. It should be noted, however, that the participal adjective *laden* is also used in reference to other things: *a tree laden with fruit.*

54. seethe sod
The verb is also regular: *seethed.*

55. shrive shrove shriven
The regular form *shrived* is also found. The verb is obsolete, spoken English using *to confess.*

56. A few isolated literary forms may finally be mentioned:
1. hight: *is called, was called,* also used as a past participle:
Lo! there entered then into the church the Reverend Teacher.
Father he hight and he was in the parish; ....
Longfellow, Children of the Lord's Supper.
Certes, at Pisa Zeus is sovereign hight.
Two Odes of Pindar, transl. Symon, Eng. Rev. Oct. 13, p. 325.
2. yclept: *called* (past participle):
Don Juan saw that microcosm on stilts,
Yclept the Great World. Byron, Don Juan XII, 56.
3. quoth: *said*, used with nouns, or with pronouns of the first and third persons, in direct quotations.
"Last night?" quoth Lady Jocelyn. Meredith, Harrington ch. 45 p. 450.
See further below, on the *Participle.*

COMPOUND FORMS

Tense **57.** In the preceding pages it has been shown that English has only two forms for tenses, the present tense and the preterite. It is usual, however, and convenient, to

consider as tenses some compound forms with the auxiliaries *shall*, *will*, *have*. The forms with *shall* or *will* and the infinitive (or stem) of the verb are equivalent in some of their functions, to a future tense in Latin and other languages. Hence *shall* or *will* with the infinitive are called future tense when they merely express an action or state in the future. Similarly the forms of *have* with the past participle are sometimes equivalent to a Latin perfect tense. Hence such a group as *I have done* is called the perfect tense of *to do*.

58. Apart from this consideration, however, there are phonetic grounds in present-day English itself for treating these groups of *shall*, *will*, *have* with a verb-form as indivisible, and as equivalents of the tenses with an ending.

59. For in declarative sentences the auxiliary of the perfect tenses is not really *have, has, had;* it is nearly always unstressed: [v, z, d]; or, if syllabic, [əv, əz, əd]. Thus, what was originally an auxiliary, has in present English become a kind of enclitic particle, which is usually added to the subject. *I have seen*, e.g., is really [aiv sin]; *he has come* [hiz kʌm]; *my father had spoken of it* [mai fa͡ðərəd spoukn əv ĭt]. It is evident that this 'auxiliary' is often practically of the same nature as the suffixes [ĭd, d, t] that are added to the verb-stem to form the preterite.

60. The future tenses are formed by means of the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*. Just as in the case of the perfect tenses, however, these 'auxiliaries' in declarative sentenses are usually quite unstressed, and assume the character of enclitic particles added to the subject. Hence *I shall go* should often be transcribed [aišl gou], *you will go* [jul gou]; note that *l* is in both cases syllabic.

61. Although the auxiliaries form the finite part of the verbal predicate in these compounds, it is really the past

participle and the infinitive that form the substance of the verbal predicate. It is therefore impossible to analyse these groups, and they must be treated as *compound tenses.*

Aspect **62.** The auxiliary *to be* with a present participle is sometimes used to express the progressive aspect of a state or action. These combinations are considered as one whole: the *progressive aspect.*

63. In literary English we occasionally find a progressive form with *a* [ə] before the participle. This may be an imitation of older English, although the form is also found in present dialects. See the chapter on the *Gerund and Participle.*

> During the sixteenth, seventeenth, and eighteenth centuries, when the modern states were a-building, it was the Jews who were most influential as army contractors and financiers to Courts and Governments. Nation, July 12, 1913 p. 558/2.

Mood **64.** The auxiliary *to do* is used with the infinitive (without *to*) to form the emphatic and negative present and preterite. These forms may be looked upon as a *compound mood.*

Voice **65.** Similarly *to be* is used as an auxiliary with the past participle to form the *compound passive voice.*

66. We may sometimes consider other verbs with a past participle either as a form of the passive voice, or as a copula with an adjective; this is especially the case with *to become* and *to get.* See below on the *Passive.*

Group-Verbs **67.** It is worth observing that a verb with an infinitive occasionally forms such a closely united whole that the auxiliary is prefixed to the finite verb although it logically refers to the infinitive.

The future of *I hope to see you again* is *I shall hope to see you again* as well as *I hope I shall see you again.*

See the sections on the perfect infinitive with *to* and on the perfect gerund.

a. We shall hope to show that herein lie elements of such a general and special educational value that....

H. C. Wyld, Place of the Mother Tongue, p. I.

We think that the Philharmonic Society are to be congratulated on having included this work in their programme, and we shall hope to hear more of Mr. Holbrooke at this class of concert. Academy, March 12, 1910 o. 245/1.

It won't take us a minute, and we will promise not to disturb her. Dale Reader, Bk. II p. 7.

"It is very late," said Eleanor, "it will be a shame to disturb your mother again at such an hour." Trollope, Barchester Towers p. 155.

The people most richly endowed with these aptitudes and with the opportunities for using them are the Jews. Hence we shall expect to find that, in the moulding of modern forms of industrial and commercial capitalism, they have been chief agents. Nation. July 12. 1913 p. 558/1.

If the conception is large, and the treatment practical, we shall hope that the series will attain its object. Editors' Advertisement to the Helps for Students of History no. 1.

I'm grieved, my boy; but, there, it can't be helped. You mustn't let this trouble you too deeply. We shall hope to see you sometimes. Pickthall, Larkmeadow ch. 29 p. 185.

b. I have hoped, in the following pages, to prepare the way for the beginner. Wyld, Historical Study, Preface.

He was good-looking enough, I now again saw, but not such a model of it as I had seemed to remember. H. James, Sacred Fount ch. 1, p. 3.

68. The group-future is far commoner than the group-perfect or group-preterite. The cause is probably that there is no future infinitive in English. Sometimes the illogical nature of the process of making the finite verb future, instead of the infinitive (or clause) depending upon it, is not very patent, as in the following examples.

To answer these questions it *will be necessary to pay* [1]) some

1) Italics are mine, as also in the next quotation.

attention to certain creative periods in the history of the Church of England. Clayton, Dioceses p. 4.

"Poole," replied the lawyer, "if you say that, it will become my duty to make certain. Much as I desire to spare you master's feelings, much as I am puzzled by this note, which seems to prove him to be still alive, *I shall consider it* my duty to break in that door."

"Ah, Mr. Utterson, that is talking!" cried the butler.

Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll ed. Schutt p. 75.

69. When *kind of*, *sort of* qualify a finite or non-finite verb we might also look upon the resulting combinations as group-verbs; see below on the group-plurals (820 ff.). This use of *kind of*, *sort of* is very familiar, and is, therefore, called vulgar or dialectal by some.

How all the Five Towns kind of sit and sniff at each other. Bennett, Leonora, p. 28/2.

If I hadn't sort of known all the time that you were, I wouldn't be here now talking like this. ib. ch. 7, p. 59/2.

The millionaire whistled a very high note. "Nell!" he said at length. "And you? Do you sort of cling to him?" Bennett, Grand Babylon ch. 29 p. 274.

„I hope she'll go before we do," said Stella-my-niece in my ear. "I sort of feel that she'll try to take Herbert." Punch 4/11, 14.

Father was so disconcerted by the behaviour of Son that he kind of began to clothe his thoughts with language. Snaith, Principal Girl p. 159.

70. These combinations with *kind of*, *sort of*, may also be explained differently. For *kind of*, *sort of* really form a kind of adjunct to the *following* verb; on this function of the preposition *of* see the chapter on *Prepositions*. It may be added that they are also used before other words than verbs (and nouns), as is shown by the following quotations.

I never felt so funny, not exactly frightened, you know, but sort of frightened. Sinister Street p. 133.

You look so sort of cosy and confidential in these ferns, ib. p. 316.

Miss Goodrich was kind o'interested. Vachell, Spragge p. 45.

"It sounds sort of philosophical," said he. Benson, Blaize ch. 7, p. 132.

71. In this connection we may also mention the following construction.

And with a reel-like step he up and danced across the floor. Patterson, Compton p. 165.

(She) asked him why he didn't up and join the procession. Vachell, Spragge p. 11.

But compare also the following, where the adverb is separated from the verb.

"Did you see her face?"

"No; she up with her arm over it and scuttled away." Baring-Gould, Swaen I p. 8.

72. *Conjugation of the verb to call*

Indicative

	Active	**Passive**
Present	I call	I am called
Preterite	I called	I was called
Perfect	I have called	I have been called
Pluperfect	I had called	I had been called
Future	I shall call	I shall be called
Preterite Future	I should call	I should be called
Perfect Future	I shall have called	I shall have been called
Pluperfect Future	I should have called	I should have been called

Emphatic

Present	I *do* call	I *am* called
Preterite	I *did* call	I *was* called
Perfect	I *have* called	I have been called
	etc.	etc.

Progressive

Present	I am calling	I am being called
Preterite	I was calling	I was being called
Perfect	I have been calling	—
Pluperfect	I had been calling	—
Future	I shall be calling	—
Preterite Fut.	I should be calling	—
Perfect Future	I shall have been calling	—
Pluperfect Fut.	I should have been calling	—

Imperative

	call	be called

Emphatic Imperative

	do call	—

Infinitive

Present	(to) call	(to) be called
Perfect	(to) have called	(to) have been called

Progressive Infinitive

Present	(to) be called	—
Perfect	(to) have been calling	—

Gerund and Participle

Present	calling	being called
Perfect	having called	having been called

Participle

Past	—	called

USE OF THE VERBAL FORMS

The Finite Verb

73. The function of the finite verb is to serve as the predicate of the sentence. It is said to be used in the first, second, or third person according to its subject (see 5), whether there are forms to distinguish these persons or not.

The finite verb distinguishes person, tense, aspect, mood, and voice.

Persons

74. The forms for the third person, and in literary English those for the second (4 ff.), distinguish the finite from the non-finite verb.

Tenses

75. The verb is the only part of speech that has a regular system of forms whose chief function is to express distinctions of time. Other parts of speech may be connected in thought with a special time, e. g. nouns expressing an action; thus *the conquest of Ireland* may refer to present, past, or future time. The time may be specially mentioned: *Ireland in ancient times; English pronunciation in the 16th century*. But nouns generally have no forms to express distinctions of time. The nouns (and adjectives) that do possess a form to express past time also have other characteristics in common with the finite verb, and are considered as part of the verbal system (the non-finite verb, or the verbal nouns and adjectives).

76. The forms of the verb that are chiefly used to express distinctions of time are called *tenses*.

77. The time expressed by the tenses is the present, the past, or the future. The present is thought of, not as a

point but as a period of time, so that it necessarily includes something of the past or of the future, or of both: *I hear a noise, what is it?*

The past is what was or happened before the present: *I met him last night.* The future is what will be or happen after the present: *We shall go home at eight.*

78. It is possible, however, to look at an action or state from the standpoint of a past moment, and treat is as past or future with respect to that. English has a tense to express what was past at a past moment, the pluperfect: *When we came home they had finished dinner.* The preterite future may express what was future at a past moment: *I knew I should fail.* We also find the preterite of *to be going* in a similar function: "*What did he think I was going to do?*" *Sylvia snapped* (Mackenzie, Sylvia p. 269).

79. It is also possible to consider the time of an action or state from the standpoint of a future moment. What is past at a future moment may be expressed by the future perfect: *I shall have finished it by Monday.* What is future at a future moment is naturally not distinguished from the simple future.

80. The tenses considering the time of an action or state from the point of view of the present are called *primary* tenses; the others are *secondary* tenses.

81. The time expressed by the perfect in *We have lived here for the last ten years* is both past and present. But the perfect does not necessarily express this double time; in *I have understood him perfectly* the time is really present, but in connection with something past.

82. With regard to the time expressed the present and perfect may be called the *present tenses;* the preterite and pluperfect the *past tenses;* the others the *future tenses.*

83. The tenses do not exclusively serve to express distinctions of time. The perfect tense is chiefly used to express a distinction of aspect. Many tenses are also used to express modality. Both the past and the future tenses are so used, but it is not their most important or characteristic function.

Present

84. The present expresses that an action or state is thought of as present (*actual present*).

I feel rather tired after my walk. Sweet, Element. no. 63.
I see now what you mean.
Do you see those chimneys to the left of the tower?
He lives in a small town in the West of England.

85. This use of the simple present is limited because most verbs require a progressive form in this case.

86. The time referred to in the following sentences is also present, but it is connected with the past, although this connection is not distinctly thought of, as in the case of the perfect.

The official statement from Sofia which we publish elsewhere[1]) confirms the good news that an armistice has been concluded. Times W. 6/12, 12.

People from the Provinces coming into Tokyo report that appalling loss of life and damage to property have been caused by the typhoon. ib. 4/10, 12.

87. In the following quotation the present *are talking* refers to what is actually past but connected with the present time, whereas the preterite *were talking* is used to express the absence of such a connection.

(When Mrs. Manfield entered the room, "there was silence.") "You are talking, or you were talking, of something or somebody interesting," she said at once, looking round her at the three occupants of the room. Hichens, Ambition ch. 1 p. 3.

1) i. e. in another column of this paper.

88. Occasionally the time referred to is distinctly thought of as both past and present, so that the present tense has the function that is usually served by the perfect.

The Town and Gown rows [1]) which used to provide so attractive a picture for the novelist are extinct and forgotten these last ten years. Godley, Aspects of Modern Oxford p. 35.

The fight has been fought, and the ominous apprehensions of the timid are long since forgotten. Magnus, Primer, p. 158.

"And you were early left, I understand?" —

"Early left? Oh dear, yes," she said briskly. "He is dead these forty years." — W. P. Wilcox, Wings of Desire, p. 200.

I believe they are an old French family — de Polairet — but they are so long in England — they have become Parret. Barrie, A Rolling Stone, p. 47.

"Time Lady May *did* call," said Susan. "We are here seven months." ib. p. 96.

"Did you ever see any scalping, or anything horrible yourself, my dear?" ....

"Oh no, Miss Tarlton, all that is over long ago. The Indians are in the reservations now." Humphrey Ward, Daphne.

Note that in all these examples we have *to be* with a participle or adverb. All the groups express a clearly imperfective or durative aspect.

89. The present is also used with reference to something in the future (*future present*).

The present tense is so used in principal clauses when the time is mentioned in the same clause; the verb is usually in the active voice.

Your subscription expires on the 16th inst.

School recommences on January 14.

Parliament does not meet until February 14th. No one knows how or when the session will end. Daily News.

"Nonsense. It's a weakness. I'm not Garvington. By the way, where is he?"

1) i. e. the rows (fights) between the townsmen and the undergraduates.

"In Paris, but he returns in a few days." Hume, Red Money, p. 200.

90. As the function of continuative relative clauses is the same as that of principal clauses, the present tense is used in the same way in both.

The King, who leaves Abbeystead to-morrow and pays a visit to Lancaster, will go direct from the latter town to Balmoral. Daily News.

91. For the same reason *must* is used in the following sentence.

It seems Pavis Court must be sold this spring. They would go barefoot to keep it, but going barefoot won't keep it — nothing will. Cotes, Cinderella ch. 11. 136.

92. The present tense may also refer to what is really future in adverb clauses, if the principal clause expresses a future. The principal clause may do that by means of a verb in the future tense (*a*); or by an imperative (*b*); occasionally the future meaning must be inferred (*c*). Compare 114.

a. With winter, in any case, Lake Baikal will cease to be an obstacle to communication, for as soon as it is frozen over, there will be sledge transport from one side of it to the other. Times W. 19/7, 18.

Oh, he'll ride the brute, now he's promised to do so, if it costs him his life! Garvice, Staunch p. 232.

b. Wait till my work is finished.

c. The earlier he comes the better (i. e. the better it will be).

93. In familiar English the present tense is sometimes used to refer to something future in other cases than those mentioned until now.

"We go through that arch," said Arthur, "or my name is not Stubland." Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 3 § 9.

"And what do you do with Richard while you are absent on this expedition?"

"Oh!" said the baronet, "he accompanies his father." Meredith, Feverel ch. 13 p. 90.

General Cadorna is obviously fighting delaying rearguard actions, until he is able to establish himself on the Middle and Lower Piave [1]). Times W. 9/11, 17.

Are you for staying and seeing the lions feed, or do we cut back? Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 5.

94. The present tense is also used in adverb clauses to refer to a future time that is thought of as past with regard to the time of the action or state in the clause on which it depends (compare the future perfect).

In despair the Ottoman Government has invited the Great Powers to interfere. France, in agreement with other Powers, notably Great Britain and Russia, has informed Turkey that her overtures cannot be accepted until she **submits** definite proposals with regard to conditions of peace. Everyman 8/11, 12.

95. Continuative clauses of time are treated like simple sentences or head clauses (see 89). Hence the future tenses could not be replaced by present tenses in the following clauses.

The Queen will arrive on the 21th, when she will hold a general reception.

The first official aerial postal service in Europe will be inaugurated on Saturday, September 9, when letters will be conveyed by aeroplanes from the Hendon aerodrome to Windsor.

96. It is, perhaps, worth observing that in headclauses with an indication of future time it is not always possible to use a present tense to refer to something future. Thus we could not use the present instead of the future in *I shall*

---

1) The clause with *until* really depends in thought on a sentence like *He will continue to do so.*

work in the garden to-morrow. The reason is that in this sentence the future action is not connected with the present time at all, so that the future time is thought of as separated from the present time. This explains why the future tense could not be replaced by the present in the following sentence: *As I need some things, I shall go out shopping this afternoon.* See 140 f.

97. The present tense may also refer to something that is really past. In this case the speaker transfers himself in thought to the past; from this point of view the action or state *is* really present *(the historical present).*

> "I may be very obtuse, Holmes, but I fail to see what this suggests."
>
> "No? You surprise me. Look at it in this way, then. Captain Morston disappears. The only person in London whom he could have visited is Major Sholto. Major Sholto denies having heard that he was in London. Four years later Sholto dies. Within a week of his death Captain Morstan's daughter receives a valuable present, which is repeated from year to year, and now culminates in a letter which describes her as a wronged woman." Conan Doyle.

98. The historical present is occasionally used in books, but is not very common in literary English.

> .... Nor is the situation improved by a rhetorical style, with a superabundance of superlatives and exclamations, and frequent lapses at critical moments into that most tiresome of devices, the narrative present tense. Times Lit. 8/7, 15.

99. We have seen that the present tense is not only used to refer to an action or state that is really present, but also to what is future, or past. The cause is, no doubt, that the speaker thinks of the action or state as occurring in the present time, or in a time that is really future but not distinctly separated in thought from the present.

100. The present tense is also used to express that an action or state is not referred to any particular time at all (*the neutral present*). This use is very common, and may perhaps be considered as one of the most frequent functions of the present.

Plants breathe just as well as we do.
Nobody remembers how he learned to talk.
Some birds build their nests in trees, others on the ground.

101. The distinction between the actual present and the neutral present depends upon our definition of present. In the following quotation the present time is not specially thought of; yet it refers to the present time rather than any other, so that the present tenses should be interpreted as *actual presents*.

The Five Towns seem to cling together for safety. Yet the idea of clinging together for safety would make them laugh. They are unique and indispensable. From the north of the county right down to the south they alone stand for civilization, applied science, organized manufacture, and the century — until you come to Wolverhampton. Bennett, Old W. T. I ch. 1, § 1.

Preterite

102. The preterite expresses that an action or state is thought of in a past time that is entirely separated from the present time in the mind of the speaker.

On Wednesday five German æroplanes were destroyed, and three driven down damaged. Three of our machines are missing. Times W. 2/2, 17.

Three hundred years ago the Pilgrim Fathers sailed for America in the Mayflower. Times Ed. S. 9/9, 20.

"But *your* house is not like that." — "No, my house is all right; but it is the only dry house in the whole country round. I had it built on purpose." Sweet, Elementarbuch.

The Marquis lived for the best part of the year at Fane Abbey; occasionally, say for a week or two in the height of the season, he went up to town and stayed at his large home in Park Lane. Garvice, Staunch.

The following official statement describing the cause and course of the Tsarewitch's illness was issued late to-night. Times W.

In my first chapter I dealt mainly with those political institutions of the earliest times, institutions common to our whole race, institutions which still live and are untouched among some small primitive communities of our race, out of which the still living Constitution of England **grew**. Freeman. Growth.

[In the last sentence the preterite *grew* is used because the writer thinks of the process that led to the constitution as it is now, not of the result of the process. That such is the explanation of the preterite is shown by the sentences following immediately:

It is now my business, as the second part of my subject, to trace the steps by which that Constitution grew out of a political state with which at first sight it seems to have so little in common. My chief point is that it did thus, in the strictest sense, grow out of that state. Our English Constitution was never made, in the sense in which the Constitutions of many other countries have been made].

103. The preterite is also used if a writer wishes to dissociate himself from stating a fact.

(Alexander) captured the cities of Susa and Persepolis — capitals and treasure-cities of the Persian king. One hundred and twenty thousand talents *were* said to have been obtained from the latter city. Goodspeed, History p. 214.

104. In a few cases the preterite expresses an action or state that began a short time before the time of speaking, but not excluding the possibility of its continuing up to and during the time of speaking.

"Oh, you did give me a turn," she exclaimed.

"I *thought* [1]) it was early for the milkman."
Mackenzie, Sylvia p. 58 f.

A. I am sorry Mr. C. is not in. — B. Oh, I only called to see how he was.

A. "Are you going to L. to-night?" — B. 'Why?' — A. "Oh, I wondered."

On the following advertisement in the Times:
Important Notice. M. L. supplies all classes of domestic servants with good characters
Punch 30/10, 12 comments:
We **wondered** where some of them got their good characters from.

Modal Preterite **105.** The preterite is frequently used in a modal function, but only in subordinate clauses [2]). The preterite in these clauses refers to the present time or the future.

It is time we gave a second thought to Puritanism. Gissing, Ryecroft.

But Belfast is really interesting: though it is necessarily a morbid interest. It should be understood that when I say Belfast I mean Belfast; I mean the starving and oppressed masses that gather in any such industrial centre. I do not mean people like Sir Edward Carson: nobody could for a moment suggest that they **were** interesting. Daily News, 20/1, 12.

He makes one realise that if only one knew enough about the subject, it would abound in both beauty and interest.
Benson, J. of Eng. Studies I, 155.

It seems as though Oxford and Cambridge might still be permitted to whisper a word in their own defence, and that the universities of the provinces **were** not the impregnable homes of an austere and self denying erudition. Daily Mail.

Nothing could be more interesting and useful at the present

1) In 'thought' the pitch of the voice rises suddenly and there is a slight pause after it. The italics are in the original text.

2) For the modal preterites of auxiliaries, see below.

time than a book which **succeeded** in doing what this book sets out to do [1]). Athenaeum, 6/12, 13.

Then I would suggest that you ceased trying to clean your finger. Benson, David Blaize ch. 1.

106. It is perhaps not superfluous to add that the preterite in subordinate clauses may also express an actual fact.

If we mentioned Mr. Compton Mackenzie at the beginning of these reflections only to leave him waiting for some further appreciation, this is exactly because his case .... is no simple one. Henry James, Times Lit. 4 2, 14 p. 158.

107. When a fact is meant to be expressed the present tense is also possible.

It is time that I give you some idea of my domestic arrangements. W. Irving.

Perfect

108. The perfect tense is formed by the present of *to have* with the past participle. See 57 ff.

109. The combination of *to be* with the past participle of verb sometimes has a function that is very similar to the perfect tense with *to have*. The use of *to be* in this function is limited to a few verbs, all intransitive, such as *to rise, set, come, go, fail, arrive, depart, grow.*

The sun is set; let's go home.

The guests are all gone.

His parents were grown old.

"Look to your safety," he shouted. "The lions are got loose."

She was resolved that, cost what it might, Charley must be banished from the Cottage. Trollope, Three Clerks p. 349.

The meadows are so browned that only the most deeply-rooted plants, such as burnet, show any greenery. Even the

1) It seems that the modal preterite is little used in attributive (adjective) clauses.

permanent vetches are become rather flower-crops than green crops. Daily Mail.

110. As a rule it is possible to find a difference between the two constructions. In the form with *to have* the verb is durative, i.e. expresses rather the process of the action, whereas in the construction with *to be* it is perfective, i. e. expresses the resulting state. See the sections on *Aspect*.

111. This distinction, however, is not always adhered to. The form with *to have* is occasionally perfective, expressing a state (*a*), and the construction with *to be* may be durative, expressing the process of the action (*b*). But the quotations under *b* may perhaps quite as naturally be interpreted as perfective. The quotation under *c* seems to show that there is no difference at all.

a. She was stouter. Although always plump, her figure had been comely, with a neat, well-marked waist, But now the shapeliness had gone. Bennett, Old W. T. II ch. 3 § 1.

b. The truth is, I was begun to think uncomfortably of the dedication. Barrie, Little White Bird ch. 26.

Mr. Winter was retired. His money, sufficient to retire upon the interest accruing from it, he had hoarded in Hastings, and there Ruth had been educated,

Niven, Porcelain Lady p. 12.

c. Clara also had passed most of the day there, with a few intervals at her own home; but now Clara was gone, and Janet too had gone. Bennett, Clayhanger III ch. 17 § 4.

112. The perfect is used to express the bearing of a past action or state on the present time. This is the most frequent function of the perfect (*resultative perfect*).

Prince Henry has decided to travel to Tokio by the overland route. Twice already he has visited Japan, in 1898 and 1900. Standard, 16/8, 12.

Canon Ollard, as we have said, has secured contributors of reputation. Two especially eminent men have died since their articles were written — the late Bishop of Salisbury ... and Dr. James Gairdner. Athenaeum, 16/11, 12.

Staffordshire rivers have remained virgin of keels to this day. Bennett, Old W. T. I ch. 1 § 1.

London has been repeatedly attacked by squadrons of German æroplanes during the last few nights Times W. 5/10, 17.

The recurrence of the Italian national festival of *Venti Settembre* reminds us that half a century has now passed away since "Italy entered Rome." Times Lit. 16/9, 20.

Mr. W. H. Davies has won his place; he is a writer who is read, a singer who never lacks listeners. Times Lit. 23/9, 20.

113. The perfect tense may express that an action or state is thought of as both past past and present, the past being continued into the present (*continuative perfect*).

We have lived here for the last ten years.

Ever since the so-called settlement of last year's national dispute, railwaymen have gradually become more and more convinced that their leaders committed a grave blunder in sending them back to work when they did.

114. When the principal clause expresses a future time, the perfect is similarly used in the adverb clause to express the bearing of an action that will be past at that future time. Compare 92.

Wait till I have finished my letter.

The feeling thus aroused in a time of peril needs to be fostered and deepened within our own borders when the clouds have passed away. Times W. 3/1, 13.

Pluperfect

115. The pluperfect has the same three functions as the perfect, but with regard to a past moment.

1. (= 112). The other snarled aloud into a savage laugh; and the next moment, with extraordinary quickness, he had

unlocked the door and disappeared into the house.
Stevenson, Dr Jekyll.

The Norman Conquest of 1066 brought England into close contact with Europe. Our ancestors had suffered from isolation.
Watson, Engl. Church p. 36.

2. (= (113). For some time past it had been assumed that the following British and French merchant vessels, which have been long overdue, had been sunk by a German raider . . . Definite information has now been received from Pernambuco confirming this assumption. Times W. 26/1, 17.

3. (= 111). He patiently waited till I had finished the letter.

116. The pluperfect is also used to express that something was past at a past moment, hence as a past preterite. It is often difficult or impossible to decide whether the pluperfect has the function of a past perfect or of a past preterite. It seems to be the former in the examples of 115, the latter in the italicized pluperfects of the following quotations.

The morning the pony had been tried the Earl *had been* so pleased that he had almost forgotten his gout. Burnett, Fauntleroy.

The house *had belonged* to a family of some note, whose heirs had outstripped their fortunes. Lytton, Eugene Aram ch. 3.

Modal Pluperfect

117. The modal use of the pluperfect is parallel to that of the preterite. It is also found in subordinate clauses only, and refers to the past.

We wish that Mr. Macdonald had touched upon Bret Harte's literary influence. Times Lit. 3/2, 16.

"I thought," said she, presently, "you had told me your name was John?" Temple Thurston, City I ch. 8.

One would think, to hear him talk, that those who are fighting for England had left behind nothing that was worth fighting for except himself. Times Lit. 20/1, 16.

It might, perhaps, have been better if these (i. e. these

additions, by the translator) had been distinguished by brackets or initialed. Athenaeum, 28/8, 15.

They were not brother and sister, but they loved each other as much as if they had been. Andersen, Fairy Tales.

Comradeship is at the most only one half of human life; the other half is Love, a thing so different that one might fancy it had been made for another universe. Chesterton, What's Wrong, p. 90.

I have received many messages, of pleasure in, and even gratitude for, the book, which leave me in no sort of doubt that it was worth writing; though I wish with all my heart that it had been worthier of its motive, and had been better able to communicate the delight of my visions and dreams. A. C. Benson.

There was a little art in her, that had [1]) perhaps found a medium had she been born to a different environment. Phillpotts, Beacon, book I ch. 6.

Had he been able to consult it he would have found that it contained a wealth of materials for his purpose. Mod. Lang. Notes, Nov. 1912.

118. In literary English the pluperfect is occasionally used in the *principal* clause of a hypothetical statement. See 604 f.

If you hadn't gone to Strelsau, you and I and Fritz had been in heaven by now. Hope, Zenda.

Mrs. Doria, an amiable widow, had surely married but for her daughter Clare. Meredith, Feverel ch. 13 p. 84.

Possibly the pride even of Richard Feverel had been swamped if the act of composition were easy at such a time. ib. ch. 14 p. 92.

Fortunately Constance was passing in the corridor, otherwise Sophia had been found guilty of a great breach of duty. Bennett, Old W. Tale I ch. 3 § 3.

119. The pluperfect is also used in headclauses to indicate that the past action or state is not continued into the present.

---

1) This preterite illustrates the case of 118.

I had hoped that in this twentieth century one would not have found any of enlightened culture making such an unjust and foolish statement. C. Robertson in Everyman 13/12, 12.

The circumstance needs explanation. Are we to assume that Munich is more intimately in the confidence of Vienna than Berlin? That has happened before now, but we had not supposed it to be the case at present. Times W. 4/12, 14.

I am sure that Theocritus has handled these scenes with an art altogether transcending that of his rivals, but I had thought that they were the fruit of his own genius and invention. It is a pity that Herodas should have disabused us of a pleasing illusion, seeing that he has given us so little in exchange for it. Tyrrel in Introd. to Calverley's Theocritus p. XVII.

Future Tenses

120. The future tenses are formed with the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*. The distribution of *shall* and *will* over the three persons differs greatly in different parts of the British Isles. In the following sections the usage in Southern English is stated.

121. In declarative sentences (*a*) the first persons take *shall* (*should*), the others *will* (*would*). In interrogative sentences (*b*) *shall* (*should*) is used in the first and second persons, *will* (*would*) in the third.

a. We shall be very late, I'm afraid,
I should have preferred to stay at home.
You would not do it if you knew how much it hurts me.
You won't be in time if you wait any longer.

b. Shall I be in time, do you think?
Should you go home if the holidays lasted a week longer?
Will he be in time if he goes now?

122. In enclitic questions a preceding *will* (*would*) in the second person is sometimes repeted. See further 608 ff.

Would you have been in time if you had taken the shorter route?

123. In interrogative sentences *would you* is very frequent.

You will be there, won't you? Sweet, Spoken English, 39.

You would refuse, wouldn't you?

124. *I would* is frequent in combination with *like;* in other cases *will* and *would* in the first person are perhaps contrary to Southern English usage.

In the conduct of political affairs the public have short memories, or we would not so often fight over again the old controversies. Pilot 16/4, 04, p. 352,2.

I would like to quote one more example. ib.

Whoever is to blame will have to leave the Abbey. His lordship neveroverlooks or for gives. Even I, who have been here since before you were born, would have to go if I caused such an uproar as this. Garvice, Staunch p. 9.

125. On the use of the auxiliaries in indirect style, see the sections on *Concord of Tense* (149 ff).

Present Future **126.** The present future tense expresses that an action or state is thought of as future from the standpoint of the present time.

For myself, when I see a thing I hate I can't help fighting against it. I shall never be able to help that. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 37.

I hope you will both be able to come.

The troops, broken and disorganised, have fallen back in the direction of Constantinople, where the last scene in the terrible tragedy of blood and war will be enacted.

Everyman 8/11, 12.

We hope that a further advance towards agreement will be made at to-day's adjourned meeting, but the difficulties to be overcome are serious. The Mail, 22/9, 1920.

Perfect Future **127.** The perfect future expresses that an action or state is thought of as completed at a future time.

---

1) Many examples of *will, would* in the first person of what is undoubtedly a future tense are given by Zachrisson, *Studier i modern Språkvetenskap.* VII.

It has the same function as that of the perfect tense mentioned in 112, but transferred to a future time.

I suppose Miss Kirkpatrick will have returned from France before then. Gaskell, Wives II. ch. 1.

I want you to post this letter for me. I shall have finished it by the time you are ready. Sweet, Element. no. 67.

It is said that the Great Powers have since recognised their mistake in the matter, and perhaps by the time these lines appear they will have formally conceded a larger representation. New Statesman 1/2, 1919.

Modal Future **128.** The present future is frequently used modally. In the second person it expresses the speaker's command when obedience is considered a matter of course (*a*). In the first person it may express a threat (*b*), or a determination (c).

a. You will see that due precautions are taken.

Johnson will repeat to me to-morrow morning before breakfast, without book, and from the Greek Testament, the first chapter of the Epistle of Saint Paul to the Ephesians. Dickens.

b. I shall punish you sèverely if you do that again.

c. "They are going to settle it," Eustace heard the barrister who was reporting for the Times say to his assistant. "They always do settle every case of public interest," grunted the long man in answer; "we shan't see the will now. Well, I shall get an introduction to Miss Smithers and ask her to show it to me." Haggard, Meeson's Will ch. 19.

129. The present future tenses (i. e. the future tenses with *shall* or *will*, hence the present future and the perfect future) are also used to express an inference regarded as probable. All of the following quotations, except the last, show how easily the future passes into inference. See 130.

As you will already be aware, Germany has refused Sir Edward Grey's proposal of a four-Power Conference.

Times W. 31/7, 14.

With that he blew out his candle, put on a greatcoat and

set forth in the direction of Cavendish Square, that citadel of medicine, where his friend, the great Dr. Lanyon, had his house and received his crowding patients. "If anyone knows, it will be Lanyon," he had thought.

Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll p. 17.

When we add that the work of Mr. Thomas Hardy is barely touched on, we shall have said enough to show that the Professor's book is not adequate for modern lovers of poetry.

Athenaeum, 31/5, 13.

In speaking to you of Jane Austen, I must assume, not only that you are familiar with her novels, but that, like myself, you belong to the faithful.... And if you do, you will not wish me to add another to the estimates of Jane Austen's genius; nor, on the other hand will you ask me whether I have anything new to say.

A. C. Bradley in Essays II, p. 7.

The missionary was not indeed unknown even in early times; but we shall probably be right in saying that when the system was most powerful, organization of missions was far more commonly in the interest of some sect within Islam than in the interest of Islam itself.

Margoliouth, Mohammedanism p. 9.

We shall all agree with his conclusion that the first possesses a real educational value and the second does not.

Prof. Firth, in History IV no. 14 p. 79.

And pray how did you feel during my absence? You will have missed me very much.

130. In all the quotations of 129 the idea of inference is the most important, but the idea of futurity is not gone. The use of the present future to express an inference that refers exclusively to the present time is occasionally found in books, but it is contrary to standard Southern usage [1]).

1) Sweet calls it Scotch; it occurs in southern English dialects as well, as is shown by the quotation from Phillpotts. The first quotation of 129 may seem to refer to the present time; but it is really future: as you *will be* aware when what I am writing *now* is read by you.

Tibby opened the door to him and looked him up and down. "You'll be Mr. Folyat," she said.

"That is my name." Cannan, Round the Corner, p. 146.

"You'll be a college man, sir?" asked old Lawrie.

"Dublin," said Francis.

ib. p. 146. (both speakers are Scottish).

It'll be in the walnut wing. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 5 p. 51 (a servant speaks).

At Okehampton station a brisk young-looking man with a clean-shaved face appeared before Elisabeth. "You'll be Miss Densham, I reckon," he said slowly. "I know most of the people on the platform, but you're strange. Be you for South Zeal?" Phillpotts, Beacon I ch. 2 p. 13.

131. The difference between the quotations in 129 and 130 may seem very slight, but it is real to speakers of Standard Southern English; all the more real because the distinction is too fine to be a product of school.

132. The past future tenses, apart from their use in indirect style (see, below, the sections on *Concord of Tense*), are always used modally, the preterite future referring to the present, the pluperfect future to the past. Compare the modal preterite and pluperfect.

133. The modal past future tenses are chiefly found in head-clauses of hypothetical statements.

I should have preferred to stop longer if I had been able to afford the time.

You would not do it if you knew how much it hurts me.

Should you go home if the holidays lasted a week longer?

I can only speculate about the truth of any of these rumours and if I knew the facts I should not be allowed to publish them. Times W. 9/11, 17.

134. The condition of a hypothetical statement is not always expressed. This use of the past future tenses leads to their function to express something in a modest way.

I should like to go for a nice walk.

Mr. O'Conner follows 'Murray' in saying that it is in winter the highest and the coldest garrison town in France: but we should have thought [1]) that Briançon, though it is not so high, would run it close in the matter of cold. Athenaeum.

Would you mind, mamma, sleeping with me to-night?
Baring-Gould, Swaen I p. 5.

135. The same construction may also come to express probability.

After this it would seem that they turned in for the night.
Wells, Country of the Blind, p. 63.

We are now well in December, and the Christmas book trade is in full swing. I have been inspecting the publishers' lists, and should say that the output of this class of literature is not only larger but of finer quality than ever. Everyman.

King Edward VII. permitted himself, or would appear to have permitted himself, to take that view of his office.
Academy.

At the time he saw me first I was a youngster of 12 or so. That would be in the year 1878.

A Church like this, conscious of its own vigour, would naturally resent a claim of foreign authority which treated it as barbarous. Wakeman, Introd. p. 17.

That further the young Shakespeare would have very soon read all the plays and romances he could lay his hands upon, and learned all he could of the working of the theatre, may be regarded as certain. Seccombe and Allen, Shakespeare II 61.

136. The modal past future tenses have sometimes been treated as a *conditional mood*, the preterite future forming its present tense, the pluperfect future its preterite tense. It is true that the past future tenses are principally forms expressing modality, but that hardly seems a sufficient reason to separate them from the identical forms when used in

1) i.e. if we had not read a different opinion in this book.

subordinate clauses as pure tenses, and from the other future tenses which are also very frequently modal.

The present future is sometimes used in practically the same function as the preterite future:

> Unwavering sincerity is his passport to attention. And we shall be guilty of a fundamental misconception if we do not recognise from the outset that....
>
> Sturge-Henderson, Meredith p. 3.

It may further be considered that the past tenses (preterite and pluperfect) are also used modally, and that it is quite impossible, therefore, and also quite needless, completely to separate the modal from the other functions of the tenses (see 83).

Other Forms for the Future

137. Other forms to express future time might also be considered as future tenses because the verb with which they are formed is entirely meaningless or at least quite subordinate in meaning to the infinitive of the verb of full meaning. Such constructions are the infinitive with *to be*, *to be going*, *to be about*.

138. *To be* with an infinitive is specially frequent in this function in the preterite (*a*), because the preterite future with *should* cannot be used in this function (132 ff.); on this construction see further the sections on *to be* in the chapter on *Auxiliaries*. *To be going* often expresses a near future (*b*) *To be about* expresses an immediate future; it is less colloquial (*c*).

a. Henry Brougham, the youngest of the three, was to become, in a few years and for a time,... one of the most powerful political leaders in England. Camb. Hist. Lit XII, 147.

It is shortly to be published with a critical commentary.

Times Lit. 16/9, 20.

b. It seems as if it were going to rain.

Chamb. Journal 14/6, 1890.

c. He was about to say something more, and then checked himself. Wells, Country of the Blind.

They were about to start for the rocks below the condor's eyrie when a neighbour galloped up. Vachell, Spragae p. 160.

Three distinct series of postage stamps are about to be issued by the Republican Government of China. Times W. 9/11, 12.

Tenses Compared

Present and Preterite

139. Both the historical present and the preterite express that something is thought of as past, unconnected with the present time. The difference between the two is that in the historical present the speaker transfers himself into that past time so that it becomes present to him, whereas in the preterite the time is treated as past in comparison with the present from which the speaker looks at it. The historical present is the result of a lively imagination, and is naturally accompanied by gestures. This explains its infrequency in English: it is contrary to the reserve that is characteristic of the English.

Present and Future

140. What is really future *must* be expressed by a present tense in adverb clauses when the headclause expresses future time (92). The cause is clearly that the adverb clause defines the predicative verb of the headclause, and the use of the future tense would be felt as a repetition. On the other hand the tense is only used in headclauses when the future time is plainly indicated by other means.

141. When the time is sufficiently indicated the present as well as the future may be used in headclauses. The difference may be defined to be one of style: the present is more colloquial. The reason for this seems to be that in using the present tense the speaker does not take the trouble to realize the future time as clearly distinct from the present time. This explains why the present tense is by no means

always possible even though the future time is clearly indicated (see 96).

Present and Perfect

142. The perfect tense in its usual function (112) is in one respect a tense that treats of the present. But it looks on the present in its connection with the past, which the present tense does not do. This is well brought out by the following passage in William de Morgan's *Joseph Vance*, ch. 14 (p. 124):

> I made up my mind that I would ask Miss Lossie what she thought on this point as I walked along the road to Poplar Villa. But here was a disappointment! Miss Lossie had gone to Mrs. Spencer's at Hampstead to stay over Monday and had taken Master Joseph. The Doctor was in his Library — he always was. Anne suggested what I hesitated to ask, that she should tell the Doctor I had come. I said "Please, yes" — because the expression "You have come" revealed to me that I was expected. Whereas the expression "You are here" would not have done so. What nice phases there are in language! — I was told, after application above, to go up to the Library.

143. It occurs sometimes that the perfect is used although the relation to the past is not thought of. Thus *I have got the money at last* is an ordinary perfect; but *Show me your purse; what money have you got* may very well mean; and, in fact, would usually mean: what money do you possess at the moment, or what money is there in your purse; in this case *I have got* is a pure present tense in its meaning. Such a perfect with the meaning of a present, which may be called a perfect-present, explains the use of *have got* as an auxiliary in a sentence like "How much money have you got left?"

Perfect and Preterite

144. The difference between the perfect tense and the preterite is that, although both refer to a past action or state, the perfect considers the action or

state in its bearings on the present time, whereas the preterite considers the action or state as entirely separated from the present. The following quotations may help to bring out the difference between the two tenses.

Every one who has been to school and still remembers what he was taught there, knows that Rügen is the biggest island Germany possesses. Eliz. in Rügen.

The extreme section of Indian opinion asserted some time ago a clear ascendancy over it (viz. over the Indian National Congress), and have retained it ever since. The Mail 22/9, 1920.

The first of these (books or manuscripts) has been lost, but it has lately been discovered at Cambridge. Stopford Brooke, Primer.

King Manoel, who has been playing lawn tennis at Felixstowe every day during the tournament there, having games among others with Mrs. Hilliard and Mrs. Lambert Chambers, presented prizes to the winners at the close of the tournament. Daily Mail, 20/8, 12.

The Sultan has sent a message of congratulation to Nazim which was received with cheers by the troops. ib. Nov. 1912.

The "Street of Adventure," as Fleet Street was recently called, has a history which, it has been said, no man can write. Athen. 28 9, 12.

During the last few days nothing was done to insure peace in the coal industry, but preparations for a strike have gone steadily on. Daily News 17/2, 12.

We now know that the first dramatic lesson, which I have already quoted, many years ago, in these columns, was sound.

Dr. Saleeby, Pall Mall Gazette.

It is very easy to jump to conclusions like these; but Sir Edwin Pears, who is a judge of "atrocities," and has not spared the Turkish soldier in the past, measures his words carefully when he writes of these recent doings. Athenaeum 7/10, 11.

How good *Punch* is this week! One of the very best I have ever read — cuts *and* letter-press. Who wrote "A City Idyll"? It is inimitably funny.

Ainger, in Life p. 136.

In the past our Army has been a separate profession with a peculiar glitter and pride of its own. Times Lit. 5/8, 15.

But though it (viz. the proposal) has been withdrawn it was none the less put forward; indeed it is more than possible that the appearance of the criticism was the cause of its withdrawal. Pilot 22/8, 1903.

145. The difference between the two tenses is also shown in such a case as the following. We may say: *I called to ask you, if you would join us*, or *I have called*. The preterite would seem to be more polite or modest; it would seem to suggest: that was my idea when I rang the bell, but now I am waiting to hear what you wish to say. Similarly we use the preterite in: *I wanted to ask you if you would give a subscription.*

The same idea seems to be in M. Arnold Bennett's mind in his comparison of the present and the preterite in the following passage (Roll-Call, I ch. 1 § 3).

> The young girl, opening the front door, had said: "Do you want to see father?" And instantly the words were out George had realized that she might have said: "*Did* [1]) you want to see father?".... in the idiom of the shop-girl or clerk, and that if she had said 'did' he would have been gravely disappointed and hurt. But she had not! Of course she was incapable of such a locution, and it was silly of him to have thought otherwise, even momentarily.

Pluperfect and Preterite

146. Both the pluperfect and the preterite express a past action or state; the pluperfect, however, expresses it as past from the point of view of a past time. When the past time from which the action or state is regarded has once been mentioned it often occurs that the speaker continues to regard the other actions or states as simply past without expressly showing that it is past with regard to a past time. We can say:

1) Italics in the original.

He went after I had given him the necessary instructions.
But it is equally clear that the instructions were given before his going away when we say:
He went after I gave him the necessary instructions.

147. Hence we often find the preterite used in this function in connected clauses when the context (the conjunction e.g.) shows the relation of time between them.

After Miss Matty **went** to bed I lighted the candle again.
Mrs. Gaskell, Cranford, p. 286.

After he **left** Stourbridge he spent two years at home in in desultory reading, Bailey, Johnson, p. 89.

Even Kate was not pleased either with the company or the frivolous course of things in her friend's house, where matters had changed considerably since Kate **was** there some six months before her marriage. Stephen Compton, p. 252.

It was understood that after the railway was **completed** [1]) they would return to Petersburg. But the Caucasus is a wonderful country. It grows upon one, and holds one by a thousand invisible links. Thirty years later my father still lived on the same spot where he **settled** first.
A Mere Woman, p. 2.

Shortly after the war **was** over, he was murdered by the Persians among whom he had taken refuge.
Goodspeed, History p. 178.

That Nurse **was** ever young Michael could not bring himself to believe. Sinister Street p. 11.

It **was** dark for some time before Mr. Farman ended his long flight. Ill. London News 4/9, 1901.

Perfect and Perfect Future **148.** The use of the perfect to refer to what is thought of as past at at future moment, or at least to what is considered with respect to what will be past at a future time is parallel to the use of the present in adverb clauses to refer to the future (140).

1) The preterite has the same function here as that of the pluperfect mentioned in 115, 3.

Concord of Tense

149. In indirect style the tense is not affected by a head-clause in a present tense.

Direct Style	*Indirect Style*
You are wrong.	He says that you are wrong.
I have lost my book.	He says he has lost his book.

150. In indirect style the third person of a future tense sometimes has *shall* if the subject of the head-clause and the subordinate clause are the same. The first person sometimes has *will*, (to report *you will*). See 156—8.

> I just wanted to see you, Joan. I'm told I'll be most useful as a gunner because of my mathematics.
>
> Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 13 § 3.

> A well-known teacher of elocution tells me that she thinks she shall be compelled to leave off teaching in girls' schools.
>
> Miss L. Soames, Phonetics.

151. In the following case the preterite *was* is used to emphasize the character of indirect style, but, as the context shows, not its irreality.

> Some French critic has said that England was the least favourable birthplace for genius, an opinion the originality of my own talent compels me to share.
>
> White, Mr. John Strood ch. 1.

152. When the verb is in a past tense, the tense of the verb in the subordinate clause is generally affected in indirect style, every present tense being changed into the corresponding past tense.

Direct Style	*Indirect Style*
Present	Preterite
Perfect	Pluperfect
Present Future	Preterite Future
Perfect Future	Pluperfect Future

153. In the following quotations the preterite reports the present in its various functions. In the last example it depends upon the historic present *explains.*

1. (84). Mr. Masterman intimated that he was prepared to accept the amendment.

2. (92). When I was a boy I was told over and over again that if I lay on the wet grass, I should get the rheumatism when I got older. Sweet, Spoken English p. 87.

But he was strong in the feeling that when his purpose was told it would meet the approval at any rate of Mrs Dale.

Trollope, Last Chron. ch. 28.

3. (93). Nor did James forget that Posy was possessed, under Mrs. B's will, of some three thousand pounds which **became** hers absolutely when she attained her majority.

Vachell, Quinneys' p. 200.

I gathered from his wife in the course of the afternoon that though his life was not threatened, yet there was no doubt that his helplessness was increasing. He could still hold a book and turn the pages; but it was improbable that he could do so for long.

Benson, Thread of Gold p. 75 f.

4, (100). He agreed at the General's suggestion to aim at a commission in the Bengal Cavalry, preferably in a regiment which **wore** an uniform of canary yellow. Sinister Street p. 111.

"I thought you dined at seven." "So we do when my father is at home." Sweet, Element. no. 63.

I may mention that these two points constitute part of the reason why, after many experiments in blank verse, I came to the conclusion that the tragic trimeter was best represented in English by rhyme. G. Murray, Essays III 22.

5. Large estates are being broken up in consequence, it is said, of recent taxation. This is the reason given by Viscount Hythe for selling part of his estate. The burden of recent taxation, he explains, made it impossible for any one who derived an income from land to live in the ancestral home. Everyman, 29/11, 12.

154. The neutral present is sometimes left unchanged when the verb in the head-clause is in a past tense. This

makes the statement more general or abstract than the preterite (*a*). When the present refers to what is necessarily independent of time (as in the first and third examples of 100) it is hardly possible to use a past tense in indirect style (*b*). When the preterite is used in such sentences it seems to have modal function although the preterite may simply be used to express the subjectivity of the statement (*c*).

a. He knew what poverty means. Gissing,
New Grub Street, ch. 5.

Michael wondered whether a spirit haunting the earth feels in the perception of its former territory so much shame as he felt now in approaching 64 Carlington Road.
Sinister Street, p. 573.

b. I knew perfectly well that the sun does not turn round the earth.

c. "A change from London," he said.
"I want the country and I want hills," she answered. "I was told there were fine hills." Phillpotts, Beacon I ch. 3.

Those undying Greek masters of ours adhered to the belief that there was an absolute standard of right human action, however dimly it might be discerned. Times Lit. 5/1, 17.

Other cases of an indirect present instead of a preterite are mentioned in the sections on the subjunctive.

155. The indirect pluperfect corresponds to the direct perfect. In headclauses it may report a preterite.

Mr. J. W. Baron, chairman of the Scholarships Sub-Committee, announced that 129 applications for free secondary education had been made by the children of soldiers who had fallen in the war. Examinations had been conducted by headmasters of secondary schools in 68 cases, and all had been accepted except nine. The remaining pupils would be examined before the opening of the new school term.
Times Ed. S. 30/9 20.

"You know he is on his way back from Uganda?" Aunt Phyllis remarked with an unreal innocence.

Lady Charlotte had not known [1]). But she stood up gallantly to the blow. Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 5 § 2.

156. In the indirect preterite future and pluperfect future the third person frequently has *should* when the subjects of the two clauses are the same. See 150 and 160 last three examples).

For a woman of forty-two — as he supposed she would be — she was extraordinarily lithe. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 19 p. 231.

We decided that we expected Lady Doleford ... The cake would be rusks, and there wouldn't be much fire.

Cotes, Cinderella ch. 7 p. 73,

When I said good-bye to him he smiled at me and hoped that I should repeat my visit. (See 158).

The Revenue Bill, Mr. Asquith thought, might pass as an agreed measure, but he said that if attempts were made to enlarge its scope he would be compelled reluctantly to withdraw it.

Early on the following morning Mr. Slope was summoned to the bishop's dressing-room, and went there fully expecting that he should find his lordship very indignant, Trollope, Barchester.

He had chafed at every stoppage, fumed at every delay, and been able to think of nothing but whether or no he should catch the train. Montgomery, Misunderstood, ch. XIII.

They foresaw that it could not be long before they should be obliged to submit. Shorthouse, Inglesant ch. 12. p. 129.

From the moment the Jesuit began to speak, Inglesant knew that he should go. ib ch. 20 p. 206.

George said he should be all right, and would [2]) rather like it, but he would advise Harris and me not to think of it, as he felt sure we should both be ill. Jerome, Three Men in a Boat ch. 1.

It seemed to her as if she should meet Osborne and hear it all explained [3]). Gaskell, Wives III p. 166.

He said he should come again about half-past-five. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 3 § 2.

---

1) i. e. she said: "I did not know."

2) See 124.

3) Note that the *grammatical* subjects of the two clauses are not the same.

157. In the first person *would* is used (to report *you will:* see 150). In the second quotation *would* is necessary because *should* would suggest *ought to.*

> When I came to myself Doctor C. was saying I would have to sleep there that night. Hall Caine, The Woman.
>
> It was a small and harmless joke, but it turned on the Firm, and dire were the consequences thereof. The loftily gracious Mr. McBlacksmith froze suddenly.... Jokes were permissible, desirable at times; there were jokes even in the immortal works published by McBlacksmith — but a joke at the expense of the Firm, **I would** understand —
>
> I understood, and I have cultivated gravity ever since.
>
> Pilot, 21/5, 1904.

158. We often find *would* in the first person in reporting a sentence in which *will* occurred in the subordinate clause (a doubly reported future, as it were). *Would* is also the usual (or exclusive) form in the third person, even when the clauses are the same.

> Lady Lippington said at once that she hoped we wouldn't mind its not being " a function."
>
> Cotes, Cinderella ch. 8 p. 35.
>
> He told me that he thought I would suit him very well.
>
> Chance II, 69.
>
> And Constance had said that she supposed she would have to manage with a charwoman until Rose's advent.
>
> Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 4, § 6.

159. The past tenses are not affected by the change into indirect style. The result is that the preterite may report both the present and the preterite, the pluperfect both the perfect and pluperfect, the past future tenses both the present future tenses and the (modal) past future tenses.

160. A few illustrations of the use of past tenses to report the same tense will suffice.

He reminded the House that in 1893 76 or 77 days **were** allotted to the Bill of that year. Times W.

After referring to the fact that his brother was the managing director of the Marconi Company, he stated emphatically that he had taken no part in the negotiations relating to the agreement. In fact, he **did** not know that such an agreement was contemplated until his brother **told** him at a private social function that he **was** negotiating with the Government. ib.

Michael was inclined ...., and he wished he **possessed** enough knowledge of his own peculiar college customs to counter Alan's display. Sinister Street p. 510.

Alderman Taylor stated that this was the first occasion upon which the estimates had been exceeded, and **had** it not been for the fact that there had been an increase of £ 11.221 in the estimated amount of Govermment grant the deficiency would have been greater still. Times Ed. S. 30/9, 20.

Sylvia consoled Mrs. Gainsborough and rejoiced in her assurance that she did not know what she **should** have done without her. Mackenzie, Sylvia p. 266.

The recollection of that day was not a pleasant one on the whole, though she often thought how much she **should** like to see the gardens again. Gaskell, Wives I ch. 4.

Mr. Justice Scrutton said under ordinary circumstances he **should** have sentenced prisoner to penal servitude.
Daily News 18/10, 11.

Aspect

161. Aspect is the translation of a term used in Slavonic grammar to denote the character of a verbal form in so far as it expresses whether the action is looked upon in its entirety, with special reference to some part (chiefly the beginning or the end).

162. The Germanic languages usually have no form to express differences of aspect. But this does not prevent

speakers of these languages from being frequently conscious of such differences [1]). And occasionally there are forms that serve, partly or exclusively, to express differences of aspect.

163. In imitation of Slavonic grammar we chiefly distinguish an *imperfective* and a *perfective* aspect.

The difference between imperfective and perfective is soonest understood when the two aspects are contrasted. An imperfective aspect is generally expressed by *to sit*, a perfective by *to sit down: he sat in a corner of the room; he sat down in a corner of the room.*

The imperfective aspect necessarily implies duration; hence it is often called the *durative* aspect. The perfective aspect often considers the action with regard to the moment of its completion, hence it is also called the *momentaneous* aspect.

164. Perfectivity is often expressed in English by adding an adverb: *to sit down, to sit up (in bed), to sink down, to burn down, to lie down, to stand up, to pull up, to drive away.* These groups are separable compounds.

Composition is also a frequent means of making a verb perfective in Dutch; compare the simple verb and its compound in the following cases: *uitlezen, opeten, inslikken, uitspuwen, verhoren, inschrijven,* etc.

165. A translation of the Dutch words will show that English sometimes uses different words, in other cases uses one verb for both aspects.

Thus *opeten* would often be rendered by *to finish, eten* by *to eat; inschrijven* by *to enter, schrijven* by *to write; uitlezen* by *to finish, lezen* by *to read.* On the other hand both *slikken* and *inslikken* are *to swallow: It hurts me to swallow*

1) It would be a mistake, however, to force all verbs into some class with regard to aspect. Many may be said to be indifferent in this respect, e.g. *to give, lend, explain, revenge, punish, greet, confess, justify,* etc.

(*slikken*) and *Baby will swallow the ball if you don't take it away* (*inslikken*).

166. Composition by means of an adverb or prefix to express aspect is found in several Indogermanic languages. Students of Old Germanic may be reminded of the Gotic prefix *ga-* (Dutch *ge*) [1]. In Modern French the prefix *re* (or *r*, before vowels) is often used, especially in colloquial French, to express the perfective aspect [2]. Thus *rabattre*, *rabaisser*, *rattraper*, *réunir* chiefly differ from the simple verbs *abattre*, *abaisser*, *attraper*, *unir* by the aspect they express. The original meaning of *re-* 'again' is often completely lost, so that *rentrez donc* may be said although the person addressed has never entered the house.

167. Sometimes two completely different verbs may be looked upon as a pair, one expressing the imperfective, the other the perfective aspect.

Imperfective	Perfective
to live	to settle
to strike	to hit
to say	to tell
to hold [3]	to seize

Another pair is *to ascend* (imperf.) and *to mount* (perfective). This difference is clear when we compare *to ascend a hill*, and *to mount a hill*. Hence also, though we can say *to mount a horse*, it would be absurd to say *to ascend a horse*.

168. It may also help the student to become familiar with the difference of aspect, if some examples are added of the same verb expressing the two aspects in different contexts.

---

1) Streitberg, Paul und Braune's Beiträge 15 p.p. 70—177.

2) Vendryes, Le Langage, p. 130 f.

3) But *to hold up*, *to hold in (the reins)*, are perfective, according to 164.

1. (Imperf.). We call a man blind when he cannot *see*.
   (Perf.). I *see* what you mean.
2. (Imperf.). We call a man deaf when he cannot *hear*.
   (Perf.). I did not *hear* whait you said.
3. I have *thought* [1]) of your proposal, but I don't *think* [2]) it is a practicable plan.
4. (Imperf.). He knows English very well.
   (Perf.). I wonder how he should have known us for Americans. Oxf. Dict.
5. (Imperf.). Go and learn your lessons now.
   (Perf.). All that he knew about their treachery he had learned at second hand. Macaulay (Oxf. Dict.).

169. The distinction of an imperfective and a perfective aspect is not exhaustive. Thus the difference between *to read a book* and *to peruse a book* is hardly correctly stated by calling *read* imperfective, *peruse* perfective. The latter might perhaps be called *terminative*, because it expresses the action as occupying an amount of time but with special reference to its end. Such a distinction would only be useful, however, if there were many verbs showing the same difference; it would be necessary if there were grammatical means of expressing it. But neither of these cases is found in English.

170. It may be useful, however, to distinguish an *iterative* aspect, which means regular repetition of the same action.

The iterative aspect is often expressed by the verb without any outward change. It may be indicated by an accompanying adverb adjunct.

After dinner sit a while, after supper walk a mile.

School begins at 8.30 A.M. except on Wednesdays and Saturdays.

He goes to Germany once a year.

He always declared that it was impossible for him to interfere.

When I have asked a singer, as I have constantly had to

1) Imperfective. 2) Perfective.

do, whether he sang a particular song, I have often received the reply, etc. Sharp, Folksong p. 17.

171. The distinction of an iterative aspect enables us to explain the difference between *to have* and *to have got*. It makes no difference to the meaning expressed whether we say *He has a lot of money* or *He has got a lot of money*. And yet, instead of *Every year he has a month's holiday* it would be impossible to say: *he has got*. The reason is that the perfect present is durative, not iterative.

172. The iterative aspect may be distinguished from the *frequentative* aspect. Thus, frequent repetition is expressed by repetition of a word (often with vowel-variation) as in *fiddle-faddle*, etc. See the sections or *Word-formation*. The distinction of these two aspects is also useful in discussing the difference between *would* and *used*.

173. Sometimes a verb is used to express the beginning of the action, the *inchoative* aspect. Such verbal expressions are *to catch sight of*, *to take possession of*, *to take one's stand*. Very often, however, it is the context only that shows us that the inchoative aspect is meant, as in the following sentences with *to know* and *to stand*.

When I first knew him, during my engagement to my husband, he had just practically — though not formally — given up his orders. Mrs. H. Ward, Harper's, May 1918.

Five minutes went by, and then a man in uniform, like a 'bus conductor, came out of nowhere, and stood in front of him. Temple Thurston, Thirteen I p. 29.

We might in the same way distinguish *to recollect* as inchoative from *to remember* as durative. It will be seen that the inchoative is closely related to the perfective aspect: the cause is that both draw special attention to one point of the time of the action.

174. Up to the present we have only discussed the aspects as far as they can be deduced from the meanings of the

verbs. Such differences concern the lexicographer rather than the grammarian [1]). There is also a temptation of making such distinctions a game of ingenuity without much regard to grammatical needs. This temptation is the greater because English, like other modern Indogermanic languages, has very few grammatical forms to express distinctions of aspect. Indeed, apart from the English progressive, we cannot say that aspect is a regular grammatical category in any of the modern languages of Europe, with the exception of the Slavonic group. For this reason it seems useful to point out the traces of a grammatical expression of differences of aspect in the languages that may be supposed to be more or less familiar to our readers.

175. In has already been pointed out (110) that the perfect tense of some verbs takes *to have* or *to be* according to the aspect that must be expressed. The difference is not very marked, however, as seems to be shown by the quotations in 111, and it is generally possible to use either construction without producing what would be decidedly wrong English. In this respect it differs from the similar difference in the perfect of verbs of movement in Dutch. These verbs *must* take *hebben* in their imperfective aspect, as in *wij hebben een paar uur gewandeld* (we have walked for a couple of hours). And they *must* take *zijn* in their perfective aspect, as in *we zijn weer naar huis gewandeld* (we have walked home again). Just as in English the difference of aspect is not formally expressed in any other tense [2]).

176. Dutch also has a means of expressing the durative aspects: the copula *zijn* (*to be*) with *aan* and the infinitive

1) For a very full treatment of this question, see Poutsma, *Characters of the English Verb.* 1921.

2) It may not be superfluous to point out that the difference of aspect is independent of distinctions of time.

used as a noun with the neuter article: *Hij is aan het verven*, which is perfectly equivalent to *He is painting*.

French uses a similar construction to ours: *Je suis à lire, je suis en train de lire* [1]).

177. French also has [2]) a means of expressing the perfective or momentaneous aspect when the verb refers to the past: the *passé défini*. This is similar to the Greek aorist, but it should be remembered that the Greek aorist does not necessarily express past time [3]), the difference between the *infinitive* βαλεῖν of the aorist expressing 'to hit', the present infinitive βάλλειν 'to throw', e.g., being naturally independent of time.

178. The frequentative aspect is brought out in English by the suffixes *-le, -re,* as in *crackle, prattle, sparkle, clamber, glitter, slumber*. But these verbs are not formed with a living suffix, so that we ought rather to say that the aspect is expressed by special verbs.

It may also be pointed out that the frequentative aspect expressed by these formations is not identical with that of the verbs referred to in 170-2. In *crackle, prattle,* etc. it is not the repetition of an action that is expressed, but an action that is looked upon as being itself an iteration of simpler actions. See also below, 182, on *to keep* and other auxiliaries of aspect.

179. We have a living suffix denoting the inchoative aspect in *to redden, to sicken*. But this suffix is also used in other functions so that the inchoative function is clear from the context only, or from the meaning of the verb, not from its form.

180. We sometimes find verbs with no other function than that of indicating the aspect of the following non-finite verb: such verbs may be called *auxiliaries of aspect*.

---

1) Meillet, *Linguistique historique et linguistique générale*, p. 187.

2) Or *had*, for it is really lost in spoken French.

3) Brugmann—Thumb, *Griechische Grammatik*, §§ 554 ff.

This is very clear in the cases of *will* when used to express repetition, so that it is treated as a form-word in the sections on *Auxiliaries*. In Dutch *liggen*, *staan*, and *zitten*, are used to express the durative aspect [1]).

181. Other verbs are used occasionally to express differences of aspect. Among these we may mention *to come*, which frequently occurs as a means of expressing what may be called the *resultative* aspect.

> The reproach of being a nation of mere imitators has been so frequently directed against the Japanese that it has come to be regarded as a truth specially applicable in their case.
>
> The undisturbed stability of the motor-car market here can be explained only in one way, and that is that the motor-car is more and more coming to be realized as a commercial necessity. Times W. 14 12, 17.
>
> "This is a strange note," said Mr. Utterson; and then sharply, "How do you come to have it open?" Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll ed. Schutt p. 73.

182. Similarly *to fall* is sometimes used to express the inchoative aspect. *To keep* with a verbal form in *-ing* is used as an auxiliary of the iterative aspect; see, below, the sections on the *Gerund*.

> One night during this last illness that had brought him home he fell thinking of Zimbabwe and the lost cities of Africa. Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 9 § 3.
>
> He kept changing his plans. Tout, History of England.

183. We might also look upon *to continue*, *to begin*, *to cease*, *to stop*, *to finish*, as auxiliaries of aspect. See also the sections on the *Gerund*, *the Infinitive and Gerund Compared*, and on the *Gerund and Participle*.

> No one is more loud or insistent than he who has just ceased to be labelled new.
>
> Waugh, Loom of Youth p. 26.

---

1) See my *Grammar of Modern Dutch*, § 163.

We never stop changing, yet we never change altogether.
Times Lit. 25/5, 22.

But the historians will stop talking of Chaucer as a solitary lighthouse in a dark sea, and tiresomely recounting the names of Lydgate and Hoccleve as those of two dullards who happen to be remembered because there is nothing better to remember.
J. C. Squire in Observer Oct. 30, 1921.

As I finished speaking to Bony, he looked over to the grief-worn figure....
de Morgan, Vance, ch. 41 p. 416.

Similarly *to be apt* might be said to express the frequentative aspect.

Separation ...is apt to idealise the removed object.
Hardy, Far from the Madding Crowd, ch. 5.

184. For the differences of aspect expressed by the non-finite verb, see the sections on the *Infinitive and Gerund* and on the *Infinitive and Participle.*

185. The only regular construction serving chiefly to express aspect is the combination of *to be* with a verbal form in *-ing*, the *progressive.*

Progressive

186. When the verb *to be* with a verbal form in *-ing* is used to express the aspect of the verb, the construction is called the progressive. Although the two forms (*to be* and the form in *-ing*) are usually found in close connection, they can be separated. The construction is clearly felt as a parallel to the copula with a predicative adjective.

We were clear of the harbour and steering with a fine breeze for the English coast. Poor Jack (a boys' book).

We were free and making good headway. ib.

Nobody asked where you were going, with whom going, or how going. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 26 p. 328.

The town's murmur was dying, the house lights were dead already. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 17.

187. When *to be* is used with a form in *-ing* that has no verbal meaning, but is used in the same meaning as an attributive participle (or adjective) we do not speak of a progressive. Thus we do not necessarily have a progressive in *to be amusing, improving, ailing, disappointing, edifying, forthcoming, misleading, obliging, willing*, although most of these may be progressives.

We have a progressive in *I have been amusing the baby, I am not misleading you;* but there is no progressive in *The book is amusing enough; The statement may not be incorrect, but it is certainly misleading.*

To be missing is generally no progressive, as in *Three leaves of the manuscript are still missing*, but it can be used as a progressive, as in the following.

I don't know what made me come back to London. I'm missing so much fun. Sinister Street, p. 756.

He writes with that personal air of conviction that is so telling. Everyman 20/12, 12,

She has been telling me her secrets.

188. The progressive is chiefly used to express that the action or state is thought of as being in progress, continuous. The effect of the progressive is not the same in all the tenses so that it will be useful to illustrate the form in the different tenses.

189. The progressive form of the present tense is frequently used to express present time; compare 84.

Therefore it is that this country has made, is making, and is prepared to make sacrifices of blood and treasure unparalleled in its history. Mr. A. Balfour.

Even where Departments are most free from these defects, we find that there are important features in which the organisation falls short of a standard which is becoming progres-

sively recognised as the foundation of efficient action [1]). Report of the Machinery of Government Committee p. 4.

A plain categorical proposition is becoming less and less credible to average minds. Or at least the slovenly willingness to hold two directly contradictory propositions at one and the same time is becoming more and more common [1]).

Morley, Compromise p. 18.

"Perhaps I'm being too inquisitive?" she suggested gently. This is only another way of getting one's question answered.

Temple Thurston, City I ch. 8.

She tapped with her foot on the ground. "You are being too ridiculous," she said. Cannan, Corner ch. 19.

The steps that have been taken are a beginning and a promise that this business is being handled at last in a systematic way. Times W. 12/1, 17.

Lord Derby protested with great earnestness that all in his power has been done, is being done, and will be done to secure the fulfilment of the pledge. Times 16/3, 16.

The same idea seems to be differently expressed by the following construction.

The democratic method is not infallible, as we are in process of discovering. Observer, 30/10, 20.

190. The progressive present is also used to refer to future time, both in headclauses (*a*) and in adverb clauses (*b*).

a. "What are you doing next Sunday?"
"We're going out to Epping together."
"Ah — and the Sunday after that?"
"He works every other Sunday."

Temple Thurston, Thirteen III p. 49 t.

"I'm sleeping here to-night, you know, for the first time," said Guy. He had tried all the way back not to make this announcement, but the sight of his own gateway destroyed his reserve. Mackenzie, Guy and Pauline p. 11.

---

1) Note the addition of *progressively, less and less, more and more.*

Come to-morrow evening, won't you, after dinner? Heath is dining with me [1]). Hichens, Ambition ch. 1.

The girl's coming out in three days' time. They're giving a ball [1]) in Portland Place for her. Nobody knows much about her. Walpole, Duchess of Wrexe ch. 1 § 3.

The English Association is holding its annual general meeting on January 12th and 13th at University College, Gower Street. Some interesting papers and discussions are promised, and a large company of men of letters will be in attendance. Mr. A. C. Bradley is delivering the address from the chair, Prof. Boas, a vice-president of the Association, is to open an interesting conference on 'The Teaching of English Composition' on Saturday. Dr. W. H. D. Rouse is to read a short paper. On Friday the members and their friends are dining together at the Holborn Restaurant.

Athenaeum 23/12, 11.

b. I shall be working hard when you are enjoying yourself in England.

191. The progressive historical present tense is rare.

This (pamphlet) was briefly noticed in the May issue of the 'Monthly Review,' where Goldsmith was then acting as scribbler-general to Griffiths, the proprietor of the Magazine..., and it was described as in Montesquieu's manner. A year later Goldsmith is writing mysteriously to his friend Bob Bryanton, of Ballymulrey, in Ireland, about a 'Chinese whom he shall soon make talk like an Englishman....'

Dobson, Eighteenth Century Vignettes, p. 152.

192. On the progressive neutral present, see 198.

193. The progressive preterite is very frequent.

At this point Oswald ceased to read. He was realizing that these words meant that Dolly was dead.

Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 6 § 2.

But meantime journalism was giving him the reputation

1) The time is indicated in the preceding sentence.

that literature could not give, and, like many another man of letters, he was being loudly acclaimed for work unworthy his talent. Whibley, Thackeray p. 76.

An hour later, they were calmly fishing as if nothing had happened. Vachell, Spragge p. 164.

They (i. e. the doctors) stretched me out, with a convenient exposure of my side, and, almost before I realised what was happening, the chloroform was being administered.

Wells, Country p. 165.

Mr. Gibson had come in very late, and was having a solitary dinner in the dining-room.

Gaskell, Wives I ch. 19.

In 1880 California was emerging from its mining stage of existence. Times W. 2/1, 14.

But even in the earliest forms of English society of which we catch traces this right of self-defence was being modified and restricted by a growing sense of public justice.

Green, Short Hist. p. 2.

From 1750 to 1752 he was writing *The Rambler*, a sort of newspaper essay which appeared every Tuesday and Friday.

In the reign of Elizabeth England was just entering on her part in that great struggle among European peoples for the dominion and exploitation of the outlying and recently discovered portions of the planet, which still continues. The foundations of the Empire were being laid by Drake and Hawkins in the Atlantic.

Seccombe and Allen, Age of Shakesp. p. 3.

It was Saturday, and all over the Square little stalls, with yellow linen roofs, were being erected for the principal market of the week. Bennett, Old W. Tale I ch. 3 § 4.

194. Both the perfect (*a*) and the pluperfect (*b*) occur very frequently in the progressive form.

a. The broad process of change which has now been going on continuously for some years is one of rising guaranteed earnings, shortening hours, and slackening effort. It cannot go on indefinitely without causing economic disaster, which

is, in fact, already in progress. Works are closing down, because it it impossible to cover the cost of production by sales, and unemployment is beginning to make itself seriously felt. The Mail 22/9, 20.

The changes in the Ministry announced this morning should dispose of the crop of rumours with which the Conservative Press has been entertaining its readers for some time past. Daily News 14/2, 12.

Delightful people — I've been seeing a great deal of them lately. Cotes, Cinderella ch. 7 p. 81.

You already know we have been having an exciting time here. Times W. 7/12, 17.

Notoriously the novelist (including the playwright, who is a sub-novelist) has been taking bread out of the mouths of other artists. Bennett, Eng. Rev. June 1913.

We are at present being borne up on a wave of good trade, and we have been having the strikes associated with it, many in number and large in extent. Times W. 6/12, 12.

Two or three times I have been beginning to talk about it, and forgetting you weren't to know.

Montgomery, Misunderstood.

b. Peter's mother had been moaning but now she moaned no more .... All night Peter's father had been thinking what an imperfect husband he had always been.

Wells, Joan and Peter p. 1 f.

Mr. Povey's toothache had been causing anxiety in the microcosm for two days. Bennett, Old W. Tale I ch. 1 § 2.

The camp at which his letters met him was in the Busoga country, and all day long the expedition had been tramping between high banks of big-leaved plants.

Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 6 § 2.

But while the county court was thus losing its high place as a judicial tribunal, it had been becoming the very foundation of the political constitution.

Maitland, Const. Hist p. 43.

They were full of welcome, full of curiosity. All through the long day they had been missing their bright young

visitor, and three or four times in every hour they had been wondering and settling what everybody was doing at that exact minute. Gaskell, Wives I ch. 14.

All this time, while the father was fretting and fuming in his arm-chair, the son, the unlucky cause of all this discomfort, had been standing on the mat outside the door, trying to screw up enough courage to go in as if nothing was the matter with him. Anstey, Vice Versa ch. 1.

The boy in blue had been looking over his shoulder at a black barge advancing slowly, towed by a gaunt white horse. Wells, Country p. 172.

195. The progressive past tenses are also used in indirect style.

Bianca had in effect declared that she was being driven out of her own house. Galsworthy, Fraternity ch. 33.

He (i.e. Luther) did not mean to attack the authority of the Church; he only thought its authority was being abused. Times Lit. 2/11, 17.

He was conscious of resentment and told himself that it was because these things were being said in Mr. Folyat's house. Cannan, Corner ch. 10.

I knew more and more certainly that I should die under the operation; at times I think I was inclined to pose to myself. The doctors were coming at eleven, and I did not get up. Wells, Country p. 164.

One day he told his housekeeper that four gentlemen were coming to dinner. Sweet, Element. no. 55.

This was the last statue he would do in Ireland. He was leaving Ireland. On this point his mind was made up. Moore, Untilled Field p. 5.

196. The future tenses are also used in the progressive forms, but the meaning is seldom the one mentioned until now. The progressive future differs from the non-progressive forms in drawing attention to the process of the action or state; it is more descriptive.

I am very busy and must stop; but Tom says he will be writing to you next week.

I know if I wait much longer, I shall be telling you the secret before I can stop myself.

Montgomery, Misunderstood p. 81.

When do you suppose you'll be giving me another shilling, father? ib. p. 82.

After a few chapters we find ourselves wondering, not what will happen next in the way in which ordinary story-wrights arouse our wonder, but what the folk will be saying or doing next. W. Jerrold, Meredith, p. 146.

I shall be leaving you in half an hour (pilot to second mate).

Conrad, Chance II 46.

"Ten years hence," he said, "if Reardon is still alive, I shall be lending him five-pound notes."

Gissing, New Grub Street ch. 1.

"Don't go on talking so fast," said Molly. "Rest. No one will interrupt us; I will go on with my sewing; when you want to say anything more I shall be listening."

Gaskell, Wives III p. 79.

He rose. "Ah, well, tea will be getting cold. Good day, Miss Winter." Niven, Porcelain Lady p. 100.

".... Had your tea, Mr. Brough?"

"No — it will be waiting I expect. It's after four now.

ib. p. 142 (same speaker in both cases).

But Sheila touched his arm, and he stopped very suddenly. "She doesn't trust us. I shall always be being pushed away from him by her." Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 9.

"I shall be going to Paris soon," she said. "When I'm there I'll look her up." Sidgwick, Severins p. 185.

If miners and mineowners prove able to devise a system, along the lines agreed upon last week, they will be opening a new phase of industrial history. Observer, 31/10, 20.

"When will you be going back, sir?" asked the driver.

And Mr. Brumley reflected too briefly and committed a fatal error. "No," he said with his mind upon that loose silver. "We shall go back by train."

Wells, Harman ch. 6 § 5.

We should not be doing our duty by the public if we echoed without considerable qualification the expression of pleased surprise with which the House of Commons on Tuesday received Mr. Bonar Law's figures. Times W. 2/11, 17.

I knew that as soon as my father had got to Switzerland he would be wanting to push on to Italy.

Sweet, Element. no. 73.

Those reeds burn like thatch, and if the poor devils ran out they got stabbed or shot, and if they went into the water the crocodiles would be getting them.

Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 3 § 3.

It was part of the etiquette of the shop that customers, a any rate chance customers, should not exist for the daughters of the house, until an assistant had formally drawn attention to them. Otherwise every one who wanted a pennyworth of tape would be expecting to be served by Miss Baines or Miss Sophia, if Miss Sophia were there.

Bennett, Old W. Tale I ch. 5 § 4.

The watcher wondered, with a little prick of jealousy, what they would be discussing in the large bedroon.

ib. II ch. 2 § 2.

Who could have foretold ten years ago that Joan would have been declaring with tears in her voice but much stiffness in her manner that she had "stood enough" from Peter.

Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 11 § 1.

197. The progressive is also used in the non-future tenses in this descriptive function. Indeed it may be that this is the real function of the progressive, whereas the function that has given rise to the name 'progressive' is only due to the context. It should be added, however, that the progressive function is the usual one in the present and the preterite.

In the following quotations the progressive has a descriptive function.

"We're simply loving it here" [1]), Stella said.

Sinister Street p. 987.

1) i. e. loving to live here.

We're hoping you will be able to come and dine with us for Twelfth Night. ib. p. 988.

Alan was evidently pleased that he was being able to show Stella his own college. ib. p. 813.

Michael was relieved when Alan offered to drive his mother and Stella back to the Randolph. He was not wishing for company that morning, but rather to walk slowly down to college alone. ib. p. 818.

The other day an intelligent London bookseller was lamenting that he scarcely ever sold a copy of Burns.

Times Lit. 21/1, 15 (introductory sentence).

Guy looked doubtful. It was seeming a pity to waste this afternoon without unpacking a single case.

Mackenzie, Guy and Pauline ch. 1 p. 9.

And how have you been spending the money?

Bennett, Old W. Tale II ch. 4.

No doubt we could, if necessary, carry on for a time without the press; and I agree with those newspaper writers who have been saying recently that the importance of the press is monstrously exaggerated by some of its critics.

Raleigh, War and the Press p. 8.

Repetition **198.** The progressive may sometimes seem to express repetition. It is frequently the case in the neutral present, but also in the other tenses. There is often an adverb like *always*, *constantly*, *perpetually*, etc.

We are always saying that boys and girls must think for themselves, yet they are rarely allowed to do so.

Perse Playbooks no. 2. p. 2.

Our Vienna Correspondent says he is constantly being asked: — "Is there no means of avoiding war?" The same question is now being asked, with some bewilderment, by millions of men in this country. Times W.

As a result of the Turkish defeats, there is considerable unrest among the native population in India. Hindu agitators, joined by Mahometans, are holding meetings, at which violent speeches are being delivered. Everyman.

It is an old story and one that is always being renewed. Times Lit. 20/1, 16.

This elusive line between journalism and literature is always appearing and always fading away. ib. 16/9, 15.

Only he has rather a peculiar temper. He is perpetually getting angry with no ostensible reason — and then he glares at one like an angry cat.

Crawford, Lonely Parish ch. 9.

The curfew is being rung at Wigan every evening as a warning for the subduing of lights. Times W. 1916.

From the Riga region to that of Jacobstadt, on the Eastern front, Russian attacks are being made with persistence. ib. 12/1, 17.

And every week he was being offered these "cripplés." Vachell, Quinneys' p. 171.

Her benevolence was eternally rising up and overpowering her reason. Bennett, Old W. Tale p. 24.

If he rarely spoke to me of Charis Darley, although they were meeting almost daily, it was not because he then mistrusted me. White, Mr. John Strood p. 192.

Thus between 1560 and 1580 the influence of Italy was suggesting to English dramatists an ever widening range of choice in character and subject . . . Seccombe and Allen, Shakespeare I p. 12.

"That is the same drug that I was always bringing him," said Poole. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll, p. 83.

Where he got the phrase I do not know, but he liked it, and was always repeating it.

Rutherford, Autobiography p. 44.

Some of my abodes I have utterly forgotten; for one reason or another I was always moving. Gissing, Ryecroft X.

He had seen the death-like pallor on his wife's face; not a new sight, and one which had been presented to him gradually enough, but which was now always giving him a fresh shock. Gaskell, Wives I ch. 17.

It's the sort of thing I've been hearing more or less ever since I came on board. Conrad, Chance.

I've been tempted to kill that fellow a dozen times.... To think of it — that fellow after my treatment of him, my cursing and abusing him since I came here. Great Scott, man, I've been enjoying his bounty, I've been living on his money.

The shell of the house on Robin Hill was thus completed by the end of April. Now that there was something to be seen for his money, he had been coming down once, twice, even three times a week, and would mouse about among the débris for hours. Galsworthy, Man of Property II ch. 1.

Good work has been done by Mikkelsen, who has been in the Arctic for nearly three years, and has made many journeys in the north-east of Greenland. There is not so much to be done in the north as there is in the South, but from time to time no doubt expeditions of various sizes and with various objects in view will be starting out.

Sir E. Shackleton in Everyman.

199. There is no doubt that in all these sentences repetition is *meant to be understood*. But that is not saying that repetition is really *expressed*, at any rate expressed by the progressive form of the verb.

In many of the sentences there is an adverb of time (*always, perpetually, for ever*) which, far from expressing repetition, is used to express continuation. We must therefore conclude that the progressive has its usual meaning here.

But it is also true that the speakers, though they express continuation, do not really mean the hearer to understand that as literally true. Thus if we say of a man: *he is always grumbling and complaining*, we express a continuous action, although it is really something that is repeated so regularly that it only *seems* to be continuous.

The examples which show progressive forms without adverbs excluding repetition may be understood in the same way, or must be looked upon as cases of the descriptive function of the progressive. Note also that in the quotation showing a

progressive future the repetition is expressed by the adjunct *from time to time.*

Another proof that it is not the progressive that conveys the idea of repetition, is supplied by the sentences where the non-progressive form expresses the same meaning.

We also find both forms in the same sentences.

> Dolf was continually getting into scrapes; his mother was incessantly harassed with complaints.
>
> W. Irving, Sketch-Book.

> A man who thinks much about success must be the drowsiest sentimentalist; for he must be always looking back. If he only likes victory he must always come late for the battle.
>
> Chesterton, What's Wrong with the World, (T) p. 18.

200. It may be objected that the progressive is sometimes used of a verb that expresses a meaning which cannot be thought of as continuous; such is the case in the last example of 198 (*will be starting*). This is true, but it is not the action of *starting* itself only that is thought of, but all the actions connected with the preparation of an expedition.

Personal Interest

201. Sometimes the progressive seems to express personal interest.

> Our forefathers, those extremely wise forefathers who are always being held up to us foolish sons as examples and shining lights, had a custom of inscribing over the doors, etc.
>
> Garvice, Staunch as a Woman, p. 5.

> This Age, we are always being told, is sceptical and materialistic; and so in many of its aspects it is. Times W.

> He had an unfailing source of pride in his wife, who was really beautiful and had frequently been likened to the Marquise in *Caste*, a play which his daughters were always performing in the cause of charity. Cannan, Corner, p. 31.

> Minna was decidedly pretty, with a wide delightful grin and a mocking humour. The most serious and solemn young men were always proposing to her, but she always refused them or became engaged to them for about a week. Her

betrothals hardly ever seemed to survive the visit to their families. ib. p. 59.

Frederic was always sending in small bills that were too large for his (i.e. the father's) small earnings. ib. p. 60.

She did not care about golf, and to-day the mere sound of the name irritated her. Englishmen were always playing golf, she said to herself. Hichens, Ambition ch. 15.

He was a marvel of tact and good nature. "My wife is unfortunately not here, and the house is rather at sixes and sevens; but I have sent out for some tea." She followed him downstairs into the parlour. He poured out a cup of tea.

"I was forgetting," she said. "I am forbidden tea. I mustn't drink it." Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 4 § 3.

"And when you're not bored with anybody," said Monica, "you're rather apt to make that too obvious also."

"Monica, why are you saying that?" Pauline asked with wide open eyes. Mackenzie, Guy and Pauline p. 100.

202. There is no doubt that these sentences express the writer's interest, sometimes impatience, as in several of the quotations, or humour, as in the one about Minna. But it is the context that causes this meaning. The function of the progressive is here to express continuation or to be descriptive.

If in the sentence about Minna the author had said that many young men proposed to her, he would have stated a bare fact. But the progressive *were always proposing* conjures up a most humorous picture of the never-ending procession of these would-be lovers.

Progressive Imperative

203. The progressive imperative is chiefly found in negative sentences, but it is little used.

Don't be talking. Let me just suck this in as we go along. Phillpotts, Beacon I ch. 5.

Progressive Infinitive

204. The progressive is also used of the non-finite verb, viz. of the infinitive with *to* and without *to*. For examples, see the sections on the non-finite verb.

Special Meaning of Progressive Verb

205. Sometimes the progressive form of a verb is used intransitively as well as transitively, whereas the verb in non-progressive forms is exclusively transitive. For the same function of the predicative participle (without *to be*), see *Participles*.

The house has been building for some months.

Your book is binding.

Guns were firing and trumpets blowing. Hope, Zenda.

The other oven was firing. Bennett, Anna ch. 8.

The next day Edward resumed his forester's dress, while another one was preparing for him.

Marryat, New Forest ch. 24.

At the very moment that this painful piece of perfidy was acting inside the prison walls, Henson was himself on his way to London. Hammond, Town Labourer p. 255.

From that distant tower he kept a surprisingly close watch upon what was doing among the bookmen.

But meanwhile the seeds of a mighty revolution were sowing.

Freeman, Norman Conquest I, 39.

All the substantialities of his scheme of policy, most of its details, even, had been tossing about in the public journals and other channels of information for days before.

Pilot 10/12, 1903.

"But you will allow that in matters musical my opinion is worth something, my serious and deliberately formed opinion."

"How long has this opinion been forming?"

"Some months." Hichens, Ambition ch. 1.

The sneer at St. Luke's Square was his characteristic expression of an opinion which had been slowly forming for some years. Bennett, Old W. Tale II ch. 7 § 1.

In brief, something new had come to the front and was submitting to the ordeal of the curse. ib. ib.

It is true that the actual machinery of educational reform is shaping very slowly. Times Ed. S. 28/9, 16.

The warm weather always sets me up in a wonderful way; but alas! our days in Hampstead for this summer are *num-*

bering [1]) — for on July 1 I am due as usual in Bristol.
Ainger, Life p. 161.

Dick once asked a maid
To be his (so it's said)
While the photos were finishing printing —
Jessie Pope in Van Doorn, Golden Hours II, 122.

206. As a personal subject may cause the verb to be taken in a transitive meaning, it is natural that the subject of the sentence should rarely be a name of a person when the verb is used intransitively. But a personal subject is possible.

How is that Mrs. Gilchrist shaping as a nurse?
Bennett, Old W. Tale II ch. 3.

But the thoughtful woman teacher would herself be the first to acknowledge that for the effective training of elder boys and of the youths who fill our continuation schools masters are really indispensable. The plain truth is that they are not offering. Times Ed. S. 17/7, 19.

207. Occasionally the meaning of the progressive is passive rather than intransitive, as is shown by the adjunct with *by*.

A collection of photographic views is now publishing by the Werner Company.

It should be added, however, that an intransitive (or passive) use of the non-progressive form of this verb is not absolutely impossible.

Who know the London newspapers? How many outside a strictly commercial circle are aware that the *Public Ledger*, to which Oliver Goldsmith contributed the 'Citizen of the World' papers, still publishes each morning on Tower Hill, in its 153rd year? Athenaeum 28/9 '12.

See further the chapter on Sentence-Structure.

---

1) Italics in the original.

208. Both the intransitive and the passive meaning may also be expressed by a passive form (284 ff.); for examples of the progressive passive, see the preceding sections. The progressive passive of the perfect and future tenses would, however, produce very cumbersome groups, so that these are extremely rare; one example occurs on p. 79. In these tenses the construction of 205 is more convenient, although no examples seem to occur of the future tenses.

Verbs not used in the Progressive

209. Some verbs are rarely used in the progressive form, at least in its chief function of expressing continuity (for the progressive in its descriptive meaning, see 196 f. and 201 f.). This is the case with verbs that express feelings and physical or mental perceptions: *to hate, to love; to see, to hear, to feel; to like, to think.*

The cause is that these verbs express ideas that are seldom thought of as continuous, because we do not connect any idea of temporariness with them: they are momentaneous verbs. A form like *I am hating* would emphasize the idea of present time, which would be quite out of place. See 84.

But some of these verbs are also used to express a conscious act; in such a case the progressive in its continuative function is quite possible.

> I am thinking what we had better do.
> He is hearing lectures on political economy.

The same explanation may account for the progressive of *to see* in the following quotation; but perhaps it was used only to make the meaning more descriptive.

> And anyone who saw her would have wondered what on earth she might be seeing, gazing out with her dark, glowing eyes. Galsworthy, Freelands, Prologue.

If a verb is purely momentaneous the progressive cannot express continuity. Yet a verb like *to persuade* can be used in the progressive. The result is that the meaning changes:

I was persuading him to come with us means *I was trying to persuade him* [1]). Apart from this case, however, purely momentaneous verbs are rarely used in the progressive; such are *to accept, to forgive.*

Progressive and non-progressive Forms Compared

210. It has been stated (189) that the progressive present, as it lays stress on the process of the action, is specially used to express the present time; whereas the non-progressive present is often timeless, or at least leaves the idea of time in the background.

The difference seems to be well brought out by the following quotations.

> "You ought to remember," said a worthy master to a boy bungling over a passage of Virgil, "that you are translating poetry!" — "It's not poetry when I translate it," said the boy with pathetic veracity. Journal of Eng. St. I, 153.
>
> ....and in his book on Magdalen College the existing President, Dr. T. H. Warren, describes the tapestry presented to the Lodgings [2]) in memory of the Prince's marriage. The tapestry still hangs in the President's Lodgings.
>
> Times W. 11/10, 12.

The progressive *is still hanging* would emphasize the idea of time, thus suggesting that there was a plan of removing the tapestry.

211. For the same reason the non-progressive preterite seems to be used in the following sentence of the introductory chapter of J. L. Allen's *Mettle of the Pasture:*

---

1) Compare the Greek *imperfectum de conatu.* But in English the use is not limited to one tense: *I am persuading, I have been persuading* are equally possible.

2) i. e. the President's official residence.

> One of her hands lay palm upward on her white lap; in the other, which drooped over the arm of the chair, she clasped a young rose red amid its leaves.

The non-progressive forms are used because the writer describes a picture at the point of time when the story opens. The progressive would suggest that the description was introductory to the relation of an event that took place at the same time. This also accounts for the non-progressive in *Old Wives' Tale* II ch. 3 § 1: *Constance stood at the large many-paned window*, etc.

212. The non-progressive form may also help to make the statement more general, i. e. less descriptive.

> Then give it up. His future bride is now pinafored and bread-and-buttery. She romps, she cries, she dreams of play and pudding. Meredith, Feverel ch. 13.

Here the progressive (*is romping*, etc.) would suggest that a definite person was referred to.

213. In the following quotations the progressive would be possible; it would make the statements more descriptive, less matter of fact.

> The number of publications dealing directly and indirectly with the Montessori method steadily grows.
>
> Teacher's World 28/1, 14.

> Everywhere there reigns a just suspicion of the whole of that tendency in criticism which would substitute legislation for understanding; and it *is* more and more *recognized* that there can be no possible predetermination of the creative activity of art. Times Lit. 14/10, 20.

214. The progressive present is more freely used than the simple present to refer to future time. It is also used when the future time is not indicated otherwise than by the context.

> Mr. A. D. Godley is publishing with Messrs. Smith and Elder on the 31st inst. 'The Casual Ward: Academic and Other Oddments'. Athen. 9/11, 12.

I am going to the theatre to-night.
When is he coming back from America?
I am not playing football any more this year.
Are you dining there on Saturday?
I am remaining in America till after the elections.

There is no other river in the wide world quite like the Thames, and the life on the Thames during the summer months is different from life anywhere else. There are some who revel in it, and some who declare, after a very brief experience, that they are never coming near the Thames because they do not like the crowds, the strange people.

Academy 17/8, 12.

215. It has been shown (198 ff.) that repetition may be expressed by the non-progressive as well as by the progressive forms. The following two passages seem exactly parallel.

Mrs. Shiffney, who was perpetually changing her mind in the chase after happiness, changed it about India.

Hichens, Ambition ch. 20.

Very soon Alston was almost as one of the Heath family. He came perpetually to the studio "to try things over."

ib. ch. 18.

The use of the progressive *was coming* might suggest that his frequent visits were not quite welcome.

216. The definition of the progressive as a form for the continuous aspect might suggest a comparison with the verbs accompanied by the adverb *on: to be living* and *to live on*. It is easy to see the difference: the progressive often expresses (or implies) continuity; the semi-compounds with *on* also express that something continues, but they emphasize the separation between the two periods of time.

Moods

217. By moods we understand the forms of the verb that serve to indicate the mental attitude of the speaker towards the action, occurrence, or state expressed by the verb. Other means of expressing this are discussed in the sections on *Modality* in the chapter on *Sentence-Structure*. Compare also the sections on *Tenses* and on *Auxiliaries*.

Imperative

218. The imperative is used to express a command or entreaty (*a*). It may also express a challenge (*b*).

a. **Go home and do what you are told.**
Don't go home yet.
You sit down and get your breakfast.
Patterson, Stephen Compton, p. 192.

b. **"Touch that bell if you dare!", screamed Paul.**
Anstey, Vice Versa ch. 2.

219. It is rare for the imperative to express a wish. The difference between a command and a wish is that the realization of the latter does not depend upon the subject of the sentence (the person spoken to). It may be doubtful to which class we must refer such a common expression as *Now, boys, enjoy yourselves* (said by Father or Mother to children going out), but we seem to have an undoubted wish in the following example.

Oh dear, no! Good-night, sleep well. What a goose Mr. Darcy is!
Robert Elsmere, T. vol. II p. 83.

"Sleep well," he[1]) said as he softly opened the door for her.
Bennett, Babylon Hotel ch. 18.

220. An imperative expressing a command necessarily refers to an action. Even when a verb usually expresses a state, as *to be quiet*, the imperative may express an action:

1) The speaker is a foreigner.

be quiet. An imperative expressing a wish, however, like *be hanged*, might also be interpreted as a subjunctive. But when such a construction has a subject it precedes: *you be hanged*, whereas the subject in optative sentences regularly follows its subject (see below on the *Subjunctive*). And when there is no subject (*be hanged*) it also seems preferable to interpret the form as an imperative because the absence of a subject is characteristic of the imperative, not of the subjunctive.

> A few years ago, when Dr. Jowett was master of Balliol, there was a discussion concerning two men who had attained high position at an early age. One of these had become a bishop, the other a judge; and the conversation turned on the respective merits of the two careers. One of the dons said: "I prefer the bishop. The judge can only say, 'you be hanged'; the bishop can say, 'you be damned.'" "Yes", said Dr. Jowett sententiously, "but when the judge says 'you be hanged' *you are hanged*".
>
> Review of Reviews, June 1909, p. 520/2.

221. On the imperative with a subject, see further the chapters on *Sentence-Structure*, and *Word-order*. The emphatic imperative is discussed in 257. For the progressive imperative see the sections on *Aspect*.

222. The imperative is also used to express a conditional action resulting in what is expressed by the following indicative, generally connected with it by *and*.

> Ask too many questions, and you'll spoil everything.
> Pett Ridge, Garland, ch. 12 p. 215.
>
> Shut them out once and you shut them out for ever.
> Times Lit. 13/5, 20.
>
> Know one Frenchman and you know France.
> Meredith, Egoist p. 95.
>
> Come another step nearer, and I'll bring this poker on your head. Van Doorn, Dramatic Conv. p. 53.

Open Homer anywhere, and the casual grandeur of his untranslatable language appears. L. Abercrombie, Epic p. 58.

HINTS ON HOW TO OPEN A NEW BOOK.

Hold the book with its back on a smooth or covered table; let the frontboard down, then the back, holding the leaves in one hand while you open a few leaves at the back, then a few at the front, and so on, alternately opening back and front, gently pressing open the sections till you reach the centre of the volume. Do this two or three times and you will obtain the best results. **Open a** new volume violently or carelessly in any one place and you will likely break the back and cause a start in the leaves. Never force the back of a book, however well bound.

Earnest citizen. "Here you are, my dear, there's your British public. Give them something really good and they sniff at it; but give them something risky and, look, you couldn't get a seat if you tried."

His wife. "There's no harm in trying, dear."

Punch, 13/11, 13.

Give him a fact, he loaded you with thanks; propound a theory, you were rewarded with the most vivid abuse.

Birrell, Obiter Dicta p. 6.

223. The clause with the imperative may be introduced by *once*, which has the function of a conjunction rather than of an adverb [1]), and may be looked upon as the correlative of *and*. Compare the second quotation of 222.

Once grasp this fact and you will cease to be at the mercy of phrases .... Once begin to take the teaching of English composition seriously in all our schools and universities, and our teachers will soon train themselves.

Times Ed. S. 29/8, 18.

224. The same relation may be expressed by two imperative sentences connected by *and*.

---

1. *Once* is also used as a conjunction in other kinds of clauses; see the sections on ***Conjunctions.***

Read English newspapers and periodicals and be well-informed. Advt.

225. Although the two sentences are mostly connected by *and*, the subordination of the first is shown by the rising intonation. This subordination is also shown sometimes by the tense of the verb in the second sentence: with a real imperative in the first, we may expect a future or a present tense (chiefly expressing general or recurrent phenomena) in the second. Yet we also find a preterite or a preterite future. See the last quotation of 222, and the following.

Miss Spencer could have withstood successfully any moral trial, but persuade her that her skin was in danger, and she would succumb. Bennett, Babylon Hotel, ch. 9.

Give me the schools of the world and I would make a Millennium. Bennett, Joan and Peter ch. 2 § 3.

Subjunctive

226. The subjunctive is used in two functions:

1. as an optative.
2. as a potential.

The difference of tense (present and preterite) does not always serve to express differences of time, the preterite being often used in a way that is similar to the modal past tenses of the indicative. Hence the present subjunctive and the preterite subjunctive (*were* is the only form existing in present English) must be treated separately.

227. Most verbs have a distinct form for the subjunctive in the second and third persons singular of the present tense only (*thou, he, she, it, come*). And the verb *to be* has separate forms for all the persons of the present tense, and for the first and third persons singular of the preterite (*I were, he were*).

228. As the subjunctive is mostly used in literary English, it is often impossible to say whether a writer felt a form as a subjunctive, unless the form itself is different from the indicative form. If a writer uses the subjunctive e. g. in

We do this lest he say that.... etc., it is quite possible that he also feels the function of the subjunctive in

We shall go lest we find that....., especially because otherwise he would probably have written: *lest we should find*. But certainty can usually be obtained only from the formal proofs of the subjunctive. Hence in the following sections examples of those persons of the verb will be given only that show by their form that a subjunctive is intended.

It may be noted that spoken English in most of these cases uses an indicative, often with an auxiliary (*may, shall*) as explained in the sections on the auxiliaries.

Optative **229.** The present subjunctive is used in simple sentences and in principal clauses to express a wish whose fulfilment is thought of as possible.

> We cannot here follow Mr. J. in his sketch and criticism of the social and political conditions of this complicated and difficult period. Suffice it to say that he has made a contribution to historical scholarship which no future historian can ignore. Everyman, 28/9, 13.

230. The present subjunctive is similarly used in the higher literary language:

1. in clauses depending upon a head-clause expressing will or command; the head-clause usually contains such a verb as *to demand, insist, require, urge, propose, suggest, advise, arrange, take care,* etc.

> For the moment I must beg that a little indulgence be granted her. Meredith, Harrington ch. 19 p. 200.
>
> The report suggests that the subject be dealt with at the Imperial Conference. Times W. 12,1, 17.
>
> I have demanded that the money be returned to me.

In response to memorials .... the Board of Agriculture has now issued instructions that special editions of the one-inch Ordnance Survey maps be supplied to the public.

Pilot, 24/10, 1903.

2. in adverb clauses of purpose (introduced by *that*), or negative clauses of purpose (introduced by *lest*).

To act that each to-morrow
Find us farther than to-day. Longfellow, Psalm of Life.

But the stalks of the later flowers begin to be stuffed with hurrying bloom lest they be too late ....

Allen, Kentucky Cardinal, ch. 8, p. 63.

231. In literary English the present subjunctive is used in a concessive function. When the two clauses are connected by *and* they may be looked upon as coordinate (*a*); when there is no connecting word the first may be called subordinate (*b*). In reality, however, the clause with the subjunctive is shown to be subordinate by its intonation in both cases, just as in the sentences discussed in 222 ff.

a. As to such trifles as the tint and device of wall-paper, I confess my indifference; be the walls only unobtrusive, and I am satisfied. Gissing, Henry Ryecroft.

b. Be that as is it may, little had been said about her husband [1]). Trollope, Barchester, ch. 9 p. 65.

Brevity in the essay is, indeed, a quality apt to be neglected, and some of the American writers, be they never so charming, occasionally just threaten our patience a little.

Athenaeum, 24/7, 15.

Be the character possible or impossible, it is throughout credible in the reading. Camb. Hist. Engl. Lit. XII. p. 246.

232. The preterite *were* is used in poetical English in head-clauses introduced by an interjection. The past tense serves to express that the wish cannot be realized (*a*); compare 607. In clauses subordinate to the clause *I wish* the use of *were* is quite common, even in spoken English (*b*).

1) See 220.

a. Oh, were I on Parnassus' Hill! Burns.

b. We wish it were possible to be as confident of the success of the Government's Irish scheme.

Times W. 18/5, 17.

Potential **233.** The present subjunctive is used in literary English to express possibility. It occurs:

1. in adverb clauses of condition, usually introduced by *if, unless.*

The effect of many possessions, especially if they be newly acquired, in slackening moral vigour, is a proverb.

Morley, Compromise, p. 35.

But I confess that, so long as a volume hold together, I am not much troubled as to its outer appearance.

Gissing, Ryecroft, ch, 12.

Those Churchmen, if there be any, who are "in no mood for compromise", will do well to read Mr. Riley's speech.

Pilot, 17/10, 1903.

If any one succeed in definitely linking up Borneo and Rome by means of Assam, the future of the ethnological method is assured. Athenaeum, 28/12, 12.

2. in dependent questions.

I wonder whether it be really true.

Gissing, Henry Ryecroft.

When one considers how through all the centuries the masters of thought and expressions have appealed to men who knew nothing of criticism, higher or lower, one is tempted to doubt whether the critic be not an altogether superfluous phenomenon.

234. The present subjunctive is also used in concessive clauses with a conjunction (*though, if, whether*) or a conjunctive pronoun or adverb in *-ever* (*a*); also in disjunctive concessive clauses (*b*).

a. Though everyone desert you, I will not.

As his equipment for this task Mr. Innes has brought wide reading, a studied fair-mindedness, considerable power of mar-

shalling facts, and a style which, if it display no great literary qualities, is clear and readable. Times Lit., 22/7, 15.

Respect the mighty instinct, however mysterious it seem. Meredith, Harrington, ch. 18 p. 186.

Whatever the cause be, the author has hardly done justice to his subject.

b. Now a man — be he king or no king — may as well die swiftly and as becomes a gentleman, from bullet or thrust, as rot his life out in a cellar. Hope, Prisoner of Zenda.

235. The preterite *were* is used in the headclause of a hypothetical statement. It has the function of an irrealis [1]), but is only used archaically.

Anything more transparent than the incognito of the author of this entertaining book were hard to discover.
Athenaeum, March 7, 1908, p. 280/1.

He looked grave; silence or speech — which were better for her? Either, he now saw, would give her pain.
Allen, Mistletoe, p. 119.

It were better, after all, to turn about and go whither you should have gone at first. Oxf. Camb. Rev. nº. 10, p. 124.

Compare the same function of *could, would,* etc. in spoken English.

236. The preterite *were* is frequently used as an irrealis, also in spoken English, in subordinate clauses of condition, concession, and comparison, introduced by *if, as if, as though, even though,* etc.

It would be very nice if it were only possible.

It is more than twenty years ago and yet I remember it as if it were yesterday. Sweet, Spoken English p. 49.

I felt as though I were in a moonlit cathedral.
Allen, Kentucky Cardinal ch. 6 p. 56.

Though he were dying [2]), he assured himself, he would not

1) i. e. a form expressing impossibility, or a remoter possibility.

2) There is no question of the speaker dying at that moment. He is not even ill.

send for him (i. e. his son).
Garvice, Staunch as a Woman, p. 242.

"But see now! Suppose I were going away, and you were never going to see me any more, should you be sorry?
ib. p. 60.

237. *Were* is sometimes used to express uncertainty.

If she were not strong enough to tear George from his rocks —! Vachell, Spragge p. 160.

238. It may be useful to add that *was* is used in the same cases in distinctly literary English [1]).

It seems as though some diligent alchemy was at work, pouring out from moment to moment this strangely tempered motion. Benson, Thread of Gold, p. 9.

At the instant he wished that she was dead.
Compton p. 179.

239. The indicative *was* is regularly used when a fact is meant to be expressed.

And then there began a series of long cloudless days for Sylvia Bailey. For the first time she felt as if she was seeing life, and such seeing was very pleasant to her.
Lowndes, Chink, ch. 10 p. 115.

240. Sometimes the present indicative is so found, in clauses introduced by *as if, as though.*

Poor Jamaica! It seems as though all the elements are in league against her. Trollope (Ellinger, p. 71).

241. In literary English the preterite *were* is also used in the concessive clauses mentioned in 234.

However much Pushkin were translated, his European renown would never equal theirs (i. e. Goethe's and Shakespeare's).
Athenaeum, 18/11, 11.

---

1) But *were* is necessary when the conjunction does not show that the action or state is contrary to fact. Thus a clause beginning with *though* **must** take *were* if *though* is equivalent to *even if* (rejected concession).

In this dreary world she alone had shown that she cared whether he lived or died, were insulted or respected, were treated like a dog or like a Christian man. Grondhoud-Roorda, Leesboek III.

242. *Were* is also used in dependent questions.

She passed from view; Hilary strained his eyes to see if Hughs were following. Galsworthy, Fraternity, ch. 9. p. 96.

Nor is such punctuation as they used quite intelligible. Why did it exist without word-separation? Whether it were, to make the sense unquestionable, or to indicate pauses for the guidance of a public reader, is not clear.

Academy, 23/9, 1905.

243. The subjunctive *were* is used in clauses of *rejected* condition without a conjunction.

Were I you, I should devote myself for a week to their little performances. Kipling, Stalky and Co. ch. 1.

Were the Radicals sincere in their professions in favour of political equality they would make some attempt to see that all parties were fairly represented in the House of Commons in proportion to their numbers.

Mr. Balfour, reported Daily News 9/10, 11.

The reader would never dream of taking such persons as Rawdon and his aunt seriously, were he not told to do so by the author of their being. Whibley, Thackeray, p. 93.

This subjunctive is also used in such clauses in spoken English but only when they are introduced by a conjunction; see 236.

244. The use of *were* in concessive clauses without a conjunction seems to be a special case of the same use.

But were a man never so usurious, would he not lend a winter seed for a summer song?

Allen, Kentucky Cardinal ch. 2 p. 11.

Art, in some degree, is within the scope of every human being, were he but the ploughman who utters a few would-be melodious notes. Gissing, Ryecroft ch. 20.

No one can plead the command of a superior, were it the order of the Crown itself, in defence of conduct otherwise not justified by law. Dicey, Constit. Lect. VII p. 295.

Concord **245.** The difference between the present subjunctive and the preterite *were* [1]) has been shown to be independent of time. This explains why the rules of the concord of tenses for the indicative (149 ff.) do not apply to the subjunctive. This refers to the subjunctive used as an optative (*a*) as well as to its use as a potential (*b*).

a. He was sure that the voice of loyal Punjab, loyal Delhi, loyal India, Indians and Europeans, would condemn the atrocious attempt. God grant it might be the last! It should appeal to all loyalists as amounting to sacrilege on such an occasion. He hoped that.... Times W. 27/12, 12.

By 306 votes to 208 it was decided that the control of the Constabulary be transferred to the Irish Parliament six years after the meeting of that Assembly. Everyman.

At midnight Mr. Borden moved that the Committee rise and report progress. Times W. 14 3, 13.

With noiseless steps lest she awake him, she began to move about the room. J. L. Allen, Bride of the Mistletoe, p. 161.

Something restful in the tone of the front of Morely's Hotel, there being thin sunlight on it to bring out its mellowness, helped to suggest that she alight there.

Niven, Porcelain Lady p. 103.

....and he thought her as yet not old enough to suggest that she pray to herself. id. p. 174 f.

He knew that no doctor, be he ever so cunning, could, with all his striving, put the breath into that body again.

Gaskell, Wives and Daughters vol. III.

b. For monstrous though he appear to Thackeray, he had the genius of friendship before all his fellows.

Whibley, Thackeray p. 165.

---

1) Present English has no other preterite subjunctive.

Character of the Subjunctive

246. It has been shown that the use of the subjunctive in spoken English is very limited: it occurs in the form *were* as an irrealis in some kinds of subordinate clauses. And even in that function it has a rival: *was*, as shown above.

It is natural, therefore, that the hold of the subjunctive upon the linguistic sense of speakers of English is very slight, unless, indeed, it is strengthened by the study of Latin and Greek grammar. So it is natural to find the subjunctive occasionally used where a fact is meant to be expressed. In such cases the subjunctive is an attempt at giving a literary flavour to the style; individual taste may decide if the attempt is successful.

> The interest of Marlowe's work is that it is the first to show how the age had broken with tradition. If it **unveil** so much to us, it may have helped even Shakespeare to feel his own power and reach.
>
> Professor Gregory Smith in Camb. Hist. of Engl. Lit. V 149.
>
> This restless and resolute woman instantly took Harry Warrington under her charge, and, callous-hearted though she were, she stoutly protected him against his cousins.
>
> Indeed, when Thackeray discusses the ever-interesting problem of French and English, he is both wise and fair, even if he arrive at no conclusion. Whibley, Thackeray p. 53.

247. The same explanation must probably account for the subjunctive *were* in clauses of open condition (*a*), sometimes even without a conjunction (*b*).

> *a.* At that part of the afternoon, if it were summer-time, the younger members of the staff could be observed standing upon tables in the packing-room, hanging tin kettles over gas-jets. If it were winter they would turn their attention to the fires. Niven, Porcelain Lady p. 25.
>
> In the morning after breakfast, if it were fairly fine, a visit would be paid to Kensington Gardens.
>
> Sinister Street p. 22.

A meeting with an officer who was being carried off the field with a mutilated leg illustrates this spirit: — "If he were suffering great pain he did not show it."

Times Lit. 29/16.

b. Imagine a party of bookish men — not bookworms — of middle age.... Were the members of such a party asked to name the greatest literary thrill of their youth, assuredly more than one would unhesitatingly vote for that distant day when they first alighted upon "The Luck of Roaring Camp."

Times Lit. 3/2, 16.

248. We find the preterite *was* in *if*-clauses expressing a real fact (*a*); also when referring to past time, even in clauses of open condition depending upon a present tense (*b*).

a. The sun shone brightly, but without much warmth, throughout the morning, and if the afternoon was grey with clouds, nobody minded, for they suggested the coming of snow rather than rain. Times.

b. If Mr. A. was right in making this statement I shall *(or* should) be very much surprised.

249. The subjunctive is sometimes due to its subordination to a clause with a subjunctive (*a*), or a clause that is clearly the expression of a thought, not a fact (*b*).

a. But whether it be thought or fact which engage his mind, the result is most often both trivial and transitory.

Whibley, Thackeray p. 44.

b. If we did not know that it were partly due to shyness, we might condemn it as a patent disloyalty.

Times Lit. 29/7, 15.

Emphatic Mood

250. The emphatic mood is used in statements, questions and requests. It occurs in the active voice only.

Statements **251.** The emphatic mood in statements expresses the conviction of the speaker that the statement is really true.

You do seem off colour. Sidgwick, Severins p. 266.

"But what's all this nonsense of socialism? You don't mean to say you have turned socialist?"

"That's just what I *do* [1]) mean to say."

Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 88.

Well, you *are* [1]) going ahead; you are a most promising socialist baby. ib. p. 89.

Of course he's wise — as wisdom goes. But, then, wise men do do foolish things at intervals.

Trollope, Prime Minister ch. 2.

"Now I shall tell your mother. Mark my words, this time I *shall* tell your mother."

Bennett, Old W. Tale II ch. 4 § 1, p. 196.

Suddenly aunt Agatha had an inspiration. Aunt Agatha was the kind of person who always does have inspirations at critical moments. Cornhill Mag. Nov. 1915.

252. The emphatic mood is also found in statements contrasting fact with its negation (*a*), or actuality with possibility, ability, etc. (*b*).

a. We are not for the moment concerned with the political merits of the question at issue; but we *are* concerned with the prestige of the House of Commons.

Everyman 29/11, 12.

We shuddered as we stood below, and saw him hanging some forty feet above our heads, where there seemed nothing to support him, and what *did* support him was continually crumbling under him. Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 58.

Here we have on a very small scale the exact difference between constitutional or fundamental laws which cannot, and ordinary laws which can, be changed by the company.

Dicey, Constit. Lect. III p. 87.

She must have opened the door and looked in without my

---

1) Both marked with extra strong stress. Apart from phonetic transcriptions, italics are only used in these sections, as in all other quotations, when they were in the original text.

hearing her, for the first thing I did hear was her voice outside, speaking to the servant.

De Morgan, Vance, ch. 28 p. 264.

"If I'd known —" he began; but she cut him short.

"You did know," she said. Phillpotts, Beacon I ch. 6 p. 45.

b. We expect to find, and we do find, infinite varieties of detail in their laws, their social distinctions, their methods of government. Davis, Med. Europe p. 24.

An example or two will best show the mode in which the "judiciary" (to use a convenient Americanism) can and do by means of the writ of *habeas corpus* keep a hold on the acts of the executive. Dicey, Constitution, Lect. VI p. 237.

It may be worth noting that the emphatic forms contrast two kinds of modality, but not two actions or states. Compare *We did not take the tram, we walked.*

253. The emphatic mood in subordinate clauses may similarly emphasize the correctness or truth of the predicate (*a*), or contrast two kinds of modality (*b*).

a. The criticism of artists is usually good, because it is amateur criticism. They do not feel any responsibility in it, and, if they *are* artists, they do not give themselves airs.

Times Lit. 28/10, 15.

b. But the full value of these volumes will be apparent only when the time comes, if it ever does come, for the League of Nations to endeavour to profit by the experience of the Great War. Times Lit. 9/12, 20.

Questions **254.** In pronominal questions the emphatic mood expresses wonder, astonishment, or impatience (*a*). Compare the compound interrogatives in *-ever*. Similarly in dependent pronominal questions (*b*).

a. "Randolph," said the young lady, "what *are* you doing?"

James, Daisy Miller ch. 1 p. 13.

Humphrey, snatching it up, rushed out of the room.

"What *is* the matter?" asked Sir Everard.

Montgomery, Misunderstood ch. 7.

"A month or two ago I really was afraid you were going mad over it like poor Snipe." "How *is* poor Snipe? I haven't heard of him for ever so long." Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 89.

b. She felt depressed and uncomfortable. What an odd, queer kind of fortune had been told her! And then it had all been so muddled. She could scarcely remember what it was that *had* been told her. Lowndes, Chink ch. 2 p. 23.

255. In disjunctive questions two kinds of modality are contrasted, just as in statements.

"I knew that as soon as my father had got to Switzerland, he would be wanting to push on to Italy."

"*Did* they go on to Italy?" "Yes."

Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 73.

"There is nothing I like better than lying on dry hay."

"*Is* it dry?" Sweet, Element. no. 65.

We've only got to ask leave for you to come and see me, and the thing's done. We both said: "Yes, yes, that'd be glorious. But *will* Mr. Webb let us go?" Ned said: "Leave that to me. I'll manage it." Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 51.

256. Two kinds of modality may also be contrasted by the emphatic mood in dependent pronominal questions.

But you haven't told me where you *did* go after all.

Sweet, Element. no. 73.

Request **257.** The emphatic imperative expresses an urgent request, rather than a command.

Do change! Do, please, be lively, and yourself again.

Meredith, Harrington ch. 4. p. 27.

Negative Sentences **258.** The emphatic mood is also found in negative sentences.

He never did do that.

Temple Thurston, City III ch. 2 p. 228.

But you don't look jolly, Mr. Miggot. You never do look very jolly. And I have wondered — why?

Vachell, Quinneys' p. 182.

259. Negative sentences with *not* and interrogative sentences may take *to do* without any strong stress, and without the special meanings attaching to the emphatic mood. These cases make the impression of being weakened forms but not essentially different constructions. It should be noted, however, that the negative imperative is always emphatic; this explains why *to be* takes the auxiliary in this case (*don't be uneasy*), whereas it does not in other negative sentences.

Indicative

260. The indicative is chiefly used as a neutral mood, just as the present tense often has the function of a neutral tense. It expresses facts, thoughts, possibilities, etc. Sometimes, especially in subordinate clauses, the modality is indicated by means of auxiliaries.

On the modal functions of the past and future tenses, see 105 ff., 117 f., 128 ff.

Voice

261. Some English verbs have two forms according to the relation between the subject and the action expressed by the verb; these forms are distinguished as the active and the passive voice. When a verb has only one simple form (*he walks*) we also speak of an active voice; it is really neutral then. We may also distinguish a reflexive voice in English. See the chapter on *Sentence-Structure*.

When a verb is used both in the active and in the passive voice, it is called transitive. Reflexive verbs, even those that have an object (*they built themselves castles*) have no passive.

In the following sections the passive of the finite verb is discussed only; for the passive of the verbal nouns and adjectives, see the sections on the Infinitive, the Gerund, and the Participle.

262. Transitive verbs may be classified as follows:

1. with one plain object.
2. with one plain object and a predicative adjunct.
3. with one prepositional object.
4. with two plain objects.
5. with one plain object and a prepositional adjunct.
6. with one plain object and a prepositional object.

263. The auxiliary of the passive and the past participle may be separated (e.g. by adverbs) and when there are two passive verbs the auxiliary is often not repeated. See 186.

> Hence when a bad man dies, who in his lifetime dabbled in black magic or was believed to be possessed by an evil spirit, he is buried ontside the village and magical fences are erected and other defensive measures adopted to prevent his ghost from returning and troubling the inhabitants.
>
> Times Lit. 25/5, 22.

One Object **264.** Verbs construed with a noun- or pronoun-object can be used in the passive voice. This may be called the *direct* passive; see 274.

> Violets and primroses have been gathered this Christmas at Barcombe Mills, Sussex. Times W, 5/1, 17.
>
> The cause was taken up with great enthusiasm.
>
> She spoke rapidly, looking about the room and seldom hearing what was said to her. Hichens, Ambition ch. 7, p. 71.
>
> The youngsters were stretching themselves with repletion before the dishes had been emptied. Thanks were offered, and then my friend of the spectacles got up on two forms to deliver an address. Hall Caine, Drink.

265. We have essentially the same construction with the introductory *there*. It is found when the subject is so weighty that it has end-position.

> On January 1, 1847, there was published in a yellow wrapper, now famous, the first number of *Vanity Fair*.
>
> Whibley, Thackeray p. 90.

In Mr. Nevinson's war pictures, now to be seen at the Leicester Gallery, there is expressed a modern sense of war as an abnormal occupation. Times Lit. 5 10, 16.

There has just been published as a Parliamentary paper the Convention between this country and the United States respecting the Protection, Preservation and Propagation of Food Fishes in the Waters contiguous to the United States and Canada. Athen. 11/6, 1908.

A turn in the road, and there is wafted to me a faint perfume, that of meadow-sweet. Gissing, Henry Ryecroft.

On the death of an acquaintance, more his friend than he imagined, the wayworn man of letters learnt with astonishment, that there was bequeathed to him a life annuity of three hundred pounds. ib. Preface.

From the Norwegian, Danish, and Icelandic historians, and from some parts of the old Northern poetry, there may be formed a different idea about the character and domestic manners of the men who made themselves so unpleasant in their visits to the English and neighbouring coast.
Ker, Mediæval English Lit.

266. The construction with the introductory *there* is also used to give the subject mid-position, between the auxiliary and verbal predicate.

There were nine V. C.'s gained in that one fight.
Times Lit. 14/9, 16.

There was no hockey played within the precincts.
Wells, Harman ch. 4 § 2 p. 75.

There is a great deal of nonsense talked about this matter in England and other countries. Times Lit. 21/12, 17.

267. It is also possible for a passive construction to be used with the provisional *it*, the subject following in the form of a subordinate clause, less often an infinitive. See the sections on *Sentence-Structure*.

It may be wondered whether a century or two hence a student of University life to-day, if he is willing to admit that it was vigorous — and he is at least as likely to con

sider its energy feverish — will declare that it was sane. Athenaeum.

At Lado it was learned that the poachers had split up, and that each section had made a 14 days' tour.

Daily News, 21/9, 12.

It was hoped he was getting on pretty well.

Flora Masson, The Brontës, p. 53.

Hence the need for such a congress, which it is hoped to hold every five years. Times Lit. 12/1, 22.

268. Direct speech is rarely found with the provisional *it*.

To every man it is decreed: thou shalt live alone.

Gissing, Ryecroft ch. 20.

It is asked him: "Wilt thou wed this Fate, and give up all behind thee?" Meredith, Feverel ch. 29.

Compare also Beauchamp's Career ch. 36 p. 334 (Mr. Culbrett, etc.) and p. 378; Harrington ch. 10 p. 103.

269. When the object-character of the adjunct to the active verb is not perfectly clear, or when the construction is not usual, in other words when the verb is not clearly transitive, the passive construction is apt to produce the impression of being something peculiar.

Should he try to repeat his offence, he will be stood in the corner and compelled to wear tartan pyjamas. Punch.

But he (i. e. an M. P.) has not only himself to cater for. There are visitors, especially those who come from a distance, to whom tea on the Terrace is almost essential. There are others who must be dined or who require to be offered coffee or other refreshments. J. M. Hogge, M. P. in Daily Mail.

He was sitting in the one sitting-room on the left side of the passage as the house was entered.

Trollope, Last Chron. ch. 4 p. 26.

Gay, who spent most of his time with the Queensberrys, faded out when Pope was little more than forty, and was survived but three years by the beloved Arbuthnot.

Times Lit. 21/8, 19.

Though personality pervades style and cannot be escaped,

the first sin against style as against good manners is to obtrude or exploit personality.

Sir A. Q. Couch, Art of Writing.

270. For the same reason cognate objects are infrequently found as subjects of a passive construction, especially when verb and cognate object are the same word.

Enough that peaceful lives had been lived there; children had been born .... Benson, Thread of Gold, p. 31.

Or if we wish, not for problems of any kind, but just for a picture of life as it was lived a hundred and fifty years ago, there is nothing like Boswell's pages. Bailey, Johnson.

271. The infinitive with *to* in some constructions is often looked upon as an object. Verbs with such an 'object', however, (e. g. *We hoped to see him*) have no corresponding passive construction, but see 267. Neither is there a passive construction of verbs with the 'formal object' *it*. The cause is evidently that the adjuncts to these verbs are not really objects.

If an infinitive that serves as a logical subject to a passive finite verb with the provisional *it*, as in the last instance of 267, has an object of its own, this object occasionally becomes the subject of a passive construction, in which both the finite verb and the infinitive are passive. Thus a sentence like *They attempted to form a new plan* can be made passive according to 267, and become *it was attempted to form a new plan.* This sentence can, again, be turned into *A new plan was attempted to be formed.*

A distinction is attempted to be drawn between the indigent and those in comfortable circumstances. Rev. of Rev. Jan. 1899.

The construction also occurs, however, when the development suggested above is impossible or most unlikely.

Newcastle takes its name from the castle which was begun to be rebuilt by Rufus. Rev. of Rev. ib.

The addition of the adjunct with *by* makes the intermediate construction with *it* unlikely (*It was begun to rebuild the*

castle) so that it seems directly formed from *Rufus began to rebuild the castle.*

Perhaps, therefore, we must look upon the construction in both cases as the direct passive from the active with both the finite verb and the infinitive in the active voice. It may be compared with futures such as *I shall hope to see you soon;* see 67.

Poutsma, from whom the two quotations are borrowed (*Infinitive* § 88), also instances cases like *No building was allowed to be erected.* It is true that the passive construction is outwardly identical with those quoted above. And it may even be that a speaker of English feels no difference at all between them. But the origin of the latter construction is probably different; see the Nominative-and-Infinitive § 421. The difference in the relation of the elements of the two constructions is at any rate clear: in the nominative-and-passive infinitive it is the accusative (and 'subject' of the infinitive) that becomes the subject; in the above sentences it is the real object of the finite verb.

Object and Predicative Adjunct

272. Verbs construed with an object and a predicative noun or adjective are also found in the passive, the object becoming the subject.

Then the great organ pealed out again, the Marshal bade the heralds proclaim me, and Rudolf the Fifth was crowned king, of which imposing ceremony an exellent picture hangs now in my dining-room. Hope, Zenda.

I won't be called a fool by you.

He was found very ill.

He is known as an honest man.

For verbs with a noun or pronoun and an infinitive or participle, see the sections on the *Infinitive* and the *Participle.*

Prepositional Object

273. Verbs with a prepositional object are also used in the passive (*a*). Sometimes compound verbs with an adverb are used in the same way (*b*).

The doctor was sent for. The bed has been rolled on.

The carpet has been trodden on. The proposal was approved of.

I don't wish to be spoken to in that tone.

Every man likes to flirt with a pretty girl, and every pretty girl likes to be flirted with.

The beginnings of Hungarian speech must be sought for in the language itself. Athenaeum.

As Pansy was driven home, feeling under herself for the first time the elasticity of a perfect carriage, she experimented with her posture. "The carriage is not to be sat in in the usual way," she said. J. L. Allen, Mettle of the Pasture, p. 278.

Her room was empty, the bed had not been slept in; the window was open, and the bird had flown.

W. Irving, Sketch-Book.

For Knossos was lived in from Stone Age days.

Burrows, Discoveries in Crete, p. 6.

Without it lay many large gardens and some open meadow-land, and part of that meadow still remains unbuilt upon.

Athenaeum.

The scene of their exploits was arrived at by way of Gibraltar.

Athenaeum.

The scientific tactics and economic use of forces, of which the battle of Trafalger is a supreme example, are not so easily come by, and were achieved by Nelson after years of thought, and work, and discussion. ib.

Now, to be properly enjoyed, a walking-tour should be gone upon alone. R. L. Stevenson.

They expected to be submitted to, and obeyed.

Gaskell, Wives I ch. 1 p. 10.

A sick man had been prayed for twice daily in his cathedral during several weeks. Hole, Mem. p. 147.

The white house, timbered with dark beams in true Worcestershire fashion, and added-to [1]) from time to time....

Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 4 p. 39.

And then Edward Clayton had to be explained to and Joey and I only just got in time for dinner. Vance ch. 10.

1) Note the hyphen.

When Dolly had been kissed and whispered to they gave Peter to his father to hold [1]). Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 1.

This unconquered country was the Welsh kingdom of Strathclyde, and was dwelt in by the Celtic race.

Stopford Brooke, Pr. Eng. Lit. p. 61.

Meanwhile the press-cutting agency to which he subscribed kept him well-informed as to how his speeches were written about in Tory, Liberal and Socialist newspapers from Aberdeen to South Wales. Patterson, p. 313.

"So an adversary may *be reckoned with*, a book *quoted from*, a house *lived in*, a divinity *sworn by*, a man *run through*, or *run over*, [2]) or *stared at*, or *despaired of*, or *talked about*, or *looked after*. A doctrine may *be fought against*. An argument may *be insisted on*, or *lost sight of*, and in newspaper English an opportunity may *be availed of*. Not all sorts of such combinations can be made, for nothing is so freakish as language in new formations by analogy, but many have become good English, and the number is increasing."

Greenough and Kittredge, Words and their Ways p. 190 f.

b. This practice has long been done away with. The tragedy is led up to by a pathetic love-story. I imagined the questions that would be asked me, and was considering the proper answers to make to them, when my morbid dreams were suddenly broken in on by Martha Rod.

Walter de la Mare, Riddle p. 29.

Two Objects **274.** Verbs construed with two objects [3]) have two passive constructions, either object being possible as the subject of a passive sentence. When the indirect object becomes the subject we frequently speak of an indirect passive; see 264.

---

1) Compare the last example of 274.

2) In *to run over*, and probably in *to run through* we must rather look upon *over* and *through* as adverbs.

3) Not only noun-objects on pronoun-objects, but also when one of the objects in a clause, as in the last example of this section; compare also 267.

The Lord Mayor was accorded a mixed reception. Times W.

The Countess gave him the recognition that is occasionally afforded the family tutor. Meredith, Harrington ch. 46 p. 463.

India is allotted real representation at that Conference. Times W. 5/1, 17.

By the first Morrill Act, 1862, lands were allotted to the several States. Times Ed. S. 9/9, 20.

As a critic Johnson must be allowed a high place. Mair, Eng. Lit. p. 143.

This opportunity has not yet been allowed them. Times W. 20/2, 14.

More space was necessary, and the sea-green dining-room was awarded shelves. Sinister Street p. 777.

If you are asked the question, What is religion? you may answer in terms hostile or friendly to religion itself; you can hardly answer in terms that are indifferent. Times Lit. 22/7, 20.

The end of the struggle is nearly always that the public is conceded everything. Times Lit. 27/11, 14.

Well, we guess, that she wants some independent part in life which she can herself play, and she takes that part on the stage, because she is denied it elsewhere. Athenaeum, 8/2, 13 p. 173/2.

Details that the sceptic would fasten on are denied him. Times Lit. 19/10, 16.

Annette was brought home from Edinburgh at the end of the term and was found a situation with an ironmaster's family named Fender. Gilbert Cannan, Round the Corner. p. 63.

I am forbidden tea. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 4 § 3.

His failing health showed itself before the end of the novel, but had the latter half equalled the first, ... , then the book could not have been gainsaid its rightful place in the very front rank of the novels. Conan Doyle, Magic Door, p. 35 f.

Since prosperity came upon the younger brother, and Amos had been given a stool in the offie, the former had insisted on Amos's living with him in first-class lodgings. Patterson, Stephen Compton, p. 92.

King Constantine is given not more than 48 hours in which to reply. Times W. 12/1. 17.

The Act did not create a single unit. It did not do what Lord Durham recommended. His scheme was never given a chance. Times Lit. 2/10. 19.

This book was given me in 1885, on the occasion of my marriage, by Frank and Margaret Pattison.

Prof. Bywater.

Some have done bravely and well the work which was given them to do. Hole, Mem. p. 174.

He was also granted a monopoly of the news.

Camb. Hist. Eng. Lit. IX, 2.

To the first two or three states admitted after the adoption of the Constitution of the United States several hundred thousand acres were granted by special Act.

Times Ed. S. 9/9, 20.

In both islands they (i. e. the Moors) were guaranteed the use of their native customs and religion.

Davis, Med. Europe p. 195.

Michael was handed a thin sky-blue book labelled *Office of the B. V. M.* Sinister Street p. 224.

Well, X was left a legacy. G. Street, Eng. Rev. Aug. 1913.

The result was that Steve was offered and took the leadership. Patterson, Compton p. 203.

Saving a certain technical excellence, both they and their works are owed only the scantiest reverence.

James Stephens in Eng. Rev. April 1914, p. 84.

Most servants and workers were slaves who were paid not money but in kind. Wells, Short History p. 100.

She does not comprehend the joys of scholarship in her employment of Latinisms. It will be pardoned to her by those who perceive the profound piece of feminine discernment which precedes it. Meredith, Harrington, ch. 27 p. 288.

Annette came up, kissed Serge, and was promised her finished portrait for a wedding-present.

Cannan, Corner, p. 255.

Mrs. Despard was refused a hearing at a suffragist meeting

at Thornton Heath Public Hall on Saturday evening.
Times, Weekly ed. Febr. 28, 1913, p. 176/3.

They ask for £ 2 and also for an additional war bonus of 12½ per cent; and we do not see how it can be refused them at this time of day. Times 31/8, 1918.

The parochial historian will find that he has been saved weeks of labour. Times Lit. 19/10, 16.

All this unnecessary labour would be saved to them.
Jerome, Three Men on the Bummel.

Then he followed the squire down to the churchyard, and was shown the church as well as the view of the house.
Trollope, Last Chron. ch. 28, p. 253.

M. Bordeaux has done his best to explain the man and his writings to us. We are shown him as a devoted son, as student, professor, lecturer [1]). Times Lit. 2/9, 20.

I was spared the deep anxieties of a married man.
Wells, Country p. 161.

But now it is generally admitted that boys do not pick up things unless they are taught them [1]).
Benson in Journal of English Studies I, 152.

All this is taught to every school-child in Holland.
Graphic, 23/3, 1907.

We are told their folktales and songs.
Times Lit. 3/12, 14.

The sad tidings were not told to Grace till the evening.
Trollope, Last Chron. ch. 9 p. 75.

Evan was whispered that he was to join them.
Meredith, Harrington ch. 5, p. 46.

275. Some verbs, especially those that are only occasionally used with two objects, nearly exclusively make the direct object the subject of a passive construction. Such are *to bring* [2]), *do, pass, send, write.*

---

1) It is not very usual for both subject and object to be pronouns denoting persons.

2) But see the sections on the passive gerund.

The book was brought to him.

Kind messages were sent me by (Turkish) women who would have perished rather than be seen of me.

M. Pickthall, quoted Athenaeum, 28/3, p. 442,3.

They are sensible of the good on evil that is done them.

Times Lit. 25/5, 22.

But what harm has been done you?

Trollope, Last Chron. ch 58.

A letter must be written to the inspector.

The reason why the personal adjunct of these verbs seldom or never becomes a subject in a passive construction is evidently that the adjunct is adverbial rather (often expressing place) than an object; see the sections on Sentence-structure.

276. It is very rare for verbs with two objects in the active to make the indirect (personal) object into the subject of a passive construction to the practical exclusion of the direct object. Such a verb is *to spare*.

That unnatural and barely imaginable we and the world have been spared. Observer, 5/2, 22.

277. The following passage in a letter to the *Times Ed. Suppl.* of 8/8, 1910, by Prof. E. A. Sonnenschein is instructive with respect to the above constructions:

Mr. Bain cannot understand the construction "I was given a book." I see no difficulty; it is the passive form of "They gave me a book." The dative-object *me* becomes the subject of the passive verb, as frequently in Greek and sometimes in Latin, and the accusative-object is retained..... The construction is well established in English; "He was shown the way," "He was awarded the prize," "He was excused the examination." "He was allowed ten shillings a day." This is only one of many passive constructions which find their explanation in the corresponding active construction—*e.g.*, "He is believed to be an honest man."

Verbs with an object and a prepositional adjunct

278. Verbs with an object and an adjunct with a preposition can generally be used in the passive only by making the object the subject, even though the adjunct often has the character of a prepositional object [1]).

Active	*Passive*
He dedicated the book to his father.	The book was dedicated by him to his father.
We sent the servant for the doctor.	The servant was sent for the doctor.
He aimed the chestnut at me.	The chestnut was aimed at me.

For further details the reader is referred to the notes at the end of the book.

His life was devoted to the abolition of slavery.

Verbs with a plain object and a prepositional object

279. Sometimes a verb with an object followed by a prepositional object forms one whole in thought e.g. *to pay attention to, to take care of, to lose sight of.* In this case the prepositional object may often become the subject of a passive construction.

These group-compounds are also phonetically distinguished from verbs with an object and a prepositional adjunct, for the verb is subordinated in stress to the noun: *to pay at'tention to, to lose 'sight of, to set 'fire to.* See also the sections on the absence of the *Article.*

When the powder in the barrel of a gun is set fire to, it explodes, and drives out the bullet with great force.

Sweet, Element, p. 64.

Substantially the possibility of trying press offences by special tribunals was put an end to by the abolition of the Star Chamber in 1641. Dicey, Const. Lect. VI p. 265.

I was a good deal taken notice of by Mrs. Bretton.

Brontë, Villette ch. 1.

And my gentleman had baffled him, he could not quite

1) As in the case of *dedicate, send for, devote to.* See the last example of p. 114.

tell how; but he had been got the better of.
Meredith, Harrington ch. 6 p. 54.

There he was taken care of at once by Beatrice.
Sidgwick, Severins p. 34.

Unfortunately, works of fine reticence and quality are apt to be smothered and lost sight of in the popular stream.
Nation, 12/7, 13.

280. When the phonetic unity of these groups is broken by adjuncts to the noun-object the prepositional adjunct is generally not used as the subject of a passive construction, unless the adjunct to the noun is very general (such as *no, any*).

It asserted a principle which might be appealed to in future debates in the House of Commons, but it asserted no principle which could be taken any notice of by a Judge in any Court of Law. Freeman, Growth p. 155.

On p. 10 we have the sentences *He would be made an end of, This must be kept tight hold of.* These, although allowable in conversation, would be monstrosities in literature.
H. T. Price, Beiblatt zur Anglia 24, 156.

281. The construction is quite exceptional when the group has no phonetic or semantic unity at all.

I ought to note that even before he went to the University he had already achieved a certain amount of publication, and was predicted great things of by a small circle of admirers.
Morgan, Vance ch. 18 p. 178.

Wee Willie Winkie had once been read to, out of a big, blue book, the history of the Prince of Goblins. Kipling.

282. If the object in a group-compound *can* be separated from its verb by an adjective (which proves that it does not form an indivisible whole with the verb), the object can sometimes also be made the subject of a passive sentence, according to 278.

Such verbal phrases are *to take care of, to pay attention*

to, for we can say to *take good care of*, *to pay careful attention to*. But a double construction is not possible for *to lose sight of*; hardly for *to keep hold of*.

Active	*Passive*
He paid no attention to my words.	No attention was paid to my words

In the account of its mineral riches mention might have been made of the theory, largely accepted by men of science, that the age of iron began in Noricum. Athenaeum.

Impersonal Passive

283. The passive in English differs from the active in being always personal, i. e. the subject must be a noun or pronoun referring to a person or thing, apart from the case mentioned in 267.

The only example of an impersonal passive I have met with is the following.

But the dialects, especially the country dialects, must not go. Of them it shall be spoken later.

Hardress O'Grady [1]), Mod. Lang. Teaching, 8, 106.

Use of Passive

284. The passive construction is most frequently used without any mention of the agent. When the agent is not mentioned, the result rather than the process of the action may be expressed.

Much has been written in praise of books and the pleasure of reading has been celebrated by mighty pens.

Times Lit. 2/9, 20.

The national sentiment was also seen in the young drama.

Sefton Delmer, Eng. Lit. p. 48.

The passive without an agent is frequent in English because it has no exact equivalent to the indefinite personal pronoun used in many Indogermanic languages, such as French *on*, German *man*, Dutch *men* [2]).

1) Author of a book on style for English Schools, but an Irishman.

2) The use of English *one* in this function is very much more restricted. See the sections on the *Indefinite Pronouns*.

When the agent *is* mentioned, generally by an adjunct with *by*, the passive construction chiefly differs from the active in that it enables what would be the object of an active construction to become the grammatical as well as the psychological subject.

285. When a passive verb that has no retained object is used without an adjunct expressing the agent, or the manner or time of the action, it is often equivalent in meaning to an intransitive verb: *The candle was blown out.* Here the agent is not mentioned as it would be superfluous to add *by the wind.* See the preceding sections, especially 265 f.

Some verbs are regularly so used, such as *to be overset, to be drowned, to be blown up, to be frozen,* as in the following sentence: *They used to say that I should be frozen to death some night.* Also *to be killed: He was killed on the 15th of March, in an unimportant skirmish.* Compare also:

> The power of the drug had not been always equally displayed. Once, very early in my career, it had totally failed me. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll.

Such passive forms with a clearly intransitive meaning might be called *deponentia.*

286. We clearly have a passive form (not a deponens) whenever the verb is qualified by an adjunct characterizing the action, as in the following cases.

> The top was reached by means of a strong cord.
> The top of the mountain was reached by ten o'clock.
> The top was reached under the greatest difficulties.

287. When such deponentia might cause the hearer to think of an agent (owing to the context or otherwise), a non-passive form is sometimes used.

> The boats will hold something over 300 people. Therefore the men must drown, said Lord Holmhurst.
> Haggard, Meeson's Will.

We let a thousand seamen drown without an effort to save them, while, if twenty people are burnt in a playhouse, we tear our hair, and legislate ....

The steersman was left alone in charge of the boat when the vessel blew up.

288. Formally passive verbs have sometimes so little relation to the active transitive verbs that it is doubtful if they should be interpreted as passive forms or as combinations of adjectives (participles) with a copula *to be*. Such verbs are *to be mistaken, to be surprised, to be distinguished, to be vexed.* Compare also the following quotation.

And as a fact Maggie had fallen in love. In seventeen years she had been engaged eleven times.

Bennett, Old W. T. I ch. 1 § 2.

289. Sometimes the verbs *to become* and *to get* with a past participle may be looked upon as forms of the passive. They seem to help to express a special aspect of the passive. *To become* may be looked upon as an auxiliary expressing the durative, *to get* the perfective aspect.

Papal claims became more and more acquiesced in by the nation and connived at by the king. Wakeman, Introd. p. 151.

The monastic system became quickly spread over the north and midlands. ib. p. 48.

A taste for Italian and classic literature became widely diffused among the many monasteries which sprang up during this century among the Northern conquerors. Spence, English Church, p. 21.

It is, however, an excellent thing that bicycles should be getting called simply *wheels*. Lascelles Abercrombie, Poetry and Contemporary Speech, p. 9.

One of our men got sent down (i.e. away from the University for good).

She'll try and get some shrimps, but everything in the way of fish gets sent up to London. Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 84.

It was as an experiment to see how much I could really recollect if I once began to try, and then I got led on.
De Morgan, Vance, ch. 10.

Plain Infinitive

Functions in the Sentence

290. The plain infinitive is used:
1. with auxiliaries.
2. as an adjunct to verbs.
3. in the accusative-with-infinitive construction.
4. in exclamatory sentences.

Auxiliaries **291.** The plain infinitive is used with the auxiliaries of tense (*shall*, *will*), modality (*do*, *shall*, *will*), and the auxiliaries of predication (*can*, *may*, *must*, *shall*, *will*), except *ought* and *used*.

It is also found with the modal preterite *had* accompanied by a comparative, or superlative (*better*, *rather*, *sooner*, *best*). The same construction is found with *would*, but as the verb is generally pronounced [d] the difference between *had rather*, etc. and *would rather*, etc. is chiefly one of spelling.

We shall get there in time.
I do hope he'll come too.
We both said, "Yes, yes, that would be glorious; but will Mr. Webb let us go?" Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 51.
We'd better keep a sharp look-out here, said Ned.
ib. p. 56.
These positive successes do more than counterbalance... the reverse which our Italian Allies have suffered.
Spectator 10,11, 17.

292. The plain infinitive often opens the sentence in concessive clauses (with *what*, *which*, *as*, *how*; and an auxiliary,

will or *may*). If the verb of the subordinate clause is in the second person, the infinitive is difficult to distinguish from an imperative.

> Look which way they would, nothing could be seen of their poor little favourite. Van Neck, Easy Engl. Prose.
>
> Scoff as I might at "Sabbatarianism", was I not always glad when Sunday came? Gissing, Henry Ryecroft.
>
> Consider, for example, the value of public sanitation, not merely to the poorer regions which would suffer first if it were withheld, but to the richer as well who, seclude themselves as they may, cannot escape infection.
> Montgomery, Modern British Problems, I 37.
>
> The mangling orders fell away as suddenly and completely as he had feared: they were duly absorbed among the local widows. Neglect the children as Lizer might, she could no longer leave them as she had done.
> Morrison, Tales of Mean streets, p. 38.
>
> Say what you will of him, and resent him how you may, you can never open those four grey volumes without getting some mental stimulus. Conan Doyle, Magic Door, p. 64.

293. When the auxiliary of the subordinate clause is in the present tense it is possible to look upon the introductory verbal form as a subjunctive; e. g. *Come what will, I will make the attempt.* When the verb is in the second person we might interpret it as an imperative: *Say what you will of him*, etc.; but the rising intonation shows the first clause to be subordinate.

When the verb is in a past tense, however, as in the first quotation of 292, this explanation is impossible, and it is therefore most natural to look upon the introductory form as a non-finite form, i.e. an infinitive, not only here but also in the other case. It is also possible, and perhaps most correct, to look upon the construction as a remnant of earlier English which has become unintelligible with respect to the relation of its elements.

We have a subjunctive *be* with a subject of its own in the following quotation. See 231 on the *Subjunctive*, and the sections on *Independent Relatives*.

> And still one can never lay down a book of his without the last two feelings having their part, be the subject of treatment what it may. C. Brontë in Mrs. Gaskell's Life ch. 24.

294. Some finite verbs that are logically adjuncts to the infinitive rather than its headword, are treated like auxiliaries, and take a plain infinitive. Thus *to dare* and *to need* take a plain infinitive chiefly in negative and interrogative sentences; they resemble the auxiliaries in other respects; see *Auxiliaries*. It is rare for a non-finite *need* or *dare* to be construed with a plain infinitive.

> (The word *goodness*) is sufficiently spaced from *good* itself not to need fear absorption. Sapir, Language p. 181.
>
> No one dare prophesy the date of the end of the war. Times Ed. S. 8/8, 18.
>
> I need not say how we did our lessons that day. Sweet, Spoken English p. 52.

Adjunct **295.** The plain infinitive is also used as an adjunct to the verbs *to go* and *help*, chiefly when they are used in a non-finite form (*a*). When the adjunct is clearly one of purpose, the infinitive takes *to*, *in order to*, *so as to* (*b*).

> *a.* ... and being unable or unwilling, or too jealous, to go see for themselves, the jugs, cans and other receptacles began to think there must be something in it. Times Ed. S. 22/8, 18.
>
> It was while I lay there sleepless and tormented that the longing to help reunite Charlotte and her husband first entered my head. Eliz. in Rügen.
>
> The good little shrill woman, tender-eyed and slatternly, had to help try on dresses. Meredith, Emilia in England.
>
> He helped raise the coat bearing the ingots. Wells, Country p. 136.

b. I did it to save you trouble.
He went home to tell his mother what had happened.
He helped to nurse the sick girl through that dismal time.
Braddon, In Great Waters (T.) p. 38.
I helped him so as to see the last of him.

Note that in the examples under *a* the verbs *to go* and *to help* are subordinated in stress to the accompanying infinitives, i.e. they approach the character of auxiliaries. In the examples under *b* the verbs are completely independent and have strong stress. See 603.

Accusative and Plain Infinitive

296. In a sentence like *I saw John leave the room* it is natural to look upon *John* as the object of the finite *saw*. But the function of *leave* is less easy to determine; and if, as is generally done, we call it a predicative adjunct, it is impossible to say why this adjunct should have the form of an infinitive, whereas predicative adjuncts generally have the form of adjectives or forms equivalent to these. The real fact is that the construction is a fossilized remnant of earlier English that has been preserved in a few cases. Very often the 'object' is not really the object of the preceding verb, although it can always be looked upon as the subject of the following infinitive: *He had seen this part of Africa change dramatically under his eyes* (Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 3 § 3). The 'object' has the form of the common case, but when it is a personal, interrogative, or relative pronoun, it is in the oblique case. In imitation of Latin grammar the construction is called the *accusative-and-plain infinitive*. The word *accusative* must be taken to mean the oblique case of a pronoun (personal, interrogative, or relative) that has such a form and the common case of other pronouns and of nouns. See also 352 ff.

297. The accusative-and-plain infinitive occurs very frequently with the verbs *to feel*, *to hear* and *to see*.

We also find the same construction after *to see* 'to experience'. Occasionally we find *to overhear* with the same construction, although a subordinate clause is more usual here.

The girl felt fear and love rush up desperately to overwhelm her. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 29 p. 368.

Pauline felt her heart almost stop beating at the notion. Mackenzie, Guy and Pauline ch. 2 p. 71.

We heard the door open and had hardly time to put the forms up again. Sweet, Spoken English p. 52,

To Lord Cromer it was given more than to most men to see the harvest which he had sown ripen into splendid maturity. Times W. 2,2, 17.

Rose saw him approach and knew him in the distance. Meredith, Harrington ch. 23 p. 240.

He has already said that he wants to see the United States have the greatest mercantile fleet in the world. Observer, 27/2, 21.

Winnie overheard the landlady tell the departing Miss H. that... Pett Ridge, Garland, ch. 13.

298. When the infinitive is the verb *to be*, it seems that *to* is always used. This construction is chiefly literary.

She felt her feet to be stone-cold on the floor. Bennett, Old W. Tale III ch. 7 § 1.

I thank you for your advice which I feel to be good.

I saw it to be a mistake.

George felt himself to be within the sphere of unguessed and highly perturbing forces. Bennet, Roll-Call I ch. 8 § 2.

As he stood on the pavement by the fountain and watched them all passing by — just like what he had heard the Lord Mayor's Show to be — he heard one lady in a carriage say to her companion — "Look at that little boy!" Temple Thurston, Thirteen I p. 26.

Compare also: *I saw him turn pale* and *I saw him to be pale.*

299. These verbs can also be construed with a subordinate

clause. Thus both *I heard him say something* and *I heard that he said something* are possible. The accusative-with-plain infinitive is only possible when the time of both verbs is the same, for the perfect plain infinitive is not used in this construction. It also seems that the construction with the subordinate clause concentrates the attention of the hearer on the fact of the perception, whereas the other construction refers rather to its content.

I hear that he will start to-morrow.

I hear you made a speech yesterday.

I saw I had made a mistake in giving him this permission.

I never could see that delicacy of constitution is pretty, either in plants or women.

I saw the house had been painted.

300. Some other verbs expressing seeing are also found with an accusative-and-plain infinitive. It is frequent with *to watch*, less so with *to notice, behold, perceive, observe.*

Michael watched her follow her husband through the room.
Sidgwick, Severins ch. 4. p. 40.

It is pleasant to watch from an open casement a lonely remote upland village in a gorge of the hills renew its day.
Times W. 3/5, 18.

They moved, however, and Lizzie watched the parent return. Phillpotts, Beacon II ch. 15 p. 246 (ib. p. 252).

He watched me drink and eat with a touch of envy.
Wells, Country p. 143.

He watched her button one of her gloves.
James, Reverberator p. 7.

She beheld her brother pass these young men, and bow to them. She beheld them stare at him without at all returning his salute. Meredith, Harrington ch. 14 p. 153.

I observed her draw a square-inch or two of pocket-handkerchief from the doll-pocket of her doll-skirt.
Brontë, Vilette ch. 1.

Whilst waiting for their approach, he noticed them pause from some slight obstacle.

She covered her awkwardness by throwing a twig into the water and watching it float down the stream.

Cannan, Corner, ch. 18.

The more usual construction after *to watch, notice, behold* is a subordinate clause. *To perceive* and *to observe* are also construed with an accusative-and-infinitive with *to*; see 367.

301. The accusative-and-plain infinitive is also found with the following verbs: *to have*[1]), *let, make, find, bid, help*; also with the past and perfect tenses of *to know* when they mean 'to have had experience of something as a *contemporary* fact.'

Let the boy go now.

Only let me help nurse him.

Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 29 p. 368.

The Germans, by a sudden attack in strength, made us give way. Times W. 5/4, 18.

There are some books which tell us about things, and other books which make us see things.

Athenaeum 24/12, 12.

Methodism and the Church soon found their paths diverge.

Wakeman, Introd. p. 438.

It might be well to say a prayer against those omens. He knew a good one which his father's mother, a wise woman, had found prevail against the powers of evil.

Pickthall, Larkmeadow ch. 28 p. 182.

'Tis just the sort of rum, savage old place you do like. You'll find hobgoblins and all sorts of queer devils here come presently. Phillpotts, Beacon I ch. 10 p. 84.

In short, the more we study our constitution whether in the present or the past, the less do we find it conform to any such plan as a philosopher might invent in his study.

Maitland, Const. Hist. p. 197.

He bids them admire and reverence, but at the same time, he would have them remember that literature is a living influence, which should inspire to action as well as wonder.

Times Lit. 30/3, 16.

1) In this construction it expresses *to cause* or *to experience;* see 665 ff.

It was an indefinite but irresistible call that sent him out into the wilderness, and an indefinite but irresistible call that bade him leave it. Times Lit. 11/3, 20.

Announcing that he must go and help Annette prepare the supper. Cannan, Corner, ch. 19 p. 206.

Amy had to help her mistress make herself as comely as she could be made without her best dress, mantle, and bonnet. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 2 § 1.

To help her arrange the presents. Sidgwick, Severins p. 169.

I never knew a man die of love, ... but I have known a twelve-stone man go down to nine stone five under a disappointed passion.

The Lancet asserts that General Elections are bad for the health. This is quite correct. We have known Governments die from them. Punch.

I never thought of that before. And yet I have known such strange things happen in the way of fun that I can well believe it. Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 66 p. 501.

Have you ever known me tell a lie? cried Ruth in great indignation. ib. ch. 75 p. 568.

All right, lad; we'll get to work at it an' see what we can do. I only hope it will be all right. I've never known you go wrong yet. Patterson, Compton p. 133.

302. All the verbs mentioned in the preceding section are also construed with an accusative and infinitive with *to*. This construction is extremely rare with *to have* [1]) and *to let*, not very common with *to make;* with *to help* it is the more common one. As to the other verbs it is difficult to say which construction is the more general.

It is enough for me .... to cut at the roots of ignorance .... not to pull off the leaves one by one as you would have me to do. M. Cholmondely, Red Pottage.

And he would have had her to suppose that .... Meredith, Beauchamp ch. 2 p. 18.

1) See also *Auxiliaries*.

It is a book full of matter making one furiously to think.
Rev. of Rev. Jan. 1910.

The British were the dominant colonizing race destined by fate to make to blossom the waste places of the earth.
Times W. 19/12, 1902.

A mere device for making the deaf to hear.
Sketch 6/8, 13.

The history of the Turkish Empire for more than a hundred years, its extraordinary combination of races, and, above all, its wonderful geographical position astride the Eastern Mediterranean, have always made its condition and its relations to be of prime importance to the European powers.
F. Harrison in English Rev. Jan. 1913.

.....making the cabman above bound and sway, and the cab-horse to start and antic.
Meredith, Rhoda Fleming. ch. 19.

After an exciting subject which has made the general tongue to wag, and just enough heated the brain to cause it to cry out for spiced food—then start your story.
Meredith, Harrington ch. 31.

So also history is full of anomalies and single events giving colouring to periods and making things to be what they are.
Stubbs, Lect. Early Engl. Hist. p. 1.

Nothing was ever done to help him to understand the processes of his own mind. Cannan, Corner, ch. 20 p. 216.

She would have given the world that he should ask her questions; but she could not bid him to do so.
Trollope, Dr. Thorne ch. 33 p. 355.

In another place he characteristically bids his angry colleagues to join with him... Bailey, Johnson.

Look you, I stood here, and putting my hand upon my heart — for he bade me do that — Trollope, Framley.
ch. 26 p. 258.

Two days later came letters from the administration, accepting his voluntary services, and bidding him to repair at once to headquarters. Buchanan, That Winter Night ch. 2.

They are averse from all wars, and above all from wars

which would entangle them now and for the future in those "European entanglements" their traditional policy bids them to avoid. Times 24/7, 15.

"He is acting, Carry." — "No," said Caroline, "he is not. I have never known Evan to lie."

Meredith, Harrington ch. 37 p. 183.

"My dear brother, you did not do what you said you would do." "Have you ever known me not to do what I said I would do?" ib. ch. 36 p. 381 [1]).

I have known him to get up at three o'clock in the morning. Times W. 21/12, 17.

"Poor St. Joseph," they say — "I always get what I want from him. I've never known him to fail."

Temple Thurston, City p. 4.

303. Most of the verbs that can be construed with an accusative-and-plain-infinitive can also take an accusative-and-present participle; see the chapter on the *Participle*.

On the difference between the two constructions, see the chapter on the *Infinitive and Participle*.

304. The verbs that can be construed with an accusative-and-plain-infinitive can also be used in the passive voice, except *to have* and *to let*. All the verbs in the nominative-and-infinitive construction have *to* before the infinitive. See 374 ff.

It is true he was rarely heard to speak, but smoked his pipe incessantly. W. Irving, Sketch-Book.

He was frequently heard to say that his first desire for knowledge, and his earliest passion for reading, were awakened by his mother.

And though they're her friends and not mine, I've been made to go too. Mackenzie, Guy and Pauline ch. 2, p. 98.

They were bidden to conduct an English force to Gascony.

Gardiner and Mullinger, Introd. p. 80.

Criminals have been known to jest even upon the scaffold.

---

1) This example seems to point to rhythm as a reason for choosing either construction. This may quite likely account for other cases, too.

305. A passive form of these verbs followed by an infinitive without *to* is extremely rare.

> And then the postillion was bidden proceed, and he did not like it. Meredith, Amazing Marriage ch. 2 p. 19.

On *to let* see also *Auxiliaries*.

306. The infinitive without *to* is also used in exclamatory sentences, to repudiate a suggestion (*a*), often with an interrogative adverb (*b*).

> *a.* And talk about dukes being scarce! Lady 'Masters' [1]) are a good deal scarcer. Cotes, Cinderella ch. p. 77.
>
> "I did not know he ever did call on her. He does not know her." — "Not know Miss Mitchell?" — "I thought you were talking of Miss Robertson." Sweet, Element. no. 70.
>
> "What!" he thought. "Henry Jekyll forge for a murderer!" And his blood ran cold in his veins. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll.
>
> *b.* He found himself hoping that his statement would be laughed at. Then why make it?
>
> Meredith, Harrington ch. 34 p. 361.
>
> "I thought a first visit to Africa must be a wonderful experience." — "But, then — why refuse to come?"
>
> Hichens, Ambition ch. 10 p. 115.
>
> To prevent your pretty bathing-costumes getting wet, why not simply paddle in them, as is done on the Continent?
>
> Punch, 31/7, 12.
>
> How preach at a creature on the bend of passion's rapids.
>
> Meredith, Ormont p. 35.

307. The use of the infinitive with an interrogative adverb is essentially the same as that of pronominal questions with a negative meaning: *Who knows? Who ever expected that? Why should I do anything?*

Tense, Aspect, and Voice

308. The use of the compound plain infinitives is far

1) i. e. M. F. H. = Master of the Fox Hounds.

more restricted than that of the compound infinitives with *to* (399 ff.). They are practically found only with the auxiliaries *can*, *may*, *shall*, *will*, *must*, and *had*. In concessive clauses opening with the infinitive and in exclamatory sentences the simple form only is used; in the accusative-with-plain infinitive the only compound form is the passive infinitive with *to let* (312).

309. The simple plain infinitive is neutral with regard to time.

I do not agree with him.
I did not agree with him.
I shall not go.

310. The perfect plain infinitive never has a modal function. In such a case as *I might have come* the modality is expressed by the preterite *might*.

The young dog, George's son, might possibly have been the image of his mother, for there was not much resemblance between him and George. Hardy, Madding Crowd ch 5.

The phial, to which I next turned my attention, might have been about half-full of a blood-red liquor, which was highly pungent to the sense of smell. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll.

311. The progressive plain infinitive is not frequently found, apart from the future tenses (see 196).

We'd better be going back, or they'll be there before us. Sweet, Spoken Eng. p. 85.

And it happens that I have money that I must presently be leaving, and never a child have I to leave it to. Wells, Country p. 140.

It is a strange thing, he says in another letter, that, because she is handsome, he must be always giving her an account of every trifle and minute of his time. Dobson, Vignettes, p. 21.

312. The simple plain infinitive never has a distinctly passive meaning. The passive form is the only compound form that is not exclusively used with the auxiliaries.

It can be done in half an hour.
Let the thing be finished and done with.
Sylvia let herself be overpersuaded.
Mackenzie, Sylvia and Michael p. 60.

With the exception of *to let*, the verbs with an accusative-and-plain-infinitive take a past participle when the meaning is passive. See *Auxiliaries* and 534.

Subject of the Plain Infinitive

313. The subject of the plain infinitive is always clear from the context in its combination with auxiliaries, for it is identical with the subject of the sentence: *I can see that.*

It is also shown by the accusative in the accusative-and-plain-infinitive construction: *I heard him go upstairs.*

314. When the subject of the sentence is not the same as that of the verb with *had* (*would*) *rather*, it is necessary to use a subordinate clause.

"I'd much rather you wouldn't make me hit you, you know," he said. Anstey, Vice Versa ch. 2.

We had rather that you should come to Rome at first under the patronage of another. Shorthouse, Inglesant ch. 21 p. 215.

No one shall know; but I think I would rather you chose for me; what you like I shall like.
Montgomery, Misunderstood.

Would you rather he remained obscure and entirely yours?
Hichens, Ambition ch. 34 p. 422.

315. In exclamatory sentences the subject of the plain infinitive is expressed by a noun in the common case or a personal pronoun in the nominative. The exclamatory infinitive with a subject is often used to repudiate a suggestion.

"Oh! what does it matter? Phil never knows what he's got on!" No one had credited an answer so outrageous. A man not know what he had on! No, no!
Galsworthy, Man of Property ch. 1 p. 8.

It's a lie! a shameless lie! I smash pots and pans? I hurt my mistress? As good a mistress as I could but wish!
Van Doorn, Dramatic Conv. I p. 55.

What's this, Aurora Leigh,
You write so of the poets, and not laugh?
Mrs. Browning, Aurora Leigh I 856 f.

Apparent Plain Infinitive

316. When two infinitives with *to* are coordinated the second often does not repeat the prefix. See also the chapter on *Sentence-Structure* (*Apparent Coordination*).

It is incontestably much easier to read French than read Greek. Times Ed. S. 7/9, 16.

He used to loiter behind on their walks and pretend that he did not belong to Nurse. Sinister Street p. 80.

We all go to and fro in a state of the observing faculties which somewhat resembles coma. We are content to look and not see. Arnold Bennett, English Rev. April 1913.

Meanwhile Amos' gaze was soon bent on the floor as usual; then it began to roam about the room, anywhere except meet his brother's. Patterson, Stephen Compton, p. 29.

Another simplification is to follow the stream and ignore the eddies in the river of human history. Times Lit. 11/3, 20.

317. When of two coordinated verbs with the same infinitive after them the one requires an infinitive without *to*, the other an infinitive with *to*, the infinitive must be repeated.

(The two functions) can be, and ought to be, distinguished in analysis. Times Lit. 10/8, 16.

318. A plain infinitive is very common after the conjunctions *but*, *than*, *or*, no matter whether an infinitive with *to* precedes (*a*) or not (*b*).

a. Here it is impossible to do more than briefly indicate a few of the prominent names. Millar, Mid-eighteenth Cent.

b. Why, in spite of all, should I go back .... simply to save hundreds of millions of common people, whom I did not love, whom too often I could not do other than despise, from the stress and anguish of war and infinite misrule.

Wells, Country of the Blind, 14/9, 12.

What could they do but avoid her!

Galsworthy, Man of Property ch. 1.

Adam should have been wiser than do that, she told him.

You mustn't think I've got nothing to do but enjoy myself.

Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 3 § 4.

There is a world of difference between speaking to a voluntary audience whom you must interest or, as a lecturer, perish, and speaking to an academic audience over whom you can crack the whip of an attendance register.

Times Ed, S. 18/3, 20.

319. The infinitive with *to* is sometimes repeated in coordinated groups (*a*), and also after *but* and *than* (*b*).

a. She was anxious to make her friend smile, and to smile with her. Trollope, Dr. Thorne ch. 26 p. 277.

b. We cannot do better toward showing the value of this volume than to quote this passage concerning Shakespeare.

The subject of money is a very complicated one, and you are recommended to devote yourself to the rules for 'making' it rather than to waste your time understanding it.

quoted in Athen.

We now know better than to make any such concession.

Times W. 1/11, 12.

We have indicated its general character; we cannot pretend to do more than to draw attention to a few points in it.

Times W. 4/12, 14.

He sought to raise the civilization of his own country by the employment of Englishmen in Denmark, rather than to gratify the pride of his countrymen by placing Danes in command in England. Wakeman, Introd. p. 72.

Character of the Plain Infinitive

320. The plain infinitive, although a non-finite form of the verb, is closely related in function to the finite verb. In connection with auxiliaries it is really the verbal predicate, the auxiliary often serving only as an adjunct expressing tense. It has essentially the same function in exclamatory sentences and in the accusative-with-plain-infinitive construction.

321. The plain infinitive resembles the noun in one respect only: the simple form is neutral with regard to time. In all other respects it is verbal in character. Hence the plain infinitive has few points of agreement with the infinitive with *to*. As far as there are such points, they are in the cases that both forms are verbal in character, i. e. in exclamatory sentences and in the accusative-and-infinitive construction.

322. As to the two forms in exclamatory statements and exclamatory questions, the difference is often small or none. After an interjection, however, the infinitive with *to* only is used, to express longing; this is clearly the result of this form expressing purpose.

The same function may account for the use of the accusative-and-infinitive with *to* after verbs expressing will and wish. But it cannot be the cause of the construction after verba sentiendi et declarandi; in these cases we may assume that the analogy of the great number of verbs requiring an infinitive with *to* after the accusative is the chief cause. This analogy was not sufficient in the case of *to see, hear*, etc., because these verbs were too common to change their original construction. *To bid*, on the other hand, and a few others, are not so common in spoken English so that the infinitive with *to* after them is gaining ground.

323. If in the nominative-with-infinitive construction the infinitive with *to* is used to the exclusion of the form without

to, this is probably owing to the fact that this construction has only become common in recent times when the infinitive with *to* is the normal form.

Infinitive with to

Functions in the Sentence

324. The infinitive preceded by *to* is used:

1. as an adjunct to verbs, nouns, and adjectives.
2. as a subject.
3. as a nominal predicate.
4. in the plain and prepositional accusative-and-infinitive.
5. in free adjuncts.
6. in exclamatory sentences without a finite verb.

In the following sections the word 'infinitive' will mean the form with *to*.

Infinitive as an Adjunct

325. The infinitive is most frequently used as an adjunct to verbs (*a*), nouns (*b*), and adjectives (*c*).

a. Lady Adela had now moved forward with Brun to look at the picture. Walpole, Duchess of Wrexe I ch. 1 p. 7.

b. My good Utterson, this is very good of you, this is downright good of you, and I cannot find words to thank you in. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll p. 32.

Mrs. Haffen was the woman to make the most of such fears. Mrs. Wharton, House of Mirth p. 100.

The first German aeroplane to fly over London in broad daylight came here only last November. Times W. 5/10,17.

c. I shall be pleased to come.

He was afraid to go alone.

The canvas was destined to adorn a gilt fire-screen in the drawing-room. Bennett, Old W. Tale I ch. 1 § 2.

I hope you'll be able to sleep. ib. I ch. 2 § 2.

326. It will be necessary to consider the relations of meaning between the infinitive as an adjunct and its headword.

One of the most frequent relations is that of purpose. This is natural, for *to* expresses purpose.

327. The infinitive expressing purpose is most frequently found as an adjunct to verbs.

We eat to live but we don't live to eat.

I called to see you.

Not to consult the oracle, although it was war-time, but for an excursion, we set out one spring morning for Delphi.
Times W. 7/6, 18.

They generally paint their bodies all kinds of bright colours. This they do partly for ornament, partly to keep the flies off.
Sweet, Element. no. 18.

328. Closely related to the infinitive of purpose is the infinitive of result. The difference is only that purpose is an *intended* result. When the subject of the action is not a person the infinitive necessarily expresses result, not purpose; when it is a person, it may be either, but the context generally makes it quite clear which is meant.

In the following quotations result is intended to be expressed.

He has only to speak a sentence ... to be known for an illiterate person. Ruskin, Sesame.

A multitude of causes, unknown to former times, are now acting with a combined force to blunt the discriminating powers of the mind.
Wordsworth, quoted Magnus, Primer p. 166.

He was constantly taking up literary enterprises, only after a short time to lay them aside. Asquith, Wotton p. 6.

West of the hall a perfect warren of smaller buildings grew up to obscure its beauty and conceal its proportions.
Westlake, Westminster p. 56.

Have I been twenty years in this man's house, to be deceived about his voice? [1]).
Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll ed. Schutt p. 71.

1) Note the pause (indicated by the comma), which is probably due to the adversative character of the relation *(and yet to be deceived)*.

329. Sometimes it is indifferent whether the infinitive is interpreted as an adjunct of purpose or of result.

You have only to summarize events to realize how many of the failures from which we have suffered are attributable to this one fundamental defect in the Allied war organization. Times W. 16/11, 17.

330. The infinitive after nouns and adjectives can also express purpose or result.

The river is dangerous to bathe in.

Are they good to eat?

The thing to be looked for in any picture is the painter.

I asked him if they had got any tobacco to make cigarettes with. Sweet, Spoken English p. 77.

The attempt to murder the king failed.

Who was George Spragge to issue his commands to Hazel Goodrich? Vachell, Spragge p. 92.

331. When an infinitive is an adjunct of purpose to a verb the relation is often made clearer by using *in order to*.

In order to support the roof a second row of columns was added.

332. An infinitive-adjunct to a verb, noun, or adjective is often shown to be an adjunct of purpose by the adjunct of degree qualifying the headword. If the adjunct is *so* or *such*, the infinitive takes *as to* instead of *to*.

He so acquitted himself as to please everybody.

A man who has light enough to know he is wrong but not grace enough to forsake the evil. Spurgeon, Sermons.

I must do it in such a manner as to give pleasure. Times Lit. 10/8, 16.

He is wise enough to know what is expected of him.

Jane's sense of psychology was far too acute, and she was far too human and unpedantic to make such an attitude possible to her. Lady Sackville, Introd. p. X.

As a race we are too afraid of giving ourselves away ever to produce a good autobiography.

Conan Doyle, Magic Door p. 83.

These things seem to us at the present day so natural as hardly to be noticeable. Dicey, Constitution, Lect. VI.

333. Sometimes *so* follows a verb instead of preceding it. The result is that *so*, though originally an adjunct to the verb (*a*), is often transferred to *as to*, so that *so as to* is a sort of compound (*b*). In many cases *so as to* expresses purpose rather than result.

a. Put it so as not to offend him.

b. "And now you had better go and dress", said his father, "so as not to keep your uncle and me waiting."

Montgomery, Misunderstood ch. 2.

She spoke no further on the matter to me, but that may have been so as to cause me no further uneasiness.

Baring-Gould, Swaen I p. 9.

Shall we go round that way, and back over Hatchbury Down, so as to get a view of the moors?

Sweet, Spoken English p. 71.

334. The infinitive with *to* is frequently used after words (verbs, nouns, and adjectives) expressing wish; it is an adjunct of purpose here too, but this relation is not clearly felt.

"I should like to be a teacher. That's what I want to be." .... But that the daughter of comfortable parents, surrounded by love and the pleasures of an excellent home, should wish to teach in a school was beyond the horizons of Mrs. Baines's common sense. Comfortable parents of to-day who have a difficulty in sympathizing with Mrs. Baines, should picture what their feelings would be if their Sophias showed a rude desire to adopt the vocation of chauffeur.

Bennett, Old Wives' Tale I ch. 3 § 1.

A sign of the temper of the authorities and of their determination not to be hampered in the working out of policies. Times Ed. S. 8/8, 18.

335. The infinitive as an adjunct can also express condition and cause, although the relation is often rather vague.

You would do well to write more distinctly.

You can't say any one would ever know to look at us.
Anstey, Vice Versa ch. 2.

Scrooge hung his head to hear his own words quoted by the Spirit. Dickens, Christmas Carol st. III.

It sounds nothing to hear, but it was hellish to see.
Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll p. 6.

What sort of a man is he to see? ib. p. 12.

336. The infinitive is often used to complete the meaning of a verb, in the same way as a noun can be used. It is often called an object in this function, but it differs essentially from noun-objects [1]); unlike noun-objects, too, it cannot become the subject of a passive sentence.

But she did not attempt to enter the room. Old. W. T. I. ch. 2 § 1.

Paul did not really mean this, he only meant to frighten him. Anstey, Vice Versa ch. 2.

They did not disdain to turn fishermen in times of peace, but they despised all forms of agriculture. Times Lit. 8/2, 18.

We hope to see you again soon.

He has promised to do his best for us.

He hated to look at the letters.
Bennett, Roll-Call I ch. 8 § 4.

For the infinitive as an object after verbs construed with an object and a predicative adjunct, see the sections on the provisional *it*.

337. After verbs of thinking and declaring and some others it is difficult to say whether an infinitive must be looked upon as an adjunct (generally of purpose or result) or as an object: e. g. after *to pretend, profess, purpose, swear, threaten, vow.*

See also the chapter on the *Gerund and Infinitive.*

---

1) See the chapter on *Sentence-Structure.*

338. *To think*, when it is used in the sense of 'expect, plan, propose', can take an infinitive (*a*). But in its other meanings *to think* is regularly followed by a subordinate clause, or by *of* with a gerund, and the infinitive is felt to be irregular (*b*). In the same way *to look* is occasionally construed with an infinitive (*c*).

a. Many a man who thinks to found a home discovers that he has only opened a restaurant for his friends.
Eng. Rev. Aug. 1913.

I thought to find your brother guilty but it seems he is not. Hume, A Traitor in London.

Mark Robart's mistake had been mainly this, — he had thought to touch pitch and not be defiled.
Trollope, Framley ch. 42.

b. A quickened imagination so deceived me that I thought to hear the sea rolling. M. Pemberton, Pro Patria (T.) p. 83.

Other admirers, again, have thought to see in the Soviet system, when applied to industry as well as to politics, a method of separating the industrial and political spheres, while giving to both the means of self-government.
Times Lit. 7/8, 1919.

Why had she not thought to suggest the removal of her desk to the far end of the room? Niven, Porcelain p. 24.

c. The result is that their lectures frequently provide such stimulus to the mind of the undergraduate listener, and even the outside reader, as neither undergraduate nor outside public ever looked in old days to receive from the utterances of professors. Times Lit. 6/9, 23.

339. The infinitive is more clearly used in the function of an object when it accompanies a verb that takes a predicative adjunct as in *I find it difficult to believe him*. On the real interpretation of sentences with a provisional object, see the chapter on *Sentence-Structure*.

340. Sometimes the infinitive is not really the adjunct to a finite verb, but must be considered as the chief part of

the verbal group in which the finite verb plays the part of adjunct.

The finite verb is logically an adjunct of the infinitive in such a sentence as *I happened to see him.* The same relation exists, though not so clearly, in such a sentence as *I went to see him.* But when we say *I went home to ask if anybody had been for me* the infinitive is clearly an adjunct of purpose.

The infinitive is also to be considered as the chief part of the verbal predicate after *to have (I have to work hard = I must work hard), to begin, to come (The River Thames has come to be largely used as a place of public recreation and resort),* etc.

See also 420; and 628 ff. on the infinitive after *to be.*

341. The infinitive after nouns and adjectives is sometimes similar to the one after verbs mentioned in 336. If in such a sentence as *I am glad he is coming* the subordinate clause is called an object-clause, it is possible to call the infinitive an object in *I was glad to see him.*

(Michael) was shocked to hear that she would not accompany (them). Sinister Street p. 159.

342. The infinitive after nouns often has the same functions as an adjective clause (*a*). This explains the use of a relative pronoun to connect the noun and the infinitive of a verb with a preposition (*b*).

a. We have two friends to dine with us.

And this was not the first building to meet that fate.
Times Lit. 29/6, 17.

The Stubland aunts were not the ladies to receive a solicitor's letter calmly. Wells, Joan Peter ch. 5 § 4.

"It's nothing to do with Cyril," said she.
"Then what is it?" Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 1 § 3.

These agricultural gentlemen are difficult customers to deal with. Meredith, Feverel ch. 10.

But all the middle of this valley was a place to rest in.
Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 17.

Its clever description of everything to do with the working of our guns. Times Lit. 27/4, 16,

b. There has never been wanting appropriate machinery by which to carry the censorship into effect.
Dicey, Constitution, Lect. VI.

343. The following cases seem to be very similar, although a relative pronoun would not be possible.

A guest to stop at Iping in the winter time was an unheard piece of luck. Wells, Invisible Man ch. 1.

In the infinite universe there is room for our swiftest diligence and to spare. Stevenson, Virginibus Puerisque.

In the first of these sentences it seems necessary to regard *a guest* as the subject of the sentence; the introduction of *for* (*For a guest to stop*) would make the infinitive into the subject of the sentence and *guest* the subject of the infinitive (see 379 ff.), but such an interpretation of the above quotation is hardly correct.

344. In interrogative adjuncts the infinitive is connected with its headword by an interrogative pronoun, adverb, or conjunction.

I don't know how to express it.

But with us, hot summers are things known by tradition only; we generally have more moisture, especially in July, than we well know what to do with.
Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 46.

She hardly knew, as she waited, whether to expect the little child she had loved or the grown-up man she hardly knew. Sidgwick, Severins ch. 1.

It was now a question whether to continue the fight or to withdraw from some valuable positions. Times W. 8/3 18.

I was in two minds whether to run away or stop.
Stevenson, Kidnapped.

345. The interrogative pronouns and adverbs serve as

objects or adverb adjuncts to the infinitive in the above quotations. We also find the interrogative adverb *how* to serve as a connecting word between *to know* and *to learn* and the infinitive, which has the function of an object rather than that of an adjunct.

It's part of the matrimonial game that wives must learn how to bear things. Kenealy, Grundy p. 45.

The long years of the Peloponnesian war bred a generation who knew one thing well — how to fight.
Goodspeed, Hist. p. 192.

She found her way downstairs into the drawing-room in good time; she could look about her, and learn how to feel at home in her new quarters.
Gaskell, Wives I ch. 5 p. 99,

346. It is often difficult to say whether *how* is an adjunct of manner, or simply a conjunctive word. Such cases explain the use of *how* in a purely conjunctive function.

Her father had taught her how to jump, besides the how of many other practical things.
Meredith, Amazing Marriage ch. 4 p. 38.

The Alsatians have known how to take advantage of the German markets. Times Lit. 19/10, 17.

347. Infinitive-adjuncts to verbs that express other relations than those of purpose or result are connected by other conjunctions, chiefly *as if, as though, but.*

When her husband had set forth, Amy seated herself in the study and took up a new library volume as if to read.
Gissing, New Grub Street ch. 6.

He raised his hand as though to take off his hat.

It is generally believed that if the Government had been defeated on the measure it would have had no option but to resign. Spectator 10/8, 12.

348. The infinitive with *to* is also used with verbs, nouns, and adjectives that are always construed with an

adjunct with the preposition *to*, so that *to* belongs to the noun, adjective, or verb rather than to the infinitive. See 430 on the gerund after the preposition *to*, also 480.

Turkey has agreed to abandon her sovereignty over the whole of her dominions in Europe with the exception of the vilayet of Adrianople. Times W. 3/1, 13.

She almost brought herself to own that she would rather see her darling the wife of an idle ruined spendthrift, than watch her thus drifting away to an early grave.
Trollope, Three Clerks.

It was this, precisely, that had set the Prince to think.
Henry James, Golden Bowl.

But do we not tend to accept the eager and childish hopes of humanity .... Benson, Thread of Gold, p. 34.

Ruskin held that there was an intimate connection between morality and art. This theory led him to try and make the art of England better by first making the people live wholesomer lives. Sefton Delmer, English Lit., p. 164.

There is and always has been a great repugnance at the old universities to accept State subsidies.
Times Ed. S. 14/2, 18.

I hope you will see your way to do it.
She is on the way to do it. Peard, Madame p. 95.

Laud was inclined to trust somewhat to the Lords' resistance.
Shorthouse, Inglesant ch. 10 p. 117.

We are not disposed to take a despondent view of the present situation. Times W. 3/1, 13.

The ear is not accustomed to exercise constantly its functions of hearing; it is accustomed to stillness.
Ruskin, Modern Painters.

In some of these quotations (as in those with *inclined to, disposed to, to agree to, to tend to, to lead to*), it might be possible to explain the infinitive as expressing result. This would be artificial, however, and the explanation would not hold for the other examples. But it seems likely that the infinitive of result is the starting-point of this development.

Infinitive as a Subject or Predicate

349. The infinitive with *to* is also used as a subject (*a*) and as a nominal predicate (*b*). Not unfrequently we find sentences with infinitives both as the subject and the nominal predicate (*c*).

a. To go on like this was dangerous.
Galsworthy, Man of Property ch. 3, p. 57.

To decry Dickens, even to protest that you could not read him, became a fashion. Bradley, Reaction p. 3.

To undertake such duties at such a time is an act of signal courage which deserves the fullest popular support.
Times W. 30/11, 17.

Where to begin is perhaps less obvious.
Trevelyan, British History in the 19th Century. Preface.

b. The aim of all British biography is to conceal.
Wells, Harman ch. 11 § 1, p. 378.

But this is to anticipate. Life of Ainger p. 118.

My second purpose is to show teachers what can be done by furnishing examples of work already accomplished.
Perse Playbooks, nº. 2. p. 1.

Of the close of the pic-nic more remains to be told.
Meredith, Harrington ch. 31 p. 340.

c. To read him is to warm your hands before the fire of loyal admiration. Times Lit. 29/7, 15.

So with many another book on the thronged shelves. To take them down is to recall, how vividly, a struggle and a triumph. Gissing, Ryecroft XII.

To say that he failed because his genius was unsuited to tragedy is to tell us nothing at all. Times Lit. 13/11, 19.

350. When the infinitive is used in a sentence with the empty subject *it*, the pronoun is generally considered as a provisional subject, and the infinitive as the logical subject. See the sections on *Sentence-Structure*. Similarly with the introductory particle *there*. Compare 339.

It would be a futile meanness to deny that the philosophy, the theology, the criticism, and the science of the nineteenth

century owe a vast debt to German work.
Times Lit. 11/5, 17.

It is to say much of the dinner that Adrian found no fault with it. Meredith, Feverel ch. 34 p. 300.

It 's no use, I fear, to ask Tod.
Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 37, p. 78.

But they laughed at her; and she knew it was no good to scold, with all the men behind them.
Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 29 p. 186.

It remains only to notice with what kindred indignation the two writers complain of the little honour accorded to their craft.

There is no need to mince one's words on the subject.

371. The infinitive after *to be* is sometimes distinctly an adjunct of purpose (*What am I to do?*) and expresses other relations that cause the construction to be looked upon as due to the finite verb. Hence *to be* is often looked upon as an auxiliary of predication in this construction; and even though this may be wrong, it is convenient to treat the construction as one essentially dependent upon *to be;* see 340, and 633 ff.

It may be noted here, however, that the same meanings may be expressed by an infinitive after other words, as in the following.

The result is a finished piece of work, to be commended to the study of those who, guided by Teutonic models, deem lumbering involutions and a muddy terminology the certain concomitants of profundity. Times Lit. 30/10, 15.

In the great peril to be feared from Mr. Scales, Constance's heart had been put aside as a thing that could wait.
Bennett, Old W. Tale I ch. 7 § 2.

Accusative-with-Infinitive

352. When an active verb is construed with a noun or pronoun in the common case (or a pronoun in the oblique case) and an infinitive with *to*, the

relations between these parts of the sentence may be of various kinds.

353. The following sentences may show the most important of these relations [1]).

1. I offered him to pay the money.
2. I taught him to swim.
3. I enabled him to go.
4. I ordered him to go.
5. I wished him to go.

354. In the first of the above sentences both the pronoun and the infinitive may be looked upon as objects, just as in *I offered him the money;* but neither can become the subject of a passive construction, see 336. Note that the subject of the action expressed by the infinitive is the same as the subject of the sentence. A similar relation is shown by *I promised him to go away.*

355. The second of the above sentences may perhaps be interpreted in the same way as the first. But *him* is rather a direct than an indirect object; and the most important difference between the two sentences is that in the second it is not the subject of the sentence but the object of the finite verb that performs the function of denoting the subject of the infinitive.

356. The third sentence differs from the first in that the object of the finite verb is the subject of the infinitive. It differs from both in that the infinitive is an adjunct of result rather than an object. Compare also: *The ghost beckoned Scrooge to approach* (Dickens, *Christmas Carol* stave I).

---

1) Such cases as *I sent him to tell you the news* are not considered here, the infinitive being quite clearly an adjunct of purpose.

357. The fourth sentence is very closely allied to the third. It seems, however, that the personal object is rather an indirect than a direct object. Of the same character is the construction after *to allow, request, ask, beg, recommend, permit, forbid.*

358. In the fifth sentence *him* is formally the object of *wished*, but logically it is nothing but the subject of the infinitive. The construction must therefore be treated as a whole, an *accusative-with-infinitive*[1]). The accusative and the infinitive together form the real object of the finite verb. Compare 296.

359. It would be wrong to restrict the term *accusative-and-infinitive* to the constructions with verbs of this last type. For the same interpretation is necessary when verbs of type 4 are construed with a non-personal object, as in the following sentences (*a*), or with a reflexive object (*b*).

The stubborn paganism of London compelled the seat of the southern archbishop to remain at Canterbury.
Wakeman, Introd. p. 14.

Chapman once sprained his ankle at football, and did not permit the incident to fade from anybody's recollection.
Pett Ridge, Garland p. 221.

He ordered the work to be finished.

Religion is man's oldest and greatest possession. And it is one of which it is certain that he will never allow himself to be deprived. Times Lit. 24/3, 21.

360. Verbs of type 3 sometimes require the same interpretations. Some of them may perhaps be considered as examples of type 4.

It seemed as if he knew she could not bear him to look at her just then. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 8.

---

1) As the name is absurdly long, the familiar abbreviation *ac. cum. in.* is useful.

It is he who is provoking the old gentleman's head to swell [1]). Punch, 27/7, 21.

It will no doubt take some little time for things to settle down, for a breathing space must be given to enable embittered feelings to become calm. Observer, 29/1, 22.

The settlement of the strike at Glasgow of the firemen engaged in the coastwise trade enables the services to and from the Clyde to be resumed. Times, 28/8, 20.

361. Even constructions of type 2 cannot be analysed sometimes so that we must look upon them as cases of an accusative-with-infinitive.

She reclined, and charmingly left them to manufacture the evening for her. Bennett, Roll-Call I ch. 8 § 2.

"Of course I shall be back for tea."

"Oh, yes 'm!" Ada agreed, as though saying, "Need you tell me that, m'm? I know you would never leave the master to have his tea alone [2])." Bennett, These Twain I ch. 7.

362. The name accusative-and-infinitive will be applied to all the constructions of types 3, 4, and 5; also, where convenient, to the one of type 2. If it is found necessary to distinguish between the construction with a real object and the one with an accusative that cannot be interpreted as an object, we may call the former *an apparent*, the latter a *genuine* accusative-and-infinitive.

363. In spoken English the accusative-with-infinitive is found after verbs expressing will: *to order, command, compel,*

---

1) Compare:

But it was not Professor Stoll but Mr. Robertson and Mr. Eliot whose theories "provoked" Mr. Brock, as he tells us, into publishing this little book. Times Lit. 18/5, 22.

2) It would give good sense if we interpreted *the master* as a real object, and the infinitive as an adjunct of result. But this would not be in accordance with the linguistic sense of the writer. Compare also:

And what the difficulties of explanation were, I leave you to imagine. De Morgan, Vance ch. 17.

oblige, cause, force, get, induce, lead, persuade, allow, permit, suffer, tell, request. Perhaps we may include *to bring.*

I never could get the section to lie down simultaneously. Punch 31/2, 15.

My friend Latouche .... had persuaded me to go with him. James, Daisy Miller p. 243.

Clara permitted herself to smile. Sidgwick, Severins ch. 7 p. 68.

I shall tell him that you have been here; and that I mean you to come again. Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 67 p. 513.

Her "garden," in the phrase which used to cause Samuel to think how extraordinarily feminine she was! Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 2 § 1.

Her sins lie upon the head of those who suffer her .... to grow up without religion. Besant, Orange Girl (Oxf. Dict.).

George was impressed by the scene, and he eagerly allowed it to impress him. Bennett, Roll-Call, I ch. 8 § 2.

(The world) will persist in reading those books which allow themselves to be read most easily. Times Lit. 19/10, 22.

"Do you mean me to meet him, Max?" asked Mrs. Manfield. Hichens, Way of Ambition, ch. 1,

I cannot quite bring myself to write that in the Hat period (i.e. when my father wore a hat instead of a cap) my Mother became kinder to me. De Morgan, Vance ch. 16.

364. The accusative-and-infinitive (always of the 'genuine' type: 362) is also found with the verbs expressing wish: *to wish, desire, like, prefer, hate, want* [1]).

And if I am taken away, Utterson, I wish you to promise me that you will bear with him. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll p. 35.

But I'd prefer to be poor, and him to be rude and cross and impatient — which he scarcely ever is -- than have this feeling all the time. Bennett, These Twain III ch. 20 § 7.

"I should have preferred you to see Mr. Peel-Swynnerton here," said Constance. ib. IV ch. 3 § 4.

1) But to *want* may also express *will.*

"You know I hate you to talk about him," Margaret interrupted. Mackenzie, Guy and Pauline ch. 1, p. 23.

It was Blanche who asked him whether he liked women to hunt. Thackeray, Pendennis ch. 45.

365. We probably have originally this construction in the expression *to bring influence to bear on;* but to the modern speaker of English *to bring* is rather an adjunct to the verb *to bear*, forming one whole in thought with it. See the last example of 363.

English anthropologists have been bringing intensive study to bear upon nearly every native race in tropical regions. Times Lit. 18/3, 15.

We have a similar case in *I gave him to understand.*

366. Some of these verbs that take an accusative-and-infinitive are also construed with an accusative-and-present participle; see 532.

367. The accusative-and-infinitive is further used, but chiefly in literary English [1]), after many verbs denoting a mental perception or an expression of opinion (*verba sentiendi et declarandi*). The construction, though formally identical with the one after verbs expressing will or wish, is essentially different. Whereas the infinitive after verbs or wish may be looked upon as expressing purpose or result, hence as an adverb adjunct to the verb, it is rather a predicative adjunct in the construction after verba sentiendi et declarandi.

368. Among the verba sentiendi et declarandi which take the accusative-with-infinitive construction the most important are the following:

to ascertain, assume, believe, conceive, conclude, consider,

---

1) This character of the construction is also stated in the following passage.

The truth is that "oratio obliqua" (i. e. in classical Latin) was a highly artificial device of the literary style, probably as alien to the common speech as the diction "I know him to be a good man," is to our vernacular English. Times Lit. 6/4, 22.

discover, doubt, expect, fancy, fear, find, guess, hold, imagine, know, note, observe, perceive, presume, recognize, remember, suppose, suspect, think, trust, understand; to acknowledge, admit, assert, confess, declare, deny, maintain, proclaim, pronounce, report, state, swear, warrant.

These views we believe to be fair and true.
Times W. 22/3, 18.

She discovered Constance to be a little better, as regards the neuralgia. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch 3 § 1.

Well, you can't expect her to have gloves.
Bennett, Old W. Tale I ch. 1 § 2.

Unlocking the case he found it to contain a necklace.
Hardy, Tess ch. 34.

Charmian guessed him to be twenty-six or twenty-seven.
Hichens, Ambition ch. 2.

It is true, I imagine myself to have made a discovery.
Butler, Erewhon ch. 1 p. 1.

And she knew herself to be sagacious and prudent.
Bennett, Old W. Tale I ch. 3 § 5.

Soames noted his dress-clothes to be well-cut.
Galsworthy, Man of Property.

For as long as it lasted I never observed him to draw breath. Stevenson, Ballantrae.

As he raised his head upon my coming, I thought I could perceive his countenance to lighten. Stevenson, Ballantrae.

At first the Crescent supposed her to be a widow, for Mr. Crewe was never forthcoming. Sidgwick, Severins ch. 1.

The removal of her anxiety about the future had developed qualities of cheerfulness which formerly no one would have suspected her to possess. Gissing, New Grub Street ch. 2.

The moment was hers. He trusted her to make the best of it. Temple Thurston, City I ch. 18.

Beyond question his father was proving himself to possess a mind equal to the grand situation.
Bennett, Clayhanger II ch. 14.

I am puzzled by the note, which seems to prove him to be still alive. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll p. 75.

By a Port one may understand them to indicate something unsympathetically impressive. Meredith, Harrington ch. 2. p. 9.

The second Mrs. Samphire maintained Betty to be a spoiled beauty before she was out of pinafores.

Vachell, Brothers I ch. 4 p. 58.

Tradition states him to have been steward to the Abbot of Glastonbury. Times W. 19/10, 17.

In many of these quotations the infinitive is *to be;* see 370.

369. A great many of these verbs are also construed with an accusative and a predicative adjunct in the form of a noun or adjective.

It is curious and interesting to find our younger men of letters actively concerned with the present condition of literary criticism. Times Lit. 13/5, 20.

Amid laughter and exclamations Hamilton confessed himself the man who had guessed Latin to be the cause of Miss Current's remaining an old maid.

Meredith, Harrington ch. 16 p. 167.

In Fallowfield, among impertinent young men, Evan's pride proclaimed him a tailor. ib. ch. 16 p. 162.

As to my works I know them faulty.

id. quoted Sturge-Henderson ch. 1 p. 1.

When we know ourselves fools, we are already something better. ib.

370. Some verbs seem to take the accusative-and-infinitive construction chiefly or exclusively when the infinitive is the copula *to be.*

James showed himself to be a master of these simple arts.

Vachell, Quinneys' p. 200.

No one could possibly enter his rooms without perceiving him to be a man of wealth.

Galsworthy, Man of Property ch. 3 p. 43.

On account of their ill-judgment in thinking her to be a fool. Trollope, Framley ch. 24 p. 237.

371. Some verbs that can take an accusative-with-infinitive may also be construed with an infinitive only.

This applies to the verbs expressing wish when the subject of the infinitive may be the same as the subject of the sentence (*I wish to see him*). It does not apply, naturally, to those which express will, i.e. a wish with regard to the action of other persons (*I ordered him to be present*).

We also find the construction with an infinitive only after many of the verbs mentioned in 368 such as *to expect, fear, recollect, remember, think; to acknowledge, confess, declare, deny, proclaim, prove.*

372. Some of the verbs in 368, however, must have an accusative. When the subject of the infinitive is the same as that of the finite verb, it must be expressed by a compound personal pronoun.

> He believed himself to have been unfairly treated.
> He fancied himself to be right.

373. Some verba sentiendi et declarandi that can be construed with an accusative-and-infinitive with *to* can also take an accusative and present participle, see the chapter on the *Participle.*

On the difference between the two constructions, see the chapter on the *Infinitive and Participle.*

Nominative-with-Infinitive

374. If the accusative of an accusative-with-infinitive construction is a real object, it can naturally become the subject of a passive construction. *I taught him to swim* produces the passive *He was taught to swim.* Similarly *He was persuaded to go. He was told to go.* This may be called a nominative-with-infinitive construction.

> She is very like him in her contempt for mere sentiment, and for the 'cant' of which Boswell was recommended to clear his mind. Bradley, Essays II p. 14.

Yet the reader is advised not to be in any hurry with his kindly conclusions. C. Brontë, Villette ch. 30.

Flora could not be got to take the matter very seriously. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 34.

Visitors are requested to keep off the grass.

On rare occasions an aunt from Longshaw was permitted as a tremendous favour to see her in the subterranean den.... It was undeniable, for instance, that she was allowed to fall in love exactly as she chose. Bennett, Old W. T. I ch. 1 § 2.

The Geddes Committee was not instructed, and has not attempted, to shape a financial policy for the nation. Observer, 12/2, 22.

A little while ago we used to be given to understand that quite another kind of book was needed for such a subject. Times Lit. 19/10, 22.

375. *These verbs* are also found in the passive when the accusative is not really the object, very often when it is non-personal.

Parliament was allowed to separate without any warning of the true state of affairs. Times 21/8, 20.

The words were meant to make him furious.

Nothing was permitted to arrest the gang's progress. Pett Ridge, Mord Em'ly, p. 15.

The local inspection which was reserved by the Act to municipal authorities is gradually being suffered by these authorities themselves to become a dead letter. Escott, England I, 110.

But Aidan was not permitted to see much direct fruit of his labours. Wakeman, Introd. p. 27.

Every pre-arranged assemblage comprising more than two persons beyond the family was a 'function' — a term implying both contempt and respect for ceremonial; and no function could be allowed to occur without an excuse for it. Bennett, These Twain III ch. 20 § 6.

He was granted on that occasion to hold the city, as it were, imprisoned in a crystal globe. Sinister Street p. 576.

376. It is possible, instead of the nominative-and-infinitive, to use a provisional *it*. See 267.

These volumes belonged to my father, and before I was old enough to read them with understanding, it was often permitted me, as a treat, to take down one of them from the bookcase, and reverently to turn the leaves.
Gissing, Ryecroft.

As a schoolboy it had been definitely forbidden to him to go out at night. Bennett, Clayhanger I ch. 9 § 2.

May it be allowed one to wonder why your correspondents speak of Tennyson's rhyme only as "repetition" when both English and French have technical terms for this form of rhyme, — "perfect rhyme" and "rime riche"?
John Sargeaunt in Times Lit. 1/3, 1918.

377. The nominative-and-infinitive is exceptional in the case of verbs with a genuine accusative-with-infinitive, i. e. those in which the accusative is no object (362), chiefly those of 367. The verbs of wish (364) are never used in this construction.

We urged it in the days when the shutters of the Board of Education were announced to be up. Times Ed. S. 13/10, 16.

The entire length of our farm is assumed to be about thirty-two miles. Peard, Water-Farm (Oxf. Dict.).

This is a large concession; and, however necessary or justifiable, it can hardly be denied to be dangerous.
Times Lit. 7/8, 19.

Few people will be found to deny that the English schoolboy has shown himself worthy of the country he is serving.
Times Ed. S. 19/10, 16.

He had rarely been known, in the past, to fulfil exactly the prophecy of the letter of advice concerning his arrival.
Bennett, Old W. Tale I ch. 6 § 2.

Philip Bosinney was known to be a young man without fortune. Galsworthy, Man of Property ch. 1.

Cnut is recorded to have rebuilt the destroyed churches.
Medieval England ed. Davis p. 10.

The dead are supposed to dwell in the neighbourhood of the village. Times Lit. 25/5, 22.

The individual worker is believed to have a right to control based on his ideal equality with all other individuals.
Times Lit. 14/4, 21.

It had a good garden to the back, and Mr. Clavering had built capital stables, with what were then considered the latest improvements. The point of good stabling was expected to let the house, as it was in a hunting county.
Gaskell (Selected English Short Stories I p. 207).

378. The nominative-and-infinitive is rarely used with verbs that have no accusative-with-infinitive construction.

Nobody could be said to understand the heath who had not been there at such a time.
Hardy, Return of the Native I ch. 1.

Mr. Holmes's volume is agreed to be the best book on its subject in any language. Class. Rev. vol. 25 p. 257.

Prepositional Accusative-and-Infinitive

379. In a sentence like *This drawer I beg of you to carry back with you to Cavendish Square exactly as it stands* (Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll p. 89), we have a construction that is an exact parallel to the accusative-and-infinitive. It may be called a prepositional accusative-and-infinitive; it is not only used after verbs but also when the infinitive is used in other functions: as an adjunct to nouns and adjectives, or as a subject or a nominal predicate. The preposition used in this last construction is *for*.

380. In such a sentence as *It is easy for me to do that* the adjunct *for me* qualifies *easy*, so that in analysing the sentence we might call the infinitive a subject (*To do that is easy for me*). But in reality *for me* also qualifies the infinitive, forms, as it were, its subject.

Similarly a double interpretation is sometimes possible in the case of other prepositional adjuncts.

He handed it (viz. the telegram) to her to read.
Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 34 p. 430.

But he has told us so often that it's no use to him to live like that. Gissing, New Grub Street ch. 1.

William Morris began the modern theory of the practical value of art, but left it to others to work it out.
Times Lit. 15/2, 18.

381. The double interpretation of the function of the prepositional adjunct is only occasionally possible. Such cases may explain the origin of the construction for those cases where the adjunct is exclusively the subject of the infinitive.

In the following quotations the two interpretations are both possible, although there is no doubt that a modern English speaker understands the prepositional adjunct as indicating the subject of the infinitive.

The night was too dark for us to move in.

The weather is too cold for the girls to go out without coats.

In the last century it became more and more the custom for boys to be at home or with friends from Saturday till Monday. Westminster School.

This is an unusual compliment for one author to make to another.

The girls made way for him to pass them at the head of the twisting stairs. Bennett, Old W. T. I ch. 1 § 3.

I was a perfect *Helluo Librorum* [1]), even when the books were exercise books and called upon me to translate unconnected statements into Latin. De Morgan, Vance ch. 12.

382. That the construction with *for* is really the subject of the infinitive, is proved by the cases where it could logically be considered as belonging either to the preceding words or to the infinitive, but where the latter interpretation is the only natural one.

The risks of war are too momentous, and the inevitable

1) swallower of books.

and lasting set-back to progress is too grave for any nation lightly to engage in hostilities. Academy, 17/8, 12.

There was too much fascination, too great a sense of entanglement in Lady John's private company for Steve to look on it with complete indifference.

Patterson, Stephen Compton, p. 221.

It was doubtless a step in advance for the law to admit that insanity was a disease. Athenaeum, 9/11, 12.

A book of this kind divides itself, as naturally as some other things, into three parts. There are the editor's remarks, which, of course, are, like all critical remarks, for its readers to accept or not, as they choose...

Saintsbury in Everyman, 25/4, 13.

383. In the following sentences the noun (or pronoun) with *for* belongs logically to the infinitive only, although in similar cases a double interpretation might be possible.

After luncheon, Mrs. Hamley went to rest, in preparation for Roger's return; and Molly also retired to her own room, feeling that it would be better for her to remain there until dinner-time and so to leave the father and mother to receive their boy in privacy. Gaskell, Wives I ch. 8.

The opening years of Elizabeth's reign are of such importance in the development of both Church and State that it is scarcely possible for too much attention to be devoted to this period of the nation's history by genuine historical students.

But one longs for a novelist to arise with the breadth of national and intellectual horizons of M. Romain Rolland's "Jean Christophe". Nation, 12/7, 13.

Fact is, she whispered, two friends of mine have just come in. Ladies in the same establishment. It would never do for them to see me. Pett Ridge, Name of Garland.

It's no use for you to be angry with me.

Sinister Street p. 1051.

It's no good for Mr. Lloyd George to attempt to cure the gathered ill of a century with half an hour or so of eloquence.

Wells, What is Coming p. 110.

No. I don't sigh for that. There are other things for me to sigh for. Hardy, Return of the Native IV ch. 2.

384. Finally, the construction with *for* is used where it is clearly nothing but the subject of the infinitive. The construction cannot be interpreted in any other manner:

1. when it occurs after words that do not otherwise take *for*.

2. when *for* is followed by the meaningless words *it* or *there*.

3. when the adjunct with *for* is separated from the adjective or noun, either by *than*, etc. or because it opens the sentence.

1. It was far too much of a gala day for the work of the little town to go forward with its usual regularity.
Gaskell, Wives I ch. 2.

When Dyson had got accustomed to the sound he declared himself willing for Humphrey to try again.
Montgomery, Misunderstood.

"I had to tell Miss Verney," Pauline explained.
"I am delighted for Miss Verney to know," said Guy.
Mackenzie, Guy and Pauline p. 133.

The reader, therefore, will have no right in future to complain that our literary criticism is too dogmatic. It will be for him to challenge our dogmatism, to criticise our criticisms. Everyman, 3/1, 13.

When he sat down... there were cries for the motion to be put. Patterson, Stephen Compton, p. 332.

There is always a tendency, a dangerous tendency, as literature accumulates, for poetry to develop a language of its own.
Lascelles Abercrombie, Poetry and Contemporary Speech.

The enterprise of Messrs. T. Nelson and Sons and the friendly accommodation of Messrs. Macmillan render possible this collection in one cover of all the short stories by me that I care for any one to read again.
Wells, Country of the Blind, Introd.

Sir Austin signified his opinion that a boy should obey his parent, by giving orders to Benson for Ripton's box to be packed and ready before noon. Meredith, R. Feverel, p. 42.

The only expedient method by which land may be nationalised is for the State to buy it. Everyman.

There was nothing for it but for Gaston to go, and go quickly, though the moment was rather awkward.

Henry James, Reverberator, p. 123.

There is nothing for it but for men of education to carry the war into the enemy's camp.

Oxf. and Camb. Rev. nº. 16.

2. We should be sorry for there to be many more additions to the literature of Stevenson's life in the South Seas.

The address "The Religion of Humanity" attracted at the time it was delivered a sufficient amount of interest for it to be unnecessary here to do more than record the fact of its republication.

Chaucer was not so well off for subjects for it to be probable that if he learnt this story from Petrarch in 1373 he would have left it unused for a dozen years or more.

Chaucer, Globe ed. p. XXV.

3. It may be reasonably premised that nothing can be more unhealthy than for a party to find itself strong in the House of Commons but weak in the Constituencies.

Oxf. and Camb. Rev. nº. 16.

For Count Czernin's statement to be true M. Clémenceau would have had to have taken the initiative in the matter before he became Prime Minister [1]). Times W. 12/4, 18.

For her not to go would look as if she were afraid of meeting him. London Magaz. July 1918.

For man to reclaim much of this man-made wilderness will be hard and within the life of modern explosives at least, dangerous work. Times W. 11/5, 17.

For a woman to look her best is a point of dicipline as much as that the British soldier shall shave, even under fire.

ib. 21/12, 17.

It is, however, devoutly to be desired that the incident will not close without a searching inquiry. For thirteen houses

1) Note that the prepositional accusative-and-infinitive in this sentence has the function of a free adjunct.

to collapse suddenly, argues surely, that there is something rotten in their condition. Everyman, 5/9, 13.

Talking in private I hope still may do good. But for me to attempt to discuss the merits of the question this afternoon can do no good. Daily News.

385. It may seem that front-position of the *for*-adjunct is not in itself a proof of its new function. For other prepositional adjuncts may also have front-position: *For your brother it would be an excellent change.* It should be considered, however, that front- position in such cases is emphatic, which it is not in the case of the adjunct serving as a subject to the infinitive.

386. The function of the *for*-adjunct as the subject of the infinitive is also indicated by the pause which often separates it from the preceding part of the sentence. In the following cases the pause is indicated by the punctuation.

He only needed to read a passage over once casually, for it to be impressed on his mind ever afterwards.

"Cousin Tom," said mother, and trying to get so that Annie and I could not hear her; "it would be a sad and unkinlike thing, for you to despise our dwelling-house."

Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 11.

And why not take some of this delightful toadstool with him, for them to eat. Wells, Country p. 251.

387. The prepositional accusative-and-infinitive is also found when the infinitive is the adjunct to a verb; chiefly, however, when the verb can also take a noun-adjunct with *for* to qualify it. See Addenda.

George waited for Irene Wheeler to begin to talk. She did not begin to talk. Bennett, Roll-Call I ch. 6.

Adelaide knows quite well she has lots of friends I should not care for you to yacht with.

Hichens, Ambition ch. 5 p. 53.

Somehow, he rather disliked asking for Molly to prolong her visit. Gaskell, Wives I ch. 7 p. 113.

I guess your request. I make it before you do. I beg for dear little Molly to stay on here. ib. ch. 7 p. 114.

Constance rang the bell for Maggie to clear the table. Bennett, Old W. Tale II ch. 1 § 1.

The Liberals are urgently pressing for a decision to be made. Times W. 2/2, 17.

When they planned for me to stop till to-morrow, I didn't like saying how very, very much I wanted to go home. Gaskell, Wives I ch. 2.

I can never believe . . . it can be ever be meant for me to settle down to peace and comfort in a simple household. Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 35 p. 231.

John would need every penny that he earned to support the woman whom she longed for him to make his wife. Temple Thurston, City III ch. 2.

In most of the above quotations the adjunct with *for* is nothing but the subject of the infinitive. In the third and fourth sentences it is found after verbs that can take a plain accusative-and-infinitive (*to ask*, *to beg*). But the plain accusative is a real object in this construction (362), and it is to avoid this interpretation that the prepositional construction is used.

388. The prepositional construction is also found after verbs that cannot take real adverb adjuncts with *for*. The number of verbs requiring the prepositional accusative-and-infinitive is restricted by the great number of verbs that can take a plain accusative-with-infinitive. One of these, however, viz. *to wish*, is frequently found with a prepositional subject.

When can we arrange for you and Molly to meet? Gaskell, Wives I ch. 10.

The desire of the working-classes, many of them now better off than they have ever been, is for a better life for their children than they have had themselves, and it is in the leisure years of childhood, above all, that they hope for their children to find it. Times Ed. S. 22/5, 19.

This was a miserable hour for Michæl, who all the time was dreading many unfortunate events, as for the cabman to get down from his box and quarrel about the fare, or for the train to be full, or for Stella to be sick during the journey, or for him and her to lose Nurse, or for all of them to get into the wrong train, or for a railway accident to happen, or for any of the uncomfortable contingencies to which seaside travellers were liable. Sinister Street p. 79 f.

Molly could not imagine how she had at one time wished for her father's eyes to be opened. Gaskell, Wives II p. 279 (ib. I ch. 12 p. 214; ch. 13 p. 232).

He wished for Stella and Alan to have all the benisons of the world. Sinister Street p. 816.

389. Even of the examples quoted above, to *dread* is the only verb that cannot take an adverb-adjunct with *for* at all. Such an adjunct (with a noun or pronoun) is possible after *to arrange, to hope*, and *to wish*.

She'd a good home, and everything she could wish for. Galsworthy, Man of Property, ch. 3, p. 56.

Free Infinitive **390.** The infinitive with *to* is also used in free adjuncts (see *Sentence-Structure;* also the sections on the *Free Participle*).

Yet, to look at her, you would never have imagined that anything but the honey of speech could have dropped from so perfect a little rose. Allen, Mettle of the Pasture.

Indeed, to speak frankly, I plan and arrange all my days that I may secure a space for writing.... Benson, Thread of Gold, p. 85.

To be honest, I do not believe in fretting too much over a piece of writing. ib. p. 86.

A great many boys, to be efficiently educated, need close individual attention. id. Journal of Engl. St. I, 151.

One would think, to hear them talk, that England is full of English traitors. Times Lit. 20/1, 16.

Everybody looked at mother, to hear her talk like that. Lorna Doone p. 68.

391. The relation may be indicated by a conjunction.

As if to justify this illusions, we incline to isolate it (viz. the Elizabethan era). Times Lit. 26/10, 16.

392. The absolute infinitive is especially used in legal language. See 600.

In 1888 the interest on the greater portion of the National Debt was reduced from 3 to 2¾ per cent., a further reduction to 2½ per cent. to take place in 1903.

Gooch, Hist. of our own Time p. 13.

Mr. V. produced a will which John Granger had executed a few days before his intended departure, bequeathing all he possessed to Susan Lorton — the interest for her sole use and benefit, the principal to revert to her eldest son after her death, the son to take the name of Granger.

Braddon, In Great Waters (T.), p. 149.

In regard to the Albanian problem Austria and Italy agreed on the principle of nationality, the country to be neutralised under the guarantee of the Great Powers.

Everyman, 24/12, 12.

393. The unrelated infinitive is also found.

To say truth she did not know in the least....

Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 14 p. 162.

Charles II, to do him justice, desired toleration in the interests of the Puritan as well as of the Roman Catholic nonconformists. Wakeman, Introd, p. 385.

Truth to tell, she could not conceal her very pleased surprise at the exceptional though severe good taste which Steve had shown in the whole affair. Patterson, Compton p. 220.

Infinitive in Exclamations

394. The infinitive with *to* is also used in exclamatory sentences without a finite verb. There may be a subject or not. The infinitive expresses astonishment, indignation, sorrow, or (after an interjection) longing or regret.

"Oh, mamma, I cannot go!" cried Molly. "I've been so

much with her; and she may be suffering so, or even dying — and I to be dancing!" Gaskell, Wives I ch. 17 p. 295.

"Cyril has not been a good son," she said with sudden, solemn coldness. "To think that he should have kept that...." She wept again. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 1 § 3.

Only to think that my stars should let me off so easily!
R. H. Froude, Rem. I, 257.

I, to herd with narrow foreheads....!
Tennyson, Locksley Hall, 175.

Ah! no more to address thee or hear thy kind replying,
Brother.... Ne'er to behold thee again!
Ellis, Catullus, LXV, 9.

Oh, to be in England. Browning, Home-Thoughts.

395. In exclamatory questions there is an interrogative pronoun or adverb.

But.... how to hinder vexatious prosecutions?
Newman, Letters.

Ah, what to do? Morris, Aeneid.

Subject of the Infinitive with to

396. The action, occurrence, or state expressed by the infinitive is generally connected with a person or thing that forms, as it were, its subject.

As a rule this subject need not be specially indicated because it is clear from the context. This is usually the case when the infinitive is an adjunct (*a*); and always in the plain and prepositional accusative-with-infinitive.

a. I hope to go to-morrow.

This tea is too hot to drink.

Lord Lansdowne declared that the country had a right to expect to be told the truth. Times W. 11/5, 17.

b. I want him to get this letter to-morrow morning early.

Mr. R. signed to the nurse to withdraw. Harraden, Ships.

We depend upon you to give us the meaning.
Kipling, Stalky and Co., p. 258.

It is very kind of you to come and help us.

397. The context may also indicate the subject of the infinitive when the infinitive is the subject or nominal predicate (*a*); but this use of the infinitive is frequently found in abstract statements where no definite subject of the infinitive is thought of (*b*).

a. It is therefore worth our while to understand what a Carolingian king was, and what a Carolingian Emperor hoped to be. Davis, Med. Europe p. 58.

There was nothing for it but to go barefoot over the broken stones, dragging my leg and carrying high the injured heel. Eng. Rev. May 1913 p. 201.

b. To know the worst is the one way whereby to better it.

To be good is to be strong, in a world ruled by a moral Governor. Times 2/8, 15.

To be dazzled by material strength, even if it is your own, is to fear it. Times Lit. 2/9, 15.

398. When the infinitive is used in a free adjunct or in an exclamatory sentence, its subject may be expressed by the common case of a noun, or by a pronoun. If the latter distinguishes cases the nominative is used. For examples, see the sections above on these constructions.

Tenses of the Infinitive with to

399. The infinitive with *to*, being a noun-form of the verb, does not express the time of the action, occurrence, or state. As in nouns, the time is shown by the rest of the sentence, very often by the tense and meaning of the finite verb. The simple infinitive, therefore, though called the *present* infinitive, is really a neutral form with regard to time.

400. The simple infinitive with *to* may refer to the present time. This does not occur frequently.

I am pleased to see you.

401. The simple infinitive may also refer to past time.

I was pleased to see him.

It was a pleasure to me to see him.

Nicholas Breakspear, Pope (d. 1159), the only Englishman to attain that eminence was born at Langley, near St. Albans.
Dict. Eng. Church Hist. ed. Ollard s. v. Adrian IV.

The first apparently to point out Milton's indebtedness to Dante were the two Richardsons.

402. The simple infinitive may also refer to what is past and continued into the present, although the perfect infinitive is more usual in this case.

But he is supposed to be dead these thirty and more years.
Fergus Hume, A Traitor in London.

403. Far more frequently than to the present or the past, the infinitive with *to* is found to refer to the future. This is natural, for one of the most important functions of this infinitive is to be an adjunct of purpose and result; compare also the quotations in 342. The time may be indicated by a special word.

I shall be pleased to see you.

I did that to please you.

He has promised to come.

You have not packed it tight enough. It is sure to come undone again. Sweet, Element. nº. 34.

It did not signify what those times had been, they were gone never to return. Gaskell, North and South ch. 2.

He ate his breakfast heartily, and smoked his pipe, making no more of death than if he had been to take a journey.
Times Lit. 1/11, 18.

A month ago the Prime Minister insisted upon the exceptional importance of the coming Conference of the Allies to be held in Paris. Times W. 30/11, 17.

With the exception of an aged highway, and a still more aged barrow presently to be referred to....
Hardy, Return of the Native I ch. 1.

404. The consequence of the future meaning of the infinitive is that *to be* is sometimes equivalent to a predicative adjective, meaning *future*.

The English Plato is still to be. Times Lit. 15/1, 20.

405. The infinitive with *to* is also frequently neutral with regard to time. This is naturally often the case when the infinitive approaches the nature of an abstract noun, i. e. when it is used as a subject; also when the finite verb is in the neutral present, and further when the infinitive is a nominal predicate, or an adjunct to a noun with the function of an adjective clause. For examples, see the preceding sections

He is a man to thrive in the world.

To read George Eliot attentively is to become aware how little one knows about her. Times Lit. 20/11, 19.

Perfect Infinitive **406.** English uses the compound infinitive[1]) with *to have* to express what is past with regard to the time of the finite verb, or of the rest of the sentence. The perfect infinitive thus has the functions of a perfect tense (*a*) and of a preterite (*b*).

a. To have been accused was very bad; but now it seemed to be the opinion of every one that the verdict must be against the man. Trollope, Last Chron. ch. 61.

He seems to have worked hard.

We shall hope to have passed A. by 7 P. M.

b. He is said to have been an honest man.

He pretended to have walked as fast as he could.

Cynewulf was, in the opinion of a large number of critics, a Northumbrian, but some think him to have been Mercian. Stopford Brooke in Chambers's Cyclop. I.

Modal Use **407.** The perfect infinitive is also used modally, with the finite verb in a past tense, to express non-fulfilment.

But tell me; has he left this neighbourhood? I wanted to have seen him. Gaskell, Wives II p. 233.

I had hoped to have had a very remarkable diagram prepared by the Admiralty — I may have it before I sit down — showing the losses of shipping, Allied and British. Lloyd George, rep. Times W. 28/12, 17.

---

1) The compound infinitives do not occur in free adjuncts nor in exclamations.

He stepped inside, and the cab rolled off. "Were you going to have walked?" she asked presently.

Temple Thurston, City I ch. 15.

"Oh, there's no doubt he was clever enough to have been a doctor. Only of course with his family he had to be a soldier." Mackenzie, Sylvia p. 266.

A glorious vision to the youth, who embraced it as a flower of beauty, and read not a feature. There were curious features of colour in her face for him to have read.

Meredith, Feverel ch. 15 p. 98.

"I did not know Lord Fane was at the Abbey, grandpapa. When did he come?"

The old man rubbed his eyes wearily. "I — I did hear. Yes, he was to have arrived last night. I thought I told you. No? Then I forgot it. I remember now. Yes, he was to come last night."

"It is evident he *has* come!" remarked the girl, with a touch of humour that lit up her dark eyes.

Garvice, Staunch as a Woman.

We should like to have seen the secondary school element more fully represented. Times Ed. S. 7/9, 16.

408. The modal function of the perfect infinitive rarely occurs in other cases.

Those of us who feel that we are clever enough to have succeeded at the Bar, and regret that we did not choose to pursue the fugitive prizes of that honourable and profitable calling, can generally derive some comfort from the perusal of the reminiscences of a successful barrister.

Times Lit. 17/5, 18.

409. The perfect infinitive is occasionally found in the same function when non-fulfilment and past time are already indicated by the pluperfect future of the finite verb.

This double perfect infinitive is generally disapproved of by critics.

And, when I remember all that this man (viz. Charles II)

did, and all that he did not do, all that he was, and all that he would have chosen to have been, I am not at all sure that the second Charles Stuart was a more fortunate man than the first. Cecil Chesterton, Everyman.

Mr. H. J. White is an Australian and he has written far too much. At least, he would have done better to have published a very small selection of these verses.

Academy, 17/8, 12.

Molly did not like the idea of going out for a tête-a-tête walk with Mr. Preston; yet she pined for a little fresh air, would have liked to have seen the gardens, and have looked at the Manor house from different aspects.

Gaskell, Wives I ch. 14 p. 241.

A notoriety which he would have done much to have avoided was forced upon him.

Oppenheim, A People's Man ch. 27.

But Mrs. Ambrose seemed to be obtuse, and the vicar would have been the last to have spoken of his suspicions, even to the wife of his bosom. Crawford, Lonely Parish ch. 9.

He would have given much money to have been spared the experience. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 1 § 3.

410. Instead of the perfect infinitive we also find a perfect tense of the finite verb with a present infinitive, in the functions mentioned in 406 (*a*) and in 407 (*b*). See 67 on group-verbs, and 458.

a. *The Pilot* is said to have church leanings, and I have myself sometimes seemed to detect an ecclesiastical touch mingled with its admirable advice on Life Insurance.

Pilot 8/2, 1902, p. 157/2.

b. A deliberate student of prosody, on which he had intended to leave a treatise, but did not. Saintsbury, Manual p. 303.

Free Infinitive **411.** English has no future infinitive, unless the construction with (*to be*) *going to*, (*to be*) *about to* is looked upon as such.

Our provisions seemed to be going to last a few days longer.

High-spirited works have been produced by men known to be about to die, such as Smollett and Fielding.

Times Lit. 5/6, 19.

At the close of the war, Lysander was the greatest man in Greece, and all his ambitions seemed about to be fulfilled.

Goodspeed, Hist. p. 178.

Aspect of the Infinitive with to

412. The progressive infinitive with *to* is used in many of the functions of the simple infinitive but it is not very frequent. It naturally does not occur when a perfective form is required, as in adjuncts of purpose; nor is it used in free adjuncts and exclamations.

We didn't know anything about towns, and Ma had made us very excited by talking about the rich people we were going to know — and marry. She always used to be talking about marriage. She doesn't do it so much now.

Gilbert Cannan, Round the Corner, p. 93.

I suspect M. Mermeix of laughing at us even when he professes to be admiring, for he is the kind of man that would speak disrespectfully of the Equator. Daily Mail.

Nothing looks worse in a boy than to be always intruding where he's not wanted.

Pett Ridge, Name of Garland, ch. 10, p. 167.

Fyne seemed to be backing her up with all the weight of his solemn presence. Conrad, Chance I, 75.

Mr. Webb looked rather grave and seemed to be thinking the matter over. Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 52.

On such a night it seemed more than ever romantic to be setting out to Spain. Sinister Street p. 676.

I cannot bear to be always suspecting people.

Sweet, Sp. Engl. p. 83.

How did you come to be taking my pheasant's nest? ib. p. 65.

You are much too young yet to be meeting young men.

Bennett, Old W. Tale p. 127.

There is no need to be always bringing up your age on every possible occasion. Gaskell, Wives I ch. 8 p. 138.

To be rising is in many respects more agreeable than to have risen. J. O. Hobbes, Emotions II ch. 3.

Early one summer morning in England, in the year 1893 in the reign — which seemed in those days to have been going on for ever and to be likely to go on for evermore — of Queen Victoria there was born a little boy named Peter [1]).

Wells, Joan and Peter p. 1.

413. The progressive infinitive is also rare in the accusative-with-infinitive.

It (viz. Mrs. B.'s death) might be soon, for I can see worthy Mrs. Bonner to be breaking visibly.

Meredith, Harrington ch. 19 p. 204.

Voice of the Infinitive

414. The simple infinitive with *to* is not only neutral with regard to tense, but also to voice. It is frequently used in a sense that may be called passive, especially as an adjunct to nouns (*a*) and to adjectives (*b*).

a. According to him it was not a place to visit by night.

Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 51.

"Now you're sneering, Drummond," said Rose, "for you know there's no mystery to clear up."

Meredith, Harrington ch. 17 p. 175.

My hair does not want much brushing; there is not much of it to brush. Sweet, Element. no. 53.

But there are serious difficulties yet to overcome before we reach the full standard of production of which the country is capable. Times 29/7, 15.

There is nothing to do.

There isn't much to see.

---

1) The perfect infinitive here has the same function as the perfect tense referring to what is both past and present.

In all Bursley there could have been few drawing-rooms to compare with Constance's.

Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 2 § 1.

b. These apples are good to eat.

His face was so ghastly to see that I grew alarmed both for his life and reason. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll, p. 102.

The secret of Busby's success and unique reputation is not hard to explain. Annals of Westminster p. 113.

There are many things worse than fighting; and there are many wounds and injuries which people inflict on each other worse than bodily wounds and injuries — only they are not so plain to see. Times Lit. 29/7, 15.

The opportunity was too good to throw away.

Galsworthy, Freelands, ch. 8.

415. The simple infinitive is very frequent when it qualifies the adjective preceding the noun to which it serves as an adjunct.

This is no easy work to translate. Times Lit. 6/7, 17.

416. The simple infinitive is also used in a more or less clearly passive sense after the verb *to be*, in the function discussed in 351.

This, of which I once was scornfully proud, seems to be now, if not a calamity, something I would not choose if life were to live again. Gissing, Ryecroft VIII.

No other house in the neigbourhood was in any way to compare with it. Besant, All Sorts.

Speaking of artists in general, she (viz. Mrs. Craigie) said: "They think more than there is to think, feel more than there is to feel, see more than there is to see."

Academy 15/11, 1902.

Nor did he see more than a little of what there was to see.

Galsworthy, Beyond.

No one was to blame.

417. The result of this construction is sometimes that the infinitive becomes a predicative adjective, which can be preceded by an adverb of degree.

The King's English is rather to seek in the circular which has been issued. Academy 2/1, 1901.

Hence *far* is rather an adjunct to the infinitive than vice versa in the following.

The reason is not far to seek.
Pollock (Oxf. Dict. s. v. *Seek*).

Passive Infinitive **418.** In adjuncts to nouns and adjectives we also find the passive infinitive with *to* (*a*). Generally the passive form is necessary (*b*); it is hardly necessary to analyse the various causes for this.

a. This is a book to be reckoned with and pondered over
Times Lit. 13/5, 20.

To say what in her judgment was best to be done.
Rev. of Rev. Febr. 1901.

b. Thus ever about her rooms she moved on this mournful occupation until the last thing had been disposed of as either to be sent back or to be destroyed. Allen, Mistletoe.

The last eleven to be rescued from the flooded mine had some terrible experiences during their twelve hours' imprisonment. Daily News.

Little dainty tiny poems, with not too much in them, not too difficult to be comprehended by children of that good age.
Jack, Essays III 37.

The time for this problem to be solved has not yet come.

There was nothing to be done but to possess our souls in patience.

The temptation was too strong to be resisted.
Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 59.

There was not a house to be seen except a solitary farm-house. Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 56.

She agreed that a large house in the West End was a worthy aim, and one to be kept in mind.
Pett Ridge, Garland ch. 13.

But for all that, "The Harbor" is a book to be read.
Ill. London News 14/8, 15.

She had no retainers to be maintained because they were retainers. Trollope, Last Chron. ch. 52 (vol. II, 90).

An important question to be determined is, in what sense is *Absalom and Achitophel* a 'satire'? Verrall, Dryden p. 58.

Easy to please and be pleased. Vachell, Quinneys' p. 175.

We seem to have a mixture of constructions in the following.

But women are not easily to be read.
Hichens, Ambition ch. 34 p. 412.

It looks like a blending of *easy to read* and *to be read easily*. The construction is exceptional instead of the simple infinitive after some adjectives such as *easy, hard, difficult*. But in other cases it must be used.

The subject is not to thus lightly to be dismissed.

419. Apart from the cases mentioned the passive meaning of the infinitive is expressed by the special forms (*to be called, to have been called*).

He hopes to be appointed.

The true beauty always includes its proper utility. Many a dainty French chair of the eighteenth century fails in that, because it is obviously made to be looked at and chairs ought to be made to be sat upon. Times Lit. 10/8, 16.

The author appears to have been accorded quite exceptional opportunities of acquiring information. Quoted ib. 20/4, 17.

Meanwhile to be waited upon was an attention that had charms other than novelty. Pett Ridge, Garland.

420. The object of an infinitive can sometimes become the subject in a passive construction. In such a construction the finite verb is frequently subordinate in meaning to the passive infinitive; sometimes it is little more than a copula; compare 340.

When it is remembered that our submarines are now navigated in the open seas for thousands of miles, the meaning of that record cannot fail to be seen. Times, Weekly ed.

The discovery will enable science to determine the con-

ditions in which the infection takes place, and it is expected that preventive measures will be able to be taken.

Everyman, 3/1, 13.

In public school education, as in everything else, a new system is needed. Enquiry wants to be made, not of the persons who run the show; not even of those who have taken good places, but of the rank and file, who naturally never get their voices heard. English Illustr. Magaz., June, 1912.

Lear is essentially impossible to be represented on the stage.

Lamb, quoted Lear, Clarendon Press ed. p. XIX.

421. The passive infinitive is also used in the accusative-with-infinitive the verbs expressing will[1]) or wish (*a*). It seems to be less frequently used after the *verba sentiendi et declarandi* (*b*). It is also found in the nominative-and-infinitive (*c*).

a. Julius Caesar had permitted worship to be offered to himself. Goodspeed, Hist. p. 368.

Lady Malloring had caused Tryst to be warned that he could not marry his deceased wife's sister and continue to remain on the estate. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 34 p. 424.

(The question was) how far men and women should try to rule the lives of others instead of trying to rule their own, and how far those others should allow their lives to be so ruled? id. ib.

Inglesant ordered some refreshment to be given to the messenger, and his own horses to be got out.

Shorthouse, Inglesant ch. 11 p. 121.

But he could, and he did, play the Company's game, as it meant that game to be played. Times Lit. 21/4, 21.

An official return issued yesterday enables a comparison to be made between the number of emigrants to Canada and Australia during the seven months ending July 31 this year as against the corresponding period of last year.

Daily Mail, 23/10, 12.

b. If a stranger heard him talk about leather he would imagine him to have been bred a tanner.

---

1) *To get* is construed with the accusative-with-past participle. See 535.

c. Records of proceedings were ordered to be kept.
Constit. Essays p. 305.
New legislation is believed to be contemplated.
Jenks, Short Hist. of English Law p. 388.

Note that the accusative-(or nominative-)and-passive infinitive construction is always of the genuine type (see 362). The nominative-and-passive infinitive is naturally restricted to the verbs that can take a nominative-and-active infinitive (374 ff.), but differs very little from the construction discussed in 271, and illustrated by the following quotation.

It was whispered about that the first cause of the outbreak (a fire) was a bottle of turpentine which was being used or proposed to be used, in the pickling of an unpopular boy by his fellows. De Morgan, Vance ch. 12.

Character of the Infinitive with to

422. The infinitive with *to* is a verbal noun. Its character as a noun is apparent in its use as a subject of the sentence, or as a predicate with a copula. The use of *to* is also due to the noun-character of the infinitive, although *to* is clearly a preposition only when the infinitive is an adjunct expressing purpose or result. When the infinitive is a subject or predicate we can hardly consider *to* as anything other than a prefix. The noun-character explains why it does not necessarily distinguish tense, voice, or aspect.

423. The verbal character is especially prominent in exclamatory sentences. It is further shown by the nature of the adjuncts, which are exclusively those of the finite verb.

Although the infinitive differs from the finite verb in not distinguishing person, number and mood, it resembles the latter in that it has special forms to distinguish tense, aspect, and voice.

424. The term *verbal* noun for the infinitive with *to*, therefore, does not simply mean that the infinitive is connected with the finite verb in meaning and form, but chiefly that it is *grammatically* related to the verb. See also the sections on the character of the gerund, and the sections in which the infinitive with *to* is compared with the gerund and with the present participle.

Gerund

Functions

425. The gerund, like a noun, is used as any part of a sentence. It occurs frequently as a subject (*a*), a nominal predicate (*b*), an object (*c*), and a prepositional adjunct, whether to nouns, adjectives or verbs (*d*).

a. Going back to school would not make me unhappy, I can tell you. Anstey, Vice Versa ch. 2.

When Molly went to bed she was constrained to admit that staying at the Towers as a visitor was rather pleasant than otherwise. Gaskell, Wives III p. 257.

Telling Roger's father is not making it public.
ib. II p. 245.

It was a very old boot and much worn at the heel. Seeing that made Serge notice for the first time that his father's clothes were shabby, out of shape and dusty.
Gilbert Cannan, Round the Corner, ch. 11 p. 115.

The cattle moved slowly about the fields, and there was harvesting going on. Benson, Thread of Gold, p. 27.

b. His principal occupation in his old age was talking to his friends. Bailey, Johnson.

Don't say anything more to him, it is throwing words away.

Perhaps the great mistake made by so many *débutantes* and matrons, preparing for their first Court, is imagining that a *grand* [1]) *toilette* of this description must necessarily entail great expense. Daily Mail.

1) Sic.

c. She loved giving people the impression that she was adventurous. Hichens, Ambition ch. 7 p. 78.

Constance, trembling, took pains to finish undressing with dignified deliberation. Bennett, Old W. Tale I ch. 2 § 3 p. 46.

It is not surprising to hear that she (viz. Charlotte Brontë) did not enjoy writing her books. Times Lit. 13/4, 16.

I could scarce help laughing.

Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 56. p. 414.

d. The truth of the matter, as Mr. Chesterton would say, is, first, that writing, along with speaking, eating, sleeping, and putting on clothes, and coming out of the rain, is one of the great universal acts of modern life. In the second place it is also true that writing is, in its finer qualities, comparatively rare, a distinction which it shares with speaking, cookery, dressing, house-building, and the sleep of a tranquil and untroubled mind. Brewster, Writing of English p. 7.

There is no valid excuse, therefore, for anyone who has money for investment not buying the Bonds to the utmost of their ability. Times W. 30/11, 17.

Five years have passed since that meeting, and we seem no nearer to possessing a National Theatre.

Eng. Rev. July 1913.

There was no use in speaking about it.

Gaskell, North and S. ch. 33 p. 280.

On waking, he found himself on the green knoll whence he had first seen the old man of the glen.

W. Irving, Sketch-Book.

426. The gerund is less frequently used in free adjuncts (*a*); it is rarely found with verbs construed with an object and a predicative adjunct, whether as an object (*b*) or as an adjunct (*c*). Compare 561.

a. Pitt joined with Prussia to prevent it, and the Prussian armies overawed the Republicans without France daring to intervene. Trevelyan, British History p. 43.

b. He thought the marking of coins a mean trick.
Bennett, Old W. T. II ch. 4 § 3.

c. I call that misleading people.

427. The gerund as a subject is very frequent with the provisional *it*. On the interpretation of this construction, see the sections on *Sentence-Structure*.

I'm late, unavoidably. It was almost impossible getting here at all. Cotes, Cinderella ch. 28 p. 289.

It's hopeless attempting to make a wood fire, so you light the methylated spirit stove.
Jerome, Three Men in a Boat ch. 2.

It'll be miserable work living here alone.
Galsworthy, Man of Property ch. 2 p. 41.

It was no good worrying; he would go and make it up presently. ib. ch. 5, p. 79.

The only thing that bothers me is whether it's much good writing about education. Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 87.

It is no use minimizing the extent of the disaster.
Times W. 16/11, 17.

428. The gerund as a nominal predicate, with the provisional *it* to 'announce' a subject-clause, is not so frequent.

It would not be doing justice to the Lippingtons if I omitted to say that we had prayers. Cotes, Cinderella ch, 19 p. 212.

Compare also the second quotation of 462.

429. The gerund is also used with a provisional *there* and the verb *to be*. When the sentence is negative or interrogative this construction is often used to express possibility (*a*); compare the similar construction of the infinitive with *to*: 631. The construction is also used in other functions (*b*).

a. As for tastes, mamma, there is no accounting for them.
Trollope, Framley ch. 25 p. 248.

There was no doubting the sincerity of the voices.
Kipling, Stalky p. 148.

There can be no mistaking the Doctor's speech.
Whibley, Thackeray p. 4.

There was hardly any persuading her now to go out for a walk. Gaskell, Wives II p. 133.

b. There is no affectation of frivolity, no cloaking of earnestness here. Sturge-Henderson p. 33.

There is even here no straining after effect.
Ward, Dickens ch. 2, p. 25.

There will be no cheerful shops open on the morrow, no busy hurrying to and fro. Temple Thurston, City I ch. 16.

430. We naturally find the gerund as an adjunct to verbs, nouns, and adjectives that require the preposition *to*. The infinitive is also used in this function; see 348 and 480.

Tibetan was therefore driven to translating the great majority of these Sanskrit words into native equivalents.
Sapir, Language p. 210.

So I fell to wondering how many more of those present hailed him as the author of "Dodo" or "The Challomers."
Everyman, 9/11, 12.

But I cannot nerve myself to accepting such a state of things on hearsay. De Morgan, Vance ch. 16.

Since Mr. Belloc has taken to producing books at his present pace we have sought in vain for a return to the happy style of 'The Path of Rome'. Athenaeum, 28/12, 12.

Let us be sure that there is something more than mere interest and entertainment in a book which so wise a man as Jowett confessed to having read fifty times. Bailey, Johnson.

I look forward with confidence to securing the agreement of those two great countries. Times W. 16/11, 17.

The tendency to finding matter for hero-worship in Mary's endurance was much stronger with Beatrice than with Miss Oriel. Trollope, Dr. Thorne ch. 26 p. 277.

Cedric was used to seeing it there.
Burnett, Fauntleroy ch. 2.

431. The gerund is also used as an adjunct to adjectives, without any preposition. In this case the gerund has a function

similar to that of an object rather than of an adverb adjunct: it completes rather than qualifies the meaning of the adjective. The non-prepositional gerund is found in this function after *worth, near* [1], *busy* [2], *like*.

It is worth looking at some of the characteristics of classicism.

Penguins are the one thing in the Antarctic worth going all the way to see. Times Lit. 2/4, 14.

Everything that Stevenson wrote is worth reading; very little that has been written about him is worth even skimming. Pilot 26/10, 1901.

(This plan) came near being realized. Margoliouth, Mohammedanism p. 19.

What he has given us is far nearer being a political history of England from 1739. Times Lit. 5/2, 20.

She was busy turning out papers from an old-fashioned bureau. Wells, Country p. 226.

(Of this critic) it has been wittily said that he is too busy writing about Portuguese literature to read it. Mod. Lang. Rev. XIV p. 346.

Fortunately for them a victim had already been secured, and the brutes were too busy devouring him to pay attention to anything else. Patterson, Tsavo p. 74.

432. In other cases it may be doubtful whether the non-prepositional gerund is an adjunct or an object to the adjective, e. g. after *long, ready, done*. Indeed, the form in *-ing* may be looked upon as a present participle.

Don't be long unpacking. Sinister Street p. 401.

Are you ready packing?

Here he introduced, there he struck out; this he condensed,

1) We also find *near to*.

All wore black braided jackets, maroon skirts, hats with plush decorations, and smart boots. It was near to being a uniform. Pett Ridge, Mord Em'ly.

2) Examples of *busy in* will be found in 592, but it is suggested there that the form in *-ing* should rather be looked upon as a participle.

that he expanded; he was never done substituting a new word or phrase for an old one.

Thomson ed. Robertson p. 24.

Subject of the Gerund

433. When the 'subject' of the action or state is clearly indicated by the context it is not expressed.

I object to going there.

Asking him for help will be useless; you must do it alone.

On waking, he found himself on the green knoll whence he had first seen the old man of the glen.

W. Irving, Sketch-Book p. 41.

434. In many cases there is no definite subject at all.

It is no good talking to him; he must be punished.

Staring about aimlessly will do no good.

435. When the subject of the gerund must be expressed, this can be done:

1. by a noun in the genitive or the common case.
2. by possessive or demonstrative pronouns, and the common case or genitive of indefinite pronouns.
3. by the oblique cases of personal pronouns.

436. The genitive of personal nouns and indefinite pronouns, and the possessive pronouns are regularly used when the gerund is the subject of the sentence, and opens it.

Adelaide's being here will spoil everything.

Hichens, Ambition ch. 20 p. 236.

A few months earlier Boldwood's forgetting his husbandry would have been as preposterous an idea as a sailor forgetting he was in a ship [1]). Hardy, Madding Crowd ch. 38.

She hoped that Roger's coming home would set it to rights.

Gaskell, Wives I ch. p p. 122.

1) Note the contrast between *Boldwood's* and a *sailor.*

I was not, as a rule, so appallingly silent with people; and their being earls when they were earls, had made no difference so far. Cotes, Cinderella ch. 10 p. 115.

I'm beginning to think she'll never get on as a schoolmistress, though why she shouldn't I'm sure I don't know; for she's an uncommonly pretty woman for her age, and her having lived in our family, and your having had her so often with you, ought to go a good way.

Gaskell, Wives I ch. 8 p. 141.

Sophia thought: "His coming down is really no excuse for his not writing on Saturday."

Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 3 § 3.

437. Nouns that have no genitive are used in the common case, but the construction does not occur very frequently.

To-day being Sunday rather complicates matters.

Curme, Engl. Studien, 45.

The reason why this construction is infrequent, or at least one of the reasons, seems to be that it would often lead to the noun being taken for the subject of the sentence, and the form in *-ing* for a participle. This will be clear to anyone substituting the common case for the genitive in the quotations in 436.

438. The genitive is also frequently used to express the subject of the gerund that is a nominal predicate, or an attributive adjunct with *of* with a passive meaning. In such cases the meaning or function of the gerund seems to be distinctly adjectival; compare 441*a*.

That's Dr. Gwynne's doing. Trollope, Barchester.

Its plot is apparently of his own devising.

Herford, Shakespeare p. 18.

See further examples in 462.

439. In *literary* English the genitive both of nouns and indefinite pronouns is also used in other cases (*a*). Even nouns and pronouns that do not denote individuals, and have

therefore no genitive, properly speaking, occur in the genitive in print (*b*).

a. I don't mind a man's being a bit of a sportsman, but I think Molly's bringing him here is too thick.
Galsworthy, Joy.

She thought disspiritedly of Dahlia's having had to listen to it. Meredith, Rhoda Fleming.

The leaders thereupon consented to the men's returning to work. Times W. 1/3, 18.

There is not the remotest possibility of any one's calling upon me. Gissing, Ryecroft II.

b. With rare discrimination he persuaded J. H. Shorthouse, author of "John Inglesant," to write an introduction, which was largely responsible for the book's running into five editions.

Mr. Frederic Harrison's vigorous protest against this country's taking part in the next Olympic games, and the "humble remonstrance" on the same lines from the Headmaster of Sherborne which we publish elsewhere, reflect, we are well aware, the opinion of a considerable section of the community.
Times W.

There was a short debate on the probability of the rain's coming before breakfast was done.
Mackenzie, Guy and Pauline p. 161 [1]).

She never gave him a syllable of good advice, or talked to him about everything's depending upon his own exertions.
Butler, Way of All Flesh.

---

1) This author uses the construction regularly, and, no doubt, consciously. He does not even shrink from *himself's* as a subject to a gerund (passage not noted down). The following passage clearly shows, however, that such arbitrary modifications may lead to ambiguity or clearly wrong English.

The doctrines are those of Aristotle, of Goethe, of Coleridge, indeed, as one can imagine Patmore's saying, 'of all sensible men'.
Times Lit. 26/5, 21.

In this case *saying* is caused to mean *statement* by the preceding genitive, whereas the meaning intended is that one can imagine that Patmore might have said it: which would be expressed by *Patmore saying*; see 443.

440. Plural nouns in *s* are sometimes written with an apostrophe to show the function of the noun.

It is with the utmost reluctance that Indian parents assent to their daughters' receiving instruction in medicine at men's colleges. Times Ed. S. 4/4, 16.

Who could have foreseen the Boers' continuing the war after the fall of Pretoria? Pilot.

441. Apart from the three cases mentioned in 436 ff. (gerund as a subject, nominal predicate, or attributive adjunct with *of*), the subject of the gerund is generally expressed in spoken English by the common case of a noun (*a*) or indefinite pronoun (*b*), by possessive (*c*) or demonstrative (*d*) pronouns. Note that in the *of*- adjuncts to nouns the gerund has a far more distinctly verbal function than in the cases quoted in 438. The genitive would be as unnatural here as the common case in 438. The first instance under *a* here shows a case where the gerund is formally a nominal predicate, but really rather an object (of *remember*).

a. The first thing I can remember was my father teaching me the alphabet. Mary Lamb in Select Short Stories II p. 1.

There was a rumour of Martha marrying the son of a neighbouring farmer. Patterson Compton, p. 204.

Much excitement was caused in Sandgate Road, Folkestone, yesterday, by a bullock which was being driven through the town entering a glass and china shop.

She was not afraid of her drawing-room being seen by anybody. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 2 § 1.

Mrs. Downe Wright had not forgiven the indignity of her son having been refused by Mary.

Hurried reading results in the learner forgetting half of what he reads. Sweet.

Can he conceive Matthew Arnold permitting such a book to be written and published about himself?

Happily there is no risk of Irishmen becoming altogether, or even almost, as Englishmen are.

Chambers's Cycl. Eng. Lit. p. IX.

Of that time coming he had no doubt.
Patterson, Compton p. 187.

The completeness of the catastrophe pointed to a mine being the cause. Pilot 16/4, 1904.

She would never get stout as there was every danger of Clara doing. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 31 p. 396.

Mother whispered to him now and then, not to talk of this or that, because of the children being there.
Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 11 p. 72.

In this book he looks forward to Russia more or less rapidly overcoming the enormous difficulties with which it is faced.
Times Lit. 21/12, 17.

They enjoyed a brief popularity for some fifteen years, and then disappeared without their loss being much mourned.
Standard, 12/8, 1212.

I cannot help my ideas being different from yours and Samantha's. Vachell, Spragge p. 216.

Some of this hospital party has not yet reported itself, but rumours of parts of it having been seen at different places keep on arriving. Times W. 9/11, 17.

The fact of the higher apes not using their vocal organs for speech, no doubt depends on their intelligence not having been sufficiently advanced. Darwin, in Herrig-Förster p. 619.

On Mrs. Shorley telling her husband that at last she had secured a treasure, Mr. Shorley endeavoured to pretend that the phrase had not reached his ears before.
Pett Ridge, Garland.

Upon Kate's gentleman friend being left with seven pounds ten to the good, listeners gave a long and deep-drawn sigh of envy. ib.

b. He could not realise the possibility of any one finding a difficulty in so small a matter. Peard, Madame p. 58.

c. I remember your being ill, and then, when you were a little older, I remember your asking me all sorts of questions that I couldn't answer. Cannan, Corner, ch. 21 p. 224.

He had been well thrashed by a gentleman who did not approve of his trespassing on his grounds.
Sweet, Element. no. 79.

You don't mind my mentioning it?
Cannan, Corner, ch. 11 p. 115.

You don't mind my talking to you in this manner. Do you?
Patterson, Stephen Compton.

You see, it is some years now since we parted with that land. The talk about its being common [1]), I am sure, is nonsense, but I cannot really say about the footpath.
Pickthall, Larkmeadow, ch. 9.

Someone protested softly against his being given more brandy.
Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 13 § 15 p. 637.

On our knocking, however, the door was instantly thrown open by a Hindu servant. Conan Doyle.

On his ascending the staircase this feeling had deepened.
Patterson, Stephen Compton, p. 97.

Then suddenly, without a word of warning, without my being in the least prepared for it, she chucked me.
English Rev., Sept. 1913.

d. I have my doubts as to this being true.

442. In most of the quotations in the preceding section, the gerund is the object or prepositional adjunct to a verb; the last examples of 441 *a* and 441 *c* illustrate the gerund in free adjuncts.

When the gerund is used with the provisional *it,* grammarians consider the gerund as the subject of the sentence (the 'logical' subject). But the subject of such a gerund is expressed in the same way as that of a gerund used as an object or a prepositional adjunct to a verb; compare 436 and 443.

a. It's no earthly use the artist trying to keep himself and his talent in cotton wool in these days.
Hichens, Ambition ch. 30 p. 377.

Mrs. C. says it is nonsense, people going a long journey when they are married [2]). Eliot, Middlemarch III ch. 28 p. 203.

1) *Common land,* opposite of *private land.*

2) Note the comma.

It was no use Virginie venting her wrath upon Humphrey.
F. Montgomery, Misunderstood, ch. 9,

It was no use men being angry with them for damaging the links [1]). Times W. 7/2, 13.

b. A look of perplexity came into his ruddy little face. He stammered something about indifference to wealth, but I brushed all that aside. He had got to be rich, and it was no good his stammering. Wells, First Men in the Moon.

You are assuming there is a libel. There is no use our discussing the publication if there is no libel.
Lord Justice Vaughan Williams, Daily News.

'Look here,' said Michael, 'it's no use my arguing with you.'
Mrs. Henry de la Pasture in Cornhill Magazine, Sept. 1912.

"It was not worth while your going," his wife had said.
M. Pickthall, Larkmeadow.

It seemed so absurd my rushing back like this.
Hichens, Ambition ch. 27 p. 339.

Also in a clause opening with the relative *what*.

She told him what she knew; what was not the slightest use his contradicting. Temple Thurston, City III ch. 10.

443. The subject of the gerund can also be denoted by the oblique case of a personal pronoun. This use is generally disapproved of by theorists[2]), but is very frequent in spoken English. The personal pronoun is most frequently found when the gerund is the object or prepositional complement of verbs (*a*), and when it is used with the provisional *it* (*b*).

a. I much regret that my official duties at Crewe House prevent me being present at to-day's gathering.
Lord Northcliffe in Times 23/8, 18.

"Would you mind me coming with you, Mrs. Rouse?" said John suddenly. Temple Thurston, City I ch. 16 p. 126.

"I'm rather lost in that plan of yours; the details, as you state them, are a little puzzling; but if I make them out

1) i.e. golf-links.

2) See footnote to 439.

rightly, I am to go about the country, like the donkeys on the common, with a clog fastened to my hind leg."

"I don't mind your calling me a clog, if only we were fastened together."

"But I do mind you calling me a donkey," he replied.

Gaskell, Wives I ch. 2. p. 40.

My dear girl, I'm much too much of a weathercock, or if you insist on me being heavy, let's say a pendulum ...

Sinister Street p. 619.

"I quite believe it," Pat continued, with one ear for what Amos was telling the agent about him and Steve having been at the Holme Chapel School. Patterson, Compton p. 175.

b. Do come in now. That's no use you goin' on!

M. Pickthall, Larkmeadow, p. 7.

"Doesn't seem the least use me speaking to her," said Miss Meers. Pett Ridge, Name of Garland, ch. 13, p. 219.

It's no use you pretending you've been uncomfortable, because I know you haven't.

A. Bennett, Grand Babylon Hotel ch. 27 p. 255.

It's no use me staying. Bennett, Leonora ch. 6.

It's not a bit of use you talking, I shan't wear it again.

Bennett, Old W. Tale II ch. 2 § 3 p. 170.

444. The oblique case of the personal pronoun is also found when the gerund is an adjunct to a noun [1]).

By this time he was seriously convinced that there was no hope of him being among the selected six or ten.

Bennett, Roll-Call I ch. 9 § 3.

I don't like the idea of us living in Maggie's house.

id. These Twain I ch. 7.

It was the first time that there had even been question of him visiting a private house, except his aunt's, at night.

id. Clayhanger II ch. 6 § 4.

The construction does not seem to occur in noun-adjuncts with *of* when the meaning is passive (462). Nor has it been

1) All the quotations are from Mr. Bennett's books but I hardly think the construction is dialectal.

found in adverb adjuncts of place and time, and, generally, any adjunct that is separated from its verb by a pause or group of words. See the last examples of 441 *a* and *c*; compare also 447. The possessive pronoun could not be replaced by a personal pronoun in these quotations:

(The persuasion) that the large, deep rottenness in the British world about them was perhaps in the nature of things and anyhow beyond their altering.
Joan and Peter ch. 11 § 15.

To their thinking, there is no essential difference between the living and the dead. Times Lit. 25/5, 22.

445. The subject of the gerund can also be expressed by a longer group of words, sometimes a clause.

There is, however, a middle class prejudice against the possibility of what is ornamental being useful.
Cornhill Mag. Sept. 1912.

I am directed by the County Licensing Committee to say that there appears to be no objection to the body on behalf of which you write instituting proceedings in the case of Sunday entertainments being held, if they see fit to do so.
Daily News 1912.

446. We also find the formal subjects *its*, *it*, *there*.

a. Lady Lippington said at once that she hoped we wouldn't mind its not being "a function." Cotes, Cinderella ch. 8 p. 85.

No mistake at all about its being picturesque over here.
Hichens, Ambition ch. 27 p. 331.

b. Mary said something about it being a long time.
Montgomery, Misunderstood.

c. This seems to abandon any belief in there being an absolute standard of morality. Athenaeum 14/2, 14.

It is unnecessary to emphasize the lamentable fact of there being so many wounded men on their backs at the present time. Corresp. Times Lit. 27/1, 16.

On his way down to Twickenham Steve was glad at there

being no particular debate in the House that night.
Patterson, Compton.

447. The formal *it* is also used as a subject in adjuncts that are separated from their verb (free adjuncts). See 444.

Upon it being announced .... that there was a deficit of over £ 300, Mr. E. S. Wills .... intimated that he would give a cheque for the amount. Standard.

448. The 'subject' of the gerund is sometimes made the object of the finite verb, whilst the gerund takes a preposition (*a*). This construction is also used where a logical analysis is impossible (*b*).

a. I'm going down there this evening; so you must excuse me for hurrying away. Patterson, Compton, p. 176.

But this did not prevent us from maintaining a gimlet eye on the doings of next door. Kenealy, Mrs. Grundy p. 60.

His book contains more than enough to justify the reader in refusing to accept his thesis. Times Lit. 15/2, 18.

b. Nothing could make Sir Christopher so happy as to see a marriage which might be expected to secure the inheritance of Cheverel Manor from getting into the wrong hands.
Eliot, Mr. Gilfil's Love-Story ch. IV.

(They) were carefully trying to avoid a rumpus from breaking out. Patterson, Compton, p. 72.

The Board of Agriculture are considering what powers, if any, should be obtained to prevent good farmers from being turned out of their holdings owing to the sale of the property.
Times W. 21/12, 17.

The rigid uniformity of the examinations for schools prescribed by Oxford and Cambridge prevents any experiments from being tried or any new method adopted.
Prof. Firth, Hist. IV no. 14 p. 80.

449. This construction competes with the one in which the gerund is the object (*You must excuse my hurrying*

away etc.). Sometimes the prepositional construction is preferable because the other is ambiguous. Thus *You must excuse my* (*me*) *saying that* may mean:

1. You must excuse (pardon) me for saying that.

2. You must excuse me from saying that i. e. you must allow me not to say it.

Hence it is only the context that makes the following sentence free from ambiguity.

> Toll the bell in the mulberry tree, and Charlotte will come. You must excuse my getting up.
>
> Mackenzie, Guy and Pauline p. 192.

George Eliot, *Felix Holt* (ch. 22), however, also uses the prepositional construction in both meanings, first in that of no. 2, two pages further on in that of no. 1.

> "Excuse me from rising, Miss Lyon," said Felix; "I'm binding up Job's finger." —
>
> You'll excuse my going away, I know, Miss Lyon. But there were the dumplings to see to, and what little I've got left on my hands now, I like to do well.

450. It is rare for the gerund to take a prepositional subject with *for* which is so common with the infinitive. See also the second quotation of 425*d*.

> Men have made the world what it is; and 't is no good for us women pretending they haven't.
>
> Phillpotts, Beacon II ch. 7 p. 184.

This construction is exceptional; it may be a blending of the two usual ones: *it is no good women pretending* and *it is no good for women to pretend.*

451. Such a construction as *to prevent him going away* (1) is formally like an accusative and present participle. And there is really no sufficient ground to reject this interpretation, unless we compare the other constructions: *to prevent his coming* (2), and *to prevent him from coming* (3).

In the construction 2 and 3 the form in *-ing* must be

looked upon as a gerund. And the first is probably felt as essentially identical with them by modern speakers. For that reason the first construction might be called an *accusative with gerund*. The third might be called an *accusative with prepositional gerund*. These names would be specially serviceable where the accusative is not really an object at all, as is frequently the case. See the quotations of 443 ff, and the following.

a. It is much to be hoped that the Government will not allow any irresponsible or factious opposition to prevent this Bill becoming law. Observer 4/12, 21.

He did not feel the slightest tremor of nervousness. He remembered Hunter saying at the end of last term that it was rather ticklish work being captain of the House.
Waugh, Loom of Youth ch. 1.

b. This view prevents us from treating the poor child as a mere tool for the production of wealth [1]).
Gill, Government and People p. 160.

452. We also find the nominative and prepositional gerund [2]).

Dr. Barnard has been prevented by other learned preoccupations from making himself responsible for the revision of the volume. Medieval History ed. Davis. Preface.

453. The construction in 450 is exceptional with the preposition *for*. But several examples have been given with other prepositions; see e.g. the last two of 443*a*. It might be called *the prepositional accusative and gerund*. Another instance is: *We depended upon your father helping us.*

The construction is clearly similar to the prepositional accusative-and-infinitive (379), just as the constructions in 451 f. are similar to the plain accusative-and-infinitive and the nominative-and-infinitive.

1) The accusative and gerund (plain and prepositional) is very frequent with *to prevent*.

2) I cannot instance the *nominative and plain gerund*, but there is probably no objection to it: *He was prevented making himself responsible, etc.*

Tenses of the Gerund

454. The gerund, like the infinitive with *to*, is a nominal form of the verb; it does not express time.

The simple gerund can therefore be used to express any time, or no time in particular.

1. present time.

It's a great advantage having this little book.
Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 70.

I cannot help saying that your father was quite right.

But war is a symptom rather than the disease itself, and there is little use in preventing symptoms.
Times Lit. 6/7, 17.

2. future time.

You may rely upon my looking after your interests.

I object to going there.

The membership grew with great rapidity, and those who were reluctant to join, were forced to do so under threats of their houses being burnt. Daily News, 18/10, 11.

"I never said so!" I cried. "I only meant that if Lady Doleford seemed to like me better it would be pleasanter meeting her in society." Cotes, Cinderella ch. 22 p. 237.

3. past time.

I could not help saying that your father was quite right.

It was a shock just now meeting you.
Vachell, Quinneys' p. 183.

I reproached him for deceiving me.

But in spite of this I remember then wondering at Lossie's adoration of her [1]). De Morgan, Vance ch. 15.

On returning to Cambridge, in order to be up to date, he and some friends went out carol singing one night, visiting

1) Note the addition of *then*.

the heads of Colleges, and the houses of the married fellows.
E. F. Benson.

As for Lorna she would come out. There was no keeping her in the house. Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 46 p. 318.

4. no time.

I like getting up early.

What I like is settling down in a quiet place, where there's some good fishing, and taking it easy. Sweet, Element. no. 73.

It's very unsatisfactory having a person about the house of whom one knows nothing. Baring-Gould, Swaen I, p. 8.

455. The simple gerund may also refer to what is both past and present.

It has been very charming having you all to myself, but I know Lady Cumnor will be expecting us now.
Gaskell, Wives I ch. 11 p. 191.

456. When the context (chiefly the tense or meaning of the finite verb) does not show the time, the perfect gerund can be used. See 406 on the perfect infinitive with *to*.

She blamed herself for having been a dull companion.
Phillpotts, Beacon I ch. 8 p. 72.

He makes no pretence of having incurred any danger or suffered what we should to-day regard as hardship.
Times Lit. 29/6, 16.

As for Paul he was perfectly furious at having been so outwitted and overreached. Anstey, Vice Versa ch. 2.

457. The perfect gerund is also used when the context clearly shows the time.

And seeing Nedda's smile, for the girl recollected perfectly having admired it during dinner at Uncle John's...
Galsworthy, Freelands, ch. 26 p. 320.

458. The simple gerund is also found in a modal function with the finite verb in the pluperfect; compare 410.

I had intended translating all or nearly all these Idylls into blank verse.... But I found that other metres had their special advantages. Calverley p. XXXI.

It would have been pleasanter and easier attacking later... Times W, 12/10. 17.

Voice of the Gerund

459. When a verb is only used intransitively there is naturally no question of voice.

It was worth going miles to behold such a thing.
Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 46, p. 317.

Even in her slumber she had instinctively felt that a Lennox was worth rousing herself for. Gaskell, North & S. ch. 1 p. 14

It was very pleasant driving quickly along in the luxurious carriage. id. Wives I ch. 6 p. 92.

Mrs. Fane enjoyed dining with her son and his friend.
Sinister Street p. 731.

460. When a verb can be used transitively, its gerund may have a more or less clearly active (*a*) or passive (*b*) meaning.

a. It's no use teaching morality and the laws of health at school, if the children's home-life is unhealthy and vicious.
Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 85.

It's no good making a fuss, that's childish.
Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 21 p. 255.

They would be so useful to keep his mind from thinking about things that it was no good thinking about.
ib. ch. 16 p. 193.

b. Naturally, there were experiences on the way, and they do not lose in the telling. Athen. 1/10, 11 p. 419/1.

(These ideas) needed stating, for they are not always recognized.

In view of the prestige and power possessed by Carthage, the victory of Rome is remarkable, and its causes worth considering. Goodspeed, History.

The want of a national Army which is still only in the forming. Times W. 16/10, 14.

He felt that if the town had been aware of his jilting, he could not have borne the humiliation.

Bennett, Clayhanger III ch. 1 § 2.

The story will not bear telling twice [1]).

Some arrangements must have been made between the Doctor and my Mother about my furbishing up for Penguin's [2]).

De Morgan, Vance ch. II.

461. The simple gerund in a passive meaning is frequently used as an adjunct to some verbs. Such are *to deserve, need, require, want* (meaning 'to need'), *to bear* (in negative and interrogative sentences). See the first footnote.

If I were such a consummate ass as that, I should deserve hanging. F. C. Philips, Mrs. Bowerie p. 86.

Some of her conclusions need filling out, and some correcting.

Times Lit. 30/4, 14.

Though its tactics seem rough and have led to excessively violent scenes, its speakers have said many things that required saying. Times W. 28/12, 17.

Something had depressed Londell; he wanted rousing.

Punch 31/3, 15.

She wants stirring up, that's what your sister wants.

Bennett, Old W Tale IV ch. 3 § 2.

John expelled from his mind all misgivings about Hugh, hoped it would be a fine day to-morrow so that he could really look round the garden and see what plants wanted ordering. Mackenzie, Guy and Pauline ch. 3.

462. The simple gerund is frequently passive in meaning when it is an adjunct with *of* and a genitive or possessive pronoun. Compare also the last quotation of 460.

Michael took refuge in dream of his own fashioning.

Sinister Street p. 254.

---

1) When *bear* has a personal subject the passive infinitive or gerund is used
He cannot bear to be talked to in an angry tone.
See also the last sentence on p. 7.

2) A public school.

The war was not of England's making.
Times Lit. 3/2, 16.

There is not in my possession one single note of his writing.
Hole, Memories p. 89.

463. The simple gerund is also often passive when it is an adjunct to *worth*, or after the prepositions *beyond*, *past*.

All the essays in this volume were worth reprinting.

He was worried beyond describing by his own particular followers. Wells, Country p. 225.

He is past praying for.

464. It may be noted that verbal nouns not ending in *-ing* also frequently have a passive meaning in the same cases as the verbal nouns in *-ing*.

The subject deserves fuller treatment than can be given to it here. Oxf. Dict. s. v. *deserve*.

The charge that they have been used in an arbitrary and capricious manner will not bear investigation.
Times Lit. 25/1, 18.

A force which is not of their creation.
Escott, England I 123.

But later he sees that it was not a war solely of Bismark's creation.

It is beyond argument that the need for educational revolution exists. Times Ed. S. 1/2, 16.

For three days passion has run very high in the Chamber, and the sittings have been stormy beyond description.
Times W. 28/12, 17.

465. In other cases than those mentioned, the passive meaning is generally expressed by the passive forms of the gerund.

I will not mind being thought ridiculous.
Cotes, Cinderella ch. 16 p. 184.

I am very fond of being read to.

Possibly she resented being made a fool of before her daughter. Vachell, Quinneys' p. 208.

If we escaped being noticed and punished it was only because Mr. Webb was away at a wedding or funeral most of the time. Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 52.

The dazzling consideration was whether it would make the least difference being distantly connected with them by marriage. Cotes, Cinderella ch. 24 p. 251.

Mr. J. E. C. Bodley writes to the *Westminster Gazette* to say that our paragraph about Sir James Murray having been elected a Foreign Member of the French Academy is wrong.

Having been brought up with Graham helped, I suppose, to account for it. Cotes, Cinderella ch. 10 p. 116.

After that, they tried a smaller hotel where they were fairly comfortable, though Mrs. Gainsborough took a long time to get used to being brought chocolate in the morning. Mackenzie, Sylvia p. 349.

Character of the Gerund

466. The gerund, like the infinitive with *to*, is called a verbal noun. Its noun-character is evident in all its functions, and also in the use of the simple gerund independently of tense and voice.

The noun-character of the gerund is more prominent than of the infinitive with *to*. For the gerund can take all the adjuncts that a noun can take: articles, adjectives, nouns or pronouns in the genitive or in the common case, possessive and indefinite pronouns.

The verbal character of the gerund is shown by the compound forms and the adjuncts, in the same way as in the case of the infinitive with *to;* see 422 ff.

467. It has sometimes been attempted to distinguish the form in *-ing* as a *gerund* or a *verbal noun* according to its function in the sentence. From a formal point of view it is

often easy to decide whether the adjuncts of the form in *-ing* are those proper to verbs or to nouns. If we examine the quotations in the preceding sections from this point of view, the majority of the forms in *-ing* will probably be found to have verbal adjuncts, hence to be gerunds.

When the form in *-ing* is used as a subject, or nominal predicate, however, or as an attributive adjunct with *of* (436 f.), the adjunct expressing the subject is a genitive or possessive pronoun. In these cases whe should, therefore, call the form a verbal noun. And it is probable that the nominal character of the form in *-ing* in these cases makes it necessary to use the genitive, whereas in other functions the common case is usual. But the form in *-ing* used as the subject of the sentence can also take verbal adjuncts, e. g. objects, so that it would be impossible to say that the form in *-ing* when used as a subject is necessarily a verbal noun, not a gerund.

468. In the following quotations the form in *-ing* is nominal in its adjuncts; and in many cases its meaning, too, is rather that of a noun than of a verb.

> The fact remains that the teaching of the art of writing in the vast majority of English schools is either casual or unconscious, and that the results of our system are lamentable. [*teaching* is here *system* of t., not the *act* of t.].
>
> Hartog, Writing of English.

> The getting of Sophia's ticket to Bursley occupied them next. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 2 § 1.

> He tells us that it was by reading Napier's 'Peninsular War' that he was introduced to a new world of thought and mentally equipped for the writing of his earliest book, which dealt with the naval operations in 'The Gulf and Island Waters' during the Civil War. Athenaeum.

> He has given repeated proofs of his desire to reform the political institutions of China by the gradual building up of a new structure of representative government.
>
> Times W. 23,5, 13.

Of the making of books about Stevenson there is literally no end. Athenaeum.

A vast amount of research and of hard thinking must have gone to the making of Prof. Graves's 'History of Education in in Modern Times'. Athenaeum.

The Paper had the appearance of a rough map. By much folding it was creased and worn to the pitch of separation. Wells, Country of the Blind.

The whole air, that quiet afternoon, seemed full of the calling of forgotten voices, and dead faces looked out from the closed lattices. Benson, Thread of Gold, p. 13.

What undermines the renown of Dickens is the growing conviction that the texture of his mind was common, that he fell short in courageous facing of the truth, and in certain delicacies of perception.

Arnold Bennett in English Review, June 1913.

469. The form in *-ing* may be completely treated like a noun, except that it is rarely preceded by an objective genitive [1]). When the form in *-ing* takes a plural ending, however, it is usually so completely a noun that it cannot be called a *verbal* noun. Such forms are: *sweepings, filings, happenings* (These list slippers were the immediate cause to important happenings in St. Luke's Square: Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 3 § 1).

Similarly *a meeting, a gathering*, must be considered as ordinary class-nouns, not gerunds, for they are concrete rather than abstract. See 435.

Occasionally, however, we may speak of a gerund in spite of the plural form, as in the following quotation.

Naturally with so much of her attention fixed upon the raps downstairs Sylvia began to fancy renewed rappings all

1) Poutsma, *Gerund* (p. 110) instances: *the troubles and storms of Hester's bringing-up, the day of Hester's burying, the subject of his daughter's upbringing.* The *ing*-form is distinctly nominal here, and this is probably the cause of the form *upbringing* by the side of *bringing-up.*

round her in the darkness, and not merely rappings, but all sorts of nocturnal shufflings and scrapings and whisperings and scratchings, until she had to relight her candle.

Mackenzie, Sylvia and Michael p. 55.

470. The use of the possessive pronouns in a function equivalent to that of the objective genitive is also rare.

Secondly because of the profusion of his imagery and the extraordinarily keen sense for beauty and sweetness that went to its making. Mair, English Lit. p. 47.

471. The distinction between a *gerund* and a *verbal noun* is impracticable, however. In the first place, there may be no adjuncts at all to enable us to make the distinction. Some adjuncts, moreover, such as prepositional adjuncts, may qualify verbs as well as nouns. In such cases, when the form does not settle the question, it is often impossible to decide, on the basis of the meaning of the form in *-ing*, whether it is a gerund or a verbal noun.

472. The distinction is also impossible when a word in *-ing* is qualified partly by adjuncts proper to nouns, partly by adjuncts proper to verbs.

"The reason for what?"

"For your never coming." Wharton, Mirth p. 5.

Thus the Church of England was, as the reign of Elizabeth advanced, gradually strengthened by the rallying to her side those who, in the first years of the "Settlement," were sympathisers with Rome. Spence, Hist. Eng. Church p. 177.

All that she could do would be to tell her uncle so much as it was fitting that he should know. The doing this would doubtless be in some degree difficult.

Trollope, Dr. Thorne ch. 30 p. 321.

It seems a more cruel business than the shutting him up.

Conrad, Chance.

It is, however, indisputable, that those Greek scholars who

first taught Greek in Italy found that what was demanded at their hands was not so much the teaching of the language as the making known its thought — and hence the appearance of numerous translations. Edinburgh Review, Oct. 1905.

The enormous outlay absolutely necessary for the carrying out these many costly religious works.

Spence, History of the English Church.

In the last example the pluperfect is justified by the fact that the going for a walk preceded *seeing the donkey* and it is used here because the seeing the donkey is the really important event, to which the pluperfect makes it subordinate. (The sentence referred to was: *he told them he had gone for a little walk, and saw a donkey).*

Sweet, Grammar.

Another stirring passage describes Ney's crossing the Dnieper. Athenaeum, 14/9, 12.

(Here the form *Ney's* may seem arbitrary (see the footnote to § 439), but it is better than *Ney*, because the writer thus brings out the nominal character of *crossing*, which here means *manner of crossing*, whereas *Ney crossing* would simply express the *fact* of the river being crossed).

The significance of this leaving the land of their birth and of this crossing of the frontier means nothing to them.

Academy.

Laying of ghosts is a public duty [1]).

Meredith, R. Feverel p. 72.

473. Sometimes, too, the adjuncts of the word in *-ing* point distinctly to the form being a noun, whereas its meaning is distinctly verbal.

The writing of the book has cost him a great deal of time.

We believe that it will make a deep impression on this side of the Channel, where men are wont to use and value plain speaking. Times W. 27/9, 12. (Compare the noun *speech).*

---

1) According to the *Concise Oxf. Dict.* s. v. *of* no. 31 this construction is archaic.

Infinitive with to and Gerund Compared

474. The infinitive with *to* and the gerund have both been described as verbal nouns; they are often used in the same functions. In some cases, however, only one of the two is possible. It will be useful therefore:

1. to consider in what cases one of the two forms must be used, and to find out the reasons for this.

2. to consider the cases in which both the infinitive with *to* and the gerund can be used, and to find out the difference, if any.

Infinitive Only **475.** The infinitive with *to* is used, to the exclusion of the gerund:

1. in adjuncts to verbs, nouns, and adjectives, when purpose or result must be expressed (326 ff.).

2. in the accusative-with-infinitive construction with the verbs of will and wish (363 ff.) and the verba sentiendi et declarandi (367 ff.).

3. when there are connecting relative pronouns and adverbs (345 f.).

4. in exclamations (394 f.).

476. To the historical student of English the explanation of the exclusive use of the infinitive in the first of the cases mentioned above, may seem very simple: *to* has its original function here of expressing purpose, and the infinitive has been retained. The question that must really be answered, however, is why, after *to*, the gerund has not been introduced, considering that it is used after all other prepositions.

477. It seems that the explanation of the exclusive use of the infinitive in the first, and perhaps also the second, of the above-mentioned cases must be looked for in the difference of aspect expressed by the infinitive and the gerund.

The infinitive is perfective, the gerund is durative. Now

it is clear that an adjunct of purpose requires a perfective form of the verb. Hence, also, the progressive infinitive is not used in these cases (412). See also the sections on the *Infinitive and Participle*.

It may be added that a prepositional gerund is occasionally equivalent to an accusative-and-infinitive, as after *persuade*.

> How was it that he, Dunstan Cass, who had often heard talk of Marner's miserliness, had never thought of suggesting to Godfrey that he should frighten or persuade the old fellow into lending the money on the excellent security of the young Squire's prospects? George Eliot, Silas Marner ch. 4.

On the other hand *led to my writing* is equivalent to *led me to write* (an accusative- and- infinitive) in the following quotation.

> But it started recollections in my mind which led to my writing as much of my narrative as I could without difficulty recall. de Morgan, Vance ch. 10.

478. For the same reason the infinitive only is used after words (nouns and adjectives as well as verbs) that express a wish (*a*). In other cases. too, the infinitive must be used because the adjunct is one of purpose or result (*b*).

a. She had the desire to do something which she objected to doing. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 1 § 5.

The least Amy could do was to show contrition and amiability and an anxiety to please. ib. ch. 3 § 1.

She made a sign to the guard for leave to go upstairs again. Mackenzie, Sylvia and Michael p. 261.

(They) are anxious to confide in each other. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 2 § 2 p. 458.

Sophia was very careful to make no observation. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 3 § 3 p. 492.

There are plenty of admirable scholars capable and willing to take up the work of advanced classical courses if reasonable salaries are provided. Times Ed. S. 11/3, 20.

b. We have no time to explore the backwaters.
Times Lit. 11/3, 20.

We were a locally minded people, and local was our history. We had not even the intelligence to write very much of that. ib.

479. The answer to this question why the infinitive only is used in the other cases, seems to be that in all of them the verbal noun has a clearly verbal function; see also 321 on the infinitive in exclamations. And the infinitive with *to* is distinctly more verbal in character than the gerund. This is shown by the fact that the adjuncts of the infinitive are exclusively such as may qualify a finite verb, whereas the gerund may equally well take such as are peculiar to nouns. The historical reason given in the preceding section is, naturally, also of importance, even though it is not by itself sufficient.

480. It has also been shown (348, 430) that some words that regularly take an adjunct with *to* and a noun, can also take an infinitive, or a gerund, both with *to*.

Sometimes both forms are possible. The difference between the two constructions, as far ar there is any, is one of aspect (477).

1. Hence, on second thoughts, he felt dislike to refuse the invitation. Patterson, Compton p. 146.

Here he had a dislike to being an outsider in such a matter as common garb. ib. p. 105.

2. I am trying to find a means to get rid of him.

We should be engaged in finding means to getting rid of that more serious danger. Freeman, Growth p. 157.

3. We are accustomed to call the first the cause, and the last the effect. Oxf. Dict.

Another reason is that Europeans are accustomed to seeing women, and Turks are not. Athenaeum 28/3, 14. 4.

4. For this purpose the four Vice-Presidents of the Chamber would be requested to examine the whole mass of evidence and documents collected by the Commission, and, after choosing

those necessary to forming judgment on the case, to publish and lay them before Parliament. Times W.

5. Their eyes met and saw a thousand things in a moment that their lips came near to say. Wells, Country p. 30.

It was near to being a uniform. See p. 189 footnote.

6. These are the artifices which go to make up comedy. Times Lit. 20/6, 14.

Loving thought and care had gone to making the place seemly and beautiful. Benson, Thread of Gold p. 11.

481. The gerund is rarely used after *to* when the verbal noun is clearly an adjunct of purpose or result [1]). When the subject must be expressed the gerund is necessary.

He was especally opposed to young men being compelled to go terminally to communion. Newman, Letters.

Gerund Only **482.** The gerund is used, to the exclusion of the infinitive,

1. in prepositional adjuncts. On adjuncts with *to*, see 480.

2. in adjuncts completing the meaning of some adjectives, chiefly *worth, busy, near,* and *like.*

3. as an object or adjunct completing the meaning of a good many verbs. Among the most important of these [2]) may be mentioned *to avoid, finish, put off, give up, escape, repent, stand; to want, bear,* when the verbal noun has a passive meaning [3]); also after *to help* and *to mind*, chiefly in negative and interrogative sentences.

483. Before discussing the reasons for the exclusive gerund

---

1) Nouns require *for.*

He writes not for dramatic effect, but to please and soothe himself. Times Lit. 17/3, '21.

2) No complete list is attempted here. It would be of little use, for what concerns us here is not the detailed knowledge of the use, but the reasons for it.

3) See 460 f.

in these cases it will be instructive to consider some cases when these words can be construed with an infinitive, but in a function differing from the one indicated.

484. In the first place we occasionally find an infinitive 'after' a preposition. But in these cases we have no prepositional adjunct, for the preposition has rather the function of joining two parts of a sentence, i. e. of a conjunction.

> Seymour was impeached for having misappropriated these supplies — using them to retain instead of to disband the soldiers. Maitland, Const. Hist. p. 328.
>
> (They) helped to lower instead of raise the standard of morality in the community. Const. Essays p. 335.

485. The adjective *busy*, and many verbs requiring a gerund as an object or as an adjunct to complete their meaning, take an infinitive with *to* as an adjunct expressing purpose or result.

The cases when the infinitive with *to* is used point to the reason for the gerund in the other cases: the gerund is used when the function is distinctly that of a noun.

For this reason it is found in prepositional adjuncts. Also in those adjuncts that complete rather than modify the word they refer to, in other words the adjuncts resembling objects. This seems to be the case in such examples as the following.

> I have not quite finished packing yet.
> Sweet, Element. no. 35.
>
> Mrs. Soames had actually given up wearing feathers.
> Galsworthy, Property ch. 1 p. 8.
>
> He (an airman) attempted too short a turn in endeavouring to avoid dropping among the spectators. Times W. 27/9, 12
>
> I hope she does not contemplate coming to the morning reading. Dickens, Letters (Oxf. Dict.)
>
> She deferred writing the irrevocable words of parting from all her little world. Eliot, Romola II ch. 4. (Oxf. Dict.)

486. It may be added that the gerund when used as an object can also be used, in some cases, as the subject of a passive construction, whereas the infinitive, even though it may be considered as an object (336 f.), is not so used.

With verbs that are construed with an object and a predicative adjunct, the gerund is used both for its object and its predicative adjunct (426), whereas the infinitive cannot be used except as an 'object' with the provisional object *it* (e. g. *I find it difficult to believe this*).

487. The exclusive use of the form in *-ing* may be partly due to the aspect of the verb, especially as regards the third of the above mentioned cases.

It may also be noted that it is sometimes doubtful whether the form in *-ing* should be called a gerund or a participle. See p. 189 (footnote) and below on the *Participle*.

Both Infinitive and Gerund

488. In other cases both the infinitive with *to* and the gerund are possible, hence:

1. as a subject or nominal predicate.
2. as an object or adjunct to a verb.
3. as an adjunct to nouns and adjectives.

The reason for choosing either the infinitive with *to* or the gerund, as in the special cases already treated, must proceed from the difference in the character of the two verbal nouns.

489. We have seen that the gerund is distinctly more of a noun; this is the cause of the gerund expressing a state whereas the infinitive is rather a phenomenon-word. The gerund is, indeed, an abstract noun. This explains why it is often used as a subject or nominal predicate in abstract sentences, i. e. sentences making a general statement. The infinitive, on the other hand, is more verbal in character; hence it is found in sentences referring to a special case.

We can say: *To talk for hours at a stretch is more exhausting than you seem to think.* It would be said, e. g., by a man who had spoken for a long time.

But the gerund *talking* would be substituted if the observation was made in the course of a conversation on the physical effects of speaking for a long time by persons not thinking of their own experiences.

> Speech is so familiar a feature of daily life that we rarely pause to define it. It seems as natural to man as walking, and only less so than breathing. (*Walking* and *breathing* are compared with the noun *speech*). Sapir, Language p. 1.
>
> Then it was recollected that there was a family ghost: and though no member of the family believed in the ghost, none would have given up a circumstance that testified to its existence; for *to possess a ghost is a distinction above titles* (the statement in italics represents the thoughts of the inhabitants, hence it is a special case). Meredith, R. Feverel.
>
> To attain to a finely ordered artistic structure was beyond Malory's power.
>
> To hear once was to remember with Donovan.
>
> Lyall, Donovan.
>
> Vaughan had been very near to death; and to be turned back from that door gives a strange and crooked look to the street of life. Times Lit. 15/7, 15.
>
> It was so odd not knowing that fellows swore when they jammed their fingers in doors, or were suddenly annoyed at anything. Benson, Blaize ch. 4 p. 77.
>
> It's dreadful waiting on people one doesn't like.
>
> Vachell, Brothers II ch. 5 p. 55.
>
> To suggest that there is no time to write dispatches would be almost as bad as explaining that an army was too busy to fight. Times W. 21/9, 17.

490. Sometimes it seems reasonable to suppose that the gerund is used because is has a durative aspect.

> One of the habits that Sylvia had acquired on tour in France was card-playing. Mackenzie, Sylvia p. 317.

Reading him is like looking at a series of pictures by Rubens which are all so energetic and masterly in manner that we cannot tell which he painted only for the sake of painting.
Times Lit. 14/9, 22, p, 574/1.

It is a conversational style and to read it is like hearing him speak. ib. p. 573/4 (same author).

To read the pages of M. de Labriolle's most interesting work is to be convinced that the literature he writes of so learnedly and excitingly ought not to be left so much to specialists. ib. p. 582 4.

491. Naturally, there is often no necessity to distinguish between a general or a special sentence; or rather a general statement may be made even when it is intended to apply to a special case. Compare the use of the indefinite pronoun *one* meaning *anyone*.

Thus a girl, riding on horseback in the company of her father, says (Gaskell, Wives I ch. 2 p. 39):

We're getting into the shadow of the trees, and it's not safe riding fast here.

The gerund *riding*, no doubt, causes the sentence to convey a general statement. But that does not prevent it from being applied to the special case.

492. The consequence of the slight difference between the gerund and infinitive in many cases is that they are often used indiscriminately. It would probably be an exaggeration of refined logical distinctions to make out special reasons for either construction in the following cases, although here and there it would be quite possible to argue that the use of the verbal form is in agreement with the general statements above.

It is no use crying over spilt milk.
Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 30 p. 197.

It is no use to deny that I was greatly dashed and scared at first. ib. ch. 59 p. 447.

It's absurd your going in one of those awful steamers from Marseilles when the yacht is only half an hour away.
Hichens, Ambition ch. 20 p. 232.

Claude won't go. It's no use for me to say anything.
ib. ch. 26, p. 327.

Oh, we women are contemptible, sometimes. It's no use our pretending we aren't. ib. ch. 34 p. 433.

It's no use for you to be angry with me.
Sinister Street p. 1051.

It's not a bit of good your running me down, Fane.
ib. p. 910.

It is worth while asking how far their education influenced or contributed to their success.

It is perhaps worth while remarking that competition is a method which to a superficial observer is not to the interests of the less wealthy.

Still, the book is one which even advanced scholars may find it worth their while to peruse.

It is worth while to remark that in some instances words have undergone changes of meaning because in their literary use they have been popularly misunderstood.

On the interpretation of sentences with the provisional *it*, see the chapter on *Sentence-Structure*.

493. It has been shown that some verbs are exclusively, or as good as exclusively, construed with a gerund, in a function that may be called an object. Apart from these, many verbs may take either construction, with the same difference as in the case of the gerund or infinitive as a subject and a nominal predicate. Here too the gerund is more distinctly an object, whereas the infinitive is rather an adjunct, often implying purpose or result. This explains why such verbs as *to want* and *to require* must have a gerund when they mean 'to need', for in this meaning they also take a noun-object: compare *It required doing* and *It required a lot of work*, but *I required him to do it*. Also *It wants doing*

and *The house wants a fresh coat of paint*, but *He wants to accompany us.*

It is frequently possible, too, to show that the infinitive expresses a perfective, the gerund and imperfective aspect (often implying repetition). Thus Miss Harrison [1]), after mentioning that Russian has two forms for the infinitive, one imperfective and the other perfective, remarks: "Now English has not these two infinitives and, being a sensitive language, it feels the need and often substitutes for the imperfective infinitive a participle or a substantive.... 'I don't like to write' — that is foreigner's English. An Englishman would substitute for the Russian imperfective infinitive a gerund — I don't like writing."

For this reason the gerund *dining* seems more appropriate than the infinitive would be in the following quotation.

> I'm so sorry I've had to leave you entirely to yourself, but I've not had a moment, and I hate dining when I can't talk.
> Mackenzie, Sylvia and Michael p. 229.

494. It must be added, however, that it is often impossible to say that the use of the infinitive or the gerund makes any real difference.

Among the verbs that are followed by the infinitive and by the gerund as objects are:

to attempt, begin, cease, commence, continue, decline, delay, detest, dread, fear, forbear, hate, intend, like, mean, neglect, omit, prefer, propose, regret, remember, recollect, venture.

> It was so piteous to her poor human nature that her heart began wildly palpitating. Meredith, R. Feverel, ch. 1.
>
> On his return to England he began studying law, but very soon abandoned it for literature. Sturge-H., Meredith p. 9.
>
> Nor did this collector of celebrities omit to visit Rousseau.
> Bailey, Johnson p. 76.

---

1) Aspects, Aorists and the Classical Tripos. Cambridge 1919.

Miss Payne said she was very fond of aeroplaning, and had no fear, but she declined to be strapped into the seat.

Daily News.

Frederic saw it with immense relief, and ceased to take any interest in old Lawrie. Cannan, Corner, ch. 9 p. 88.

Mrs. Bute and Lady Southdown never could meet without battles, and gradually ceased seeing each other.

Vanity Fair ch. 40.

He did not intend to tell her that he was going to ride in a race. Garvice, Staunch as a Woman, p. 244.

The summer was well advanced and most people who intended going out of Town had already left. ib. p. 211.

He liked to invite people and to pay for them, and he disliked to be invited and paid for.

Henry James, Reverberator, p. 54.

She liked going to the theatre. A. C. Bradley, Essays II 18.

Johnson had a strong affection for his College, and liked going to stay there in the days of his glory. His usual host was one Dr. Adams, the Master of Pembroke. Bailey, Johnson.

The Country in a general way does want the Constitution preserved, and particularly disliked seeing it arbitrarily broken by the irresponsible Peers. Daily News.

"They told grandpapa that you were going to-night." — "Then they were wrong," he replied in his curt fashion. "I didn't mean going, so here I am."

Garvice, Staunch as a Woman, p. 28.

I resolved to begin as I meant to end. Bailey, Johnson.

What our new race-improvers propose doing, when they get their chance, I dare not conjecture.

English Review, Aug. '13.

Mrs. Johnson brought her husband several hundred pounds, part of which was at once spent in hiring and furnishing a large house at Edial where Johnson proposed to take pupils.

Bailey, Johnson.

Lizzie often enjoyed to break from work for half an hour, stroll down to the quarry, and climb to the mouth of the kilns.

Phillpotts, Beacon II ch. 12 p. 254.

He pledged his word she would not regret following his advice. Mackenzie, Sylvia p. 352.

Molly dreaded seeing either of the brothers again.
Gaskell, Wives I ch. 18 p. 314.

They neglected to use certain parts of the rite of Holy Baptism upon which Roman theologians in recent years had come to lay great stress. Wakeman, Introd. p. 16.

Suppose, for example, that the Salvationists advertise throughout the town that they intend holding a meeting in a field which they have hired near Oxford, that they intend to assemble in St. Giles's and march thence with banners flying and bands playing to their proposed place of worship.
Dicey, Constitution, Lect. VI, p. 289.

495. When these verbs are used in a progressive tense the infinitive is naturally [1]) used so as to avoid a heaping of forms in *-ing*.

Note that *to begin* sometimes expresses, not that an action commences, but that it is *gradually* taking place (often gradually increasing). In such a case the infinitive is invariably used, also when the verb *to begin* is in a non-progressive tense. We can look upon *begin* as an auxiliary of the progressive here.

It was only in this relative calm that the Clayhanger family and its dependants began to realise the intensity of the experience through which they had passed.
Bennett, Clayhanger I ch. 13 § 1.

Daylight began to forsake the red room; it was past four o'clock, and the beclouded afternoon was tending to drear twilight. Brontë, Jane Eyre, ch. 2.

We are beginning to realise that punishment alone is not sufficient. English Review, March 1914 p. 575.

---

1) But not invariably:

.... as good as Sterne — though Moore never read Sterne and is still contemplating reading the thirty-six volumes of the great English book.
English Rev. April 1914, p. 137.

Two weeks of comfortable if monotonous travelling land us in the capital of the Chinese Empire, and European residents in China are already beginning to arrange to spend their summer holidays in the Mother-country.

Everyman, 28/2, 1913, p. 618/1.

496. It also seems that after *to begin* the gerund is used only when the verb is one of full meaning expressing an action depending upon the will of an agent. Thus it seems natural to say: *I began writing* (or *to write*) *at* 4. But it would sound strange to hear: *He suddenly began weeping*, because *begin* is more of an auxiliary here (see 495). Hence the quotation from Meredith (see first example of 494) does not seem to represent spoken English, like the first of those that follow here, whereas the others seem to represent natural English.

And her eyes began filling with tears.

Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 14 p. 170.

Without raising her voice she began answering his question.

ib. ch. 19 p. 231.

Charmian threw herself down with a movement that was very young and began taking off her long gloves.

Hichens, Ambition ch. 9 p. 107.

Now don't begin eating at once.

Bennett, Old W. T. III ch. 4 § 1.

497. The same reason may account for the infinitive after *to cease*, *recommence* in the following cases.

Sir Francis doubtless found more satisfaction in ambitious work which decreased in value as they ceased to depend upon his researches in the Chapter House or Chancery Lane.

Times Lit. 22/5, 19.

Moreover, she was conscious of a new feeling in her body, as though the fount of physical energy within her, long interrupted, had recommenced to flow—but very slowly, a trickling. Bennett, Old W. Tale III ch. 5 § 1 p. 345.

498. The cause of the limited range of the gerund after

these verbs is plainly that it can be used only when it may be understood as an object. When *to begin*, etc., are followed by a verb expressing a state they are rather adjuncts to the following verb than the reverse, so that a form that is more verbal than the gerund is preferred.

499. The verbal noun after *to remember, to recollect* may have the form of a gerund (simple or compound) or of a (perfect) infinitive. See also the quotation in 457. The gerund only is possible when the subject must be expressed [1]).

I remember hearing a great master of musical art discussing the music of a young man of extraordinary promise, he said. Benson, Thread of Gold p. 64.

He remembered having crossed the road and seen the finger-post only a little while before Wildfire broke down. George Eliot, Silas Marner ch. 4.

.. and I remember to have heard the notes of two (viz. cuckoos), that seemed to answer each other, draw closer each time they called. Benson, Thread of Gold p. 33.

We talked about Sarita. I was emphatic in my approbation, and couldn't repeat too often that the young lady was awfully jolly. But in spite of this I remember then wondering at Lossie's adoration of her. De Morgan, Vance ch. 15.

"It's so surprising to me that you don't remember seeing Joe Vance's Mother that afternoon.... Don't you recollect Papa saying to her that she ought not to be out in such an awful East wind, and she ought to go to Torquay?..." ib. ch. 17.

I can remember my Father saying to my Mother that she was to go over to Dr. Thorpe.... ib. ch. 9.

500. The adjuncts to verbs with a fixed preposition (apart from the adjuncts expressing result or purpose: 475, 1) gene-

1) *To remember* is not used with the prepositional accusative-and-infinitive, such as is found with *to dread* (388), because this construction always refers to future time.

rally take the form of a gerund; sometimes, however, an infinitive with *to* is also possible. See 503 ff., also 480.

All his successors have aimed, according to their capacity, at providing us with studies of the same subject from different points of view. Leslie Stephen, George Eliot p. 113.

Literatures that aim to have more than a local appeal. Sapir, Language p. 159.

Instead of men aiming to advance in life with glory they should calculate how to retreat out of it without shame. Hardy, Return of the Native VI ch. 1.

501. Just as many verbs may take a gerund as well as an infinitive as an object (493 ff.), there are many nouns that may be qualified by an infinitive with *to* and by a gerund with *of*. The meaning naturally, varies sometimes according to the form used, as is shown by the first two quotations.

He was in the act of consummating all earthly bliss by pressing his lips to the small white hand. Meredith, Feverel ch. 14.

He was in act to fire. Buchanan, That Winter Night ch. 3.

The pitiful ambition of possessing five or six thousand more acres. Burke.

An intelligent jury has been fired with the ambition to find an answer to the momentous question: "Are dramatic critics of any use?" Times.

And Constance did not estimate highly the chances of picking out an unknown Sophia from that welter. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 2 § 2.

This would at least give our boys a chance to be pitted against the Americans. Rev. of Rev.

He repudiates all charges of aiming at dictatorship. Graphic.

She had strict charge to avoid the subject. Dickens, Copperfield.

To whom have I the honour of talking? Trevelyan, Life of Macaulay.

I had not the honour to belong to so sacred a profession. ib.

It was a habit which she had formed in the Rue Lord Byron — by accident rather than with an intention to utilize list slippers for the effective supervision of servants.
Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 3 § 1 p. 474.

She had no intention of donning her best mantle for such an excursion. ib. IV ch. 2 § 1 p. 452.

Sylvia went down to the cabaret that evening with the firm intention of its being the last occasion [1]).
Mackenzie, Sylvia and Michael p. 13.

502. When the relation is one that would be expressed by *of* with a noun, the gerund (with *of*) is the only construction that is possible or, at least, usual.

Few methods of falsifying historical truth are more seductive than its simplification. Times Lit. 11/3, 20.

In little more than another hundred years they are full-blown national histories; towns only become vocal on the eve of merging into the nation. ib.

It would have given to Constance the air of being in awe of Sophia. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 2 § 1, p. 452.

This business of preparing for the advent of Sophia had appeared to her genuinely colossal. ib. p. 455.

The practice of encouraging a servant to plunge without warning of any kind into a drawing-room had never been favoured in that house. ib. § 2 p. 462.

She tasted dainties for the sake of tasting. ib. p. 461.

Sylvia was really glad when the sound of loud knocking upon the door downstairs prevented any further discussion of the accident of their relationship.
Mackenzie, Sylvia and Michael p. 261.

Vives's record up to the time of coming to England was noteworthy, even for a Renascence scholar. Times Lit. 25/11, 20.

---

1) In this case the infinitive would be impossible, apparently because the verbal noun does not express an action; in other words, the infinitive, even in these constructions, has not completely shed its function of expressing purpose or result. But it may be that the gerund is required because there must be a subject (*its*); see 481.

503. Some nouns (*a*) and adjectives (*b*) are construed with a fixed preposition, at least in some of their meanings. Thus *need* in one of its meanings requires an adjunct with *for*. Such words can naturally take a gerund with the preposition, but also an infinitive with to. See 500.

a. He had a singular aptitude for dealing with the difficulties of a crisis. Lit. World.

Sophia watched the preparations, and the increasing agitation of Constance's demeanour, with an astonishment which she had real difficulty in concealing.
Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 3 § 3.

They have good honest hatred, as a motive for accusing him. Lewes, Hist. of Phil.

Hastings had no motive to treat the late ministers with rigour. Macaulay, Essays.

Hastings was now confident of victory. It seemed indeed that he had reason to be so. ib.

There is reason for believing that Erasmus manifested no inclination to acquire the vernacular language in any of the various countries in which, from time to time, he took up his residence. Times Lit. 25/11, 20.

b. I was surprised to meet him.

But the Grenvilles would have been almost as much surprised at finding their conduct provoke a sermon as at learning what kind of people have become their successors to-day.
Times Lit. 14/10, 20.

I do not agree with you in thinking her right in refusing a second marriage. Meredith, Harrington ch. 47 p. 471.

You were quite right to refuse his invitation.

504. Nouns that can take either an infinitive or a gerund with a fixed preposition can sometimes also be construed with *of* and a gerund.

The difficulty of answering the question "What is truth?" involves a corresponding problem in the definition of what is fiction. Times Lit. 12/8, 20.

505. Some adjectives with a preposition take the gerund-construction only. Such are *(in) capable of, fond of, intent on.*

> Ziska's sidelong glance of scorn at the prostrate figure was incapable of rousing the least resentment. ib. p. 281.
>
> He is fond of hearing his own voice.

506. When nouns or adjectives take both an infinitive and a prepositional gerund (*surprised to hear it, surprised at hearing it*) the difference in meaning between the two constructions is that between an adverb adjunct and a prepositional object. Practically, of course, it is often negligible. It may be compared with the difference between clauses with *that* and those with a conjunctive adverb, e. g. *I am surprised that he is not coming, I am surprised because he is not coming.*

Verbal Nouns and Subordinate Clauses

507. Many of the uses of the verbal nouns are such as can be served by surbordinate clauses too. The difference is generally that the subordinate clause more clearly expresses the relations between the parts of the sentence. It does this by the conjunction, by its definite subject and its finite verb, which clearly expresses tense, often also voice and mood.

Thus an infinitive of purpose has a similar function to a clause with *in order that.* Such a clause, however, can be used only when the final character of the relation is perfectly clear; it is not possible after words expressing wish.

> Himself in revolt against the institution of marriage, Edwin could not bear that Ingpen should attack it. (The subordinate clause shows that E. wanted to *prevent* Ingpen from attacking it; the infinitive would suggest that Ingpen was doing it).
>
> Bennett, These Twain III ch. 17.

508. Instead of an infinitive as an interrogative adjunct we must sometimes use a clause, as in the following sentence.

Martial knew when he should stop, what he was doing, and how to do it with brevity and point. Times Lit. 18,3, 20.

Here it would be impossible to substitute an infinitive *what to be doing* for *what he was doing*.

509. Verbs of commanding that can take an accusative with infinitive must be construed with a clause when the accusative cannot be understood as the object of the finite verb [1]).

Peter the Great ordered that the children should drink only sea-water. Stoffel, Leesb. I, 41.

510. The verba sentiendi et declarandi are usually construed with a subordinate clause in spoken English [2]). Those expressing a perception may take either construction; the difference has been discussed in 299 f.

Verbs that can take an infinitive but not an accusative with infinitive must often be construed with a clause to make it possible for the subject to be expressed.

Children fear to go in the dark.
I fear that he has failed.
I called to see you.
I called that you might learn the news as soon as possible.

511. After *to wish* a subordinate clause is used to express a wish that is supposed to be incapable of fulfilment, an infinitive in other cases.

I wish I knew what to do.
Even those who agree with them wish that they would not expose their cause to ridicule. Times Lit. 20/1, 16.

512. Other verbs of wish may take an accusative-and-

---

1) The passive infinitive is possible, however, in this case; see 421.

2) Owing to the absence of a future infinitive a clause is necessary when future time must be indicated.

He declared that the difficulties would prove insuperable.

infinitive or a clause without a difference of meaning; such are *to desire, to request.* But some of these verbs are seldom or never construed with a clause, such as *to like, mean, permit, want.*

> He liked that people under him should thrive, — and he liked them to know that they throve by his means.
>
> Trollope, Dr. Wortle ch. 1.
>
> Constance had been there all the time, but of course, though she heard the remembered voice, her maidenliness had not permitted that she should show herself to Mr. Scales.
>
> Bennett, Old W. T. I ch. 6 § 2.
>
> He would have preferred that Darius should never have felt gratitude, or, at any vate, that he should never have shown it. He would have preferred that Darius should have accepted his help nonchalantly, grimly, thanklessly, as a right.
>
> id. Clayhanger, III ch. 14 § 2.

513. The gerund-construction is often the equivalent of a subordinate clause, especially when it has a subject of its own. Indeed, it may be said that the gerund with a subject is one of the most important methods in modern English of expressing oneself briefly.

Participles

Attributive Participles

514. The present participles are freely used as attributive adjectives before their headword. The past participles of transitive verbs are used in the same way.

> Mr. Gregory shows us in a series of fascinating and lightly written chapters the thinkers at work.
>
> Times Ed. S. 4/7, 16.
>
> To the general English reader the more interesting because less hackneyed portion of the book will probably be that

which describes the course of education in Canada and in the United States. Athenaeum 21/2, 14.

Now the archdeacon was not exactly adorned; but he was so thoroughly imbued with high clerical belongings and sacerdotal fitnesses as to appear always as a walking, sitting, or standing impersonation of parsondom.

Trollope, Last Chron. ch. 57 (II p. 141).

Carved wood, a broken cup, a cleft stick, melted butter, burnt wood, torn clothes, etc.

515. Some verbs [1]) have more or less clearly connected past participial forms, generally in *-en*, which are used as *attributive* adjectives. It is impossible to say in all cases whether the connection with the verb is still felt by English speakers. Such adjectives are *bounden, carven, cloven, drunken, graven, well-knit, molten, proven, roast, rotten, shredded, shrunken, sodden, stricken, sunken, swollen.*

one's bounden duty; a carven image; a cloven hoof; a drunken man; ill-gotten gains; a graven image; molten lead; roast meat [2]); a rotten plank; a shrunken frame; sodden fields, brutes; shredded biscuits, suet; a stricken deer; sunken eyes; a swollen face, etc.

Thunderstruck and horror-stricken, the Doctor shook off the other's touch. Buchanan, That Winter Night.

Also panic-struck, panic-stricken.

Wedderburn's dim-litten room [3]). Sinister Street p. 737.

Beneath the soddened soil life is busy now.

Riley, Netherleigh.

516. Sometimes two participial forms, one in *-en*, and one without the suffix, are used attributively.

Her eyes looked terribly large for her shrunk face.

Peard, Madame p. 255.

---

1) Some of them transitive, others intransitive.

2) Also *roasted meat* e. g. in Gissing, Ryecroft.

3) This form is quite exceptional.

Among the 285 refugees are the wives of two captains of sunken vessels. Times W. 6/4, 17.

The steamship Yarrowdale was captured and sent away with about four hundred of the crews of other sunk vessels. ib. 27/1, 17.

A short, clean-shaved man.
Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 22 p. 265.

His broad unshaven face. ib. ch. 24 p. 289.

His brown unshaven cheeks. ib. ch. 7 p. 74.

His dark clean-shaved face. ib. ch. 8 p. 96.

517. Attributive present participles preceding their headword are generally adjectival in meaning, i. e. they do not share any of the verbal characteristics of the participle, such as tense or voice, and do not suggest time or an agent; see the first two instances quoted in 514. But the meaning may be verbal, as in the third quotation of 514, and in the following.

December came with its dark mornings and steadily falling rains. Waugh, Loom of Youth, III ch. 3.

For present participles following the noun, see the chapter on *Wordorder (Attributive Adjuncts)*.

518. Past participles of transitive verbs nearly always have an adjectival meaning. Instances with a verbal meaning are exceptional (*a*). If a verb can be used in the nominative-and-infinitive construction (373 ff.) its participle can be used with an infinitive, as an attributive adjunct (*b*), but it must follow its headword.

So Sophia, faced with the shut door of the bedroom, went down to the parlour by the shorter route.
Bennett, Old W. T. I. ch. 2 § 1.

Constance, alone in the parlour, stood expectant by the set tea-table. id. ib. II ch. 6 § 1.

b. The shadowy form seen by Venn to part from Wildeve in the porch, and quickly withdraw into the house, was Thomasin's. Hardy, Return of the Native II ch. 8.

For past participles following the noun, see the chapter on *Wordorder (Attributive Adjuncts)*.

519. The prepositional past participle is rarely used attributively before its headword, except the participles with the prefix *un*. See 273 and the chapter on *Sentence-Structure*. Compare also 528.

What is there about realising things — old, often told, believed in things — that stirs such a deep content?
Cotes, Cinderella ch. 16 p. 182.

Stanley had completely seen through the talked-of revival of English agriculture. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 4.

Mr. Utterson's nerves, at this unlooked-for termination, gave a jerk. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll, p. 70.

She tended him through a series of unheard-of illnesses.
Thackeray, Vanity Fair ch. 67.

520. The past participles of some intransitive verbs are also found attributively. The number of these verbs is very limited, however. The meaning is frequently adjectival (*a*), but a verbal meaning is by no means rare (*b*). In the last case the verb mostly expresses a perfective aspect, usually a change of position.

a. The Western world listened impatiently before the war to the tittle-tattle of a few travelled dreamers.

The decayed officer, by degrees, came up alongside his fellow-wayfarer. Hardy, Return of the Native I ch. 2.

A well-read man.

Truth to tell, she could not conceal her very pleased surprise at the exceptional though severe good taste which Steve had shown in the whole affair. Patterson, Compton p. 220.

b. The returned mistress was point by point resuming knowledge and control of that complicated machine — her household. Bennett, Old. W. T. I. ch. 2 § 2.

His mysterious friend, the escaped desperado Rob Roy.
Camb. Hist. Engl. Lit. 12, 18.

Dr. Verdon will leave the service of the abdicated monarch at the end of the cure at Vichy. Daily Mail.

She took a pen and began a letter to a dear friend, Lucy Darleton, a promised bridesmaid. Meredith.

And all the while learned carriage-folk poured in, mothers, daughters, well-dined fathers, young men with long hair. Academy, 25,3, 99.

"Mind your own business!" was the s n a p p e d rejoinder. Patterson, Stephen Compton, p. 4.

Since the settlement of the threatened trouble with the spinners Steve had done an unusual amount of public speaking. See further 515. ib. 135.

Predicative Participles

Present Participle **521.** The simple present participle is very frequently used with the copula *to be,* to form what is called the progressive. It is also found with other copulas.

After talking that matter over we got conversing on other subjects. . . Holmes, Over the Tea-Cups p. 19.

But the creature backed away from her hand, snuffling, and its cynical, soft eyes with chestnut lashes seemed warning the girl that she belonged to the breed that might be trusted to annoy. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 37.

All the things I wanted seem falling into my hands. Waugh, Loon of Youth III ch. 8.

522. The present participle is also used predicatively with verbs of motion and rest: *to stand, sit, come, go.*

Georgiana came to her garden window and stood watching me. Allen, Kentucky Cardinal p. 131.

"Aha!" cried old Hubert, who had entered unperceived, and stood looking over her shoulder. Buchanan, That Winter Night ch. 5.

Sophia sat waiting on the sofa in the parlour. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch, 3 § 5.

He suddenly came staggering towards me.
Wells, Country p. 88.

If trouble befell the Christian preachers who came settling among them they took it as a proof of the wrath of the older gods. Green, Short Hist. p. 26.

Prebendal stalls, Fanny, don't generally go begging long among parish clergymen. Trollope, Framley ch. 18 p. 173.

(They) went sailing and climbed up Beachy Head and watched a cricket match in Devonshire Park.
Sinister Street p. 162.

It was such an extraordinary thing to go smashing a window like that. Wells, Harman ch. 9 § 3.

523. In this construction the finite verb is entirely subordinated in meaning to the participle; it is, in fact, little more than a copula. This is also shown by the stress. Thus in Sweet's *Spoken English* we find them marked: i. e. with medium stress or - i. e. weak stress, whereas the participle is not marked, i. e. has strong stress.

hau ðə sʌnšain :keim strijmĭŋ in. p. 50.

ðə moumĭnt ĭj sɔ əs, ĭj džʌmt daun, ən -keim :rʌnĭŋ tə mijt əs. ib. p. 54.

524. The form in *-ing* also seems to be best interpreted as a present participle (not as a gerund) when it is used with some verbs that have more meaning than the words just mentioned, but are not really verbs of full meaning; such are *to go on, to keep (on), to have done, to be done, to stop, to break off, to leave off, to burst out.* Compare 537; also below on auxiliaries of aspect.

He went on thinking of it. Trollope, Framley ch. 39.

He kept changing his plans. Tout, Hist. of England.

The great problem of the cotton industry during the war has not been, as in the war industries, to satisfy an unlimited demand under difficulties, but to keep going at all.
Times Lit. 9,8, 18.

"How far is it?"

"Perhaps a quarter of a mile."

"Well, we have been just one hour and three quarters doing it." Cotes, Cinderella ch. 13 p. 153.

525. The word-order *went spelling on* seems to support this interpretation of the above sentences.

I was too intent on my employment to observe him, and went spelling on.

Mary Lamb, in Selected Short Stories II p. 2.

526. The form in *-ing* also seems to have the function of a predicative adjunct when qualifying both the finite verb and the subject.

The subject of money is a very complicated one, and you are recommended to devote yourself to the rules for 'making' it rather than to waste your time understanding it.

Quoted Athen. 14,9, 12.

Defoe spent his life agitating for the new ideas introduced by the Revolution. Sefton Delmer, English Lit. p. 96.

Past Participle **527.** The past participle with the verb *to have* forms the perfect tenses; see 108 ff.; with the verb *to be* it forms the passive, see 261 ff.

528. The past participles, chiefly of transitive verbs, are also used as predicates with *to be,* or other copulas, and occasionally with *to stand.* Prepositional participles (519) occur only with the prefix *un-* (when they are rather adjectives than verbal forms).

He seemed to go out of his way to get hurt.

Punch 31/3, 15.

To stand convicted of a crime.

Somewhat desolate and uncared for in appearance.

Oxf. Dict.

529. The predicative use of past participles of intransitive verbs is exceptional. See 520 on the attributive use of these forms.

He is deeply read in the writers, ancient and modern, who have treated on the subject.

530. The participial forms in *-en* (515) are generally used attributively only. But some of them are occasionally found predicatively with *to be* or another copula (*a*); exceptionally also to form a compound tense (*b*). *Beholden* is always predicative.

a. And now he was feebly drunken with my whisky.
Wells, Tono-Bungay ch. 3.

All these statements were historically untrue, or unproven [1]).
Wakeman, Introd. p. 135.

Was the hope expressed in those phrases a dream? Is it already proven a dream? Wells, What's Coming p. 9.

Moreover, the road is so deeply sunken between two steep banks . . . . Benson, Tread of Gold p. 69.

The air in Sofia is keen and bracing; the weather cold, with a touch of sleet. The town is clean, well laid out, well paven, with good tramways. Times W. 22/11, 12.

b. It has been proven, I take it, as thoroughly as anything can be proven in this world. Wells, Country p. 162.

The art of biography has sunken low in this country.
Sat. Rev. 16/10, 1897.

Accusative-and-Present Participle

531. The present participle is frequently used as a predicative adjunct to verbs that can also take an accusative-and-plain infinitive (296 ff.). We find the accusative-and-present participle with *to see*, *hear*, *feel*, and some other verbs expressing seeing.

"What are you going to do, Humphie?" he exclaimed, as he saw Humphrey coming slowly across the room with a great

1) The word *proven* is properly a term used in Scotch law.

jug of water in his arms. Montgomery, Misunderstood ch. 4.

Looking up, Hazel could see the sensitive leaves of the cottonwood vibrating beneath the evening breeze.
Vachell, Spragge p. 166.

Quinney heard him chuckling as he made his way downstairs.
Vachell, Quinneys' p. 197.

I heard her clattering up the kitchen stairs.
Baring-Gould, Swaen I p. 11.

One would like to hear Mr. Brock's subtlety applying itself to this curious inquiry. Times Lit. 18 5, 22.

Rip now felt a vague apprehension stealing over him.
W. Irving, Sketch-Book p. 39.

Felix felt his heart beating — Clara was not alone in being frightened of this woman. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 7 p. 77.

I felt an idiotic persuasion trying to creep into my mind, as it were, that I was in a railway carriage in a train just stopping. Wells, Country p. 148.

It was very pretty to watch her working for her very life.
Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 46 p, 318.

Then perceiving Felix coming.... he crossed the pavement.
Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 1 p. 16.

We behold sea power exercising its universal sway in the history of both the Hellenic and the Latin races.
Times Ed. S. 23/7, 21.

532. In the cases of 531 the accusative can often be looked upon as a real object, especially when the verb is used to express a perception of the senses. This interpretation is usually impossible when the construction is found with other verbs. We find such a genuine accusative-and-present participle (see 362) with *to have* [1]), *find*, *know*, *set*, and occasionally with *to like*, *want*, *fancy*, *imagine*, and a few others [2]).

---

1) In the meaning 'to experience'.

2) The predicative character of the participle is evident when we compare the following.

I have known her fastidious in seeking pure metal for clean uses.
Brontë, Villette ch. 8 p. 73.

They descended, Chillon saying that they would soon have the mists rising, and must not delay to start on their journey. Meredith, Amazing Marriage ch. 4 p. 41.

The University has undergraduates other than those whom it lately knew knocking at its door. Times Ed. S. 22/8, 18.

He found himself hoping that his statement would be laughed at. Meredith, Harrington ch. 34 p. 364.

These are the problems which we find men such as Gentz and Humboldt discussing. Times Lit. 8/4, 20.

This conversation set me thinking Everyman 22/11, 12.

Now, that is not a very marvellous incident; but it set me wondering. Benson, Thread of Gold p. 52.

By a friendly blink that set him a-smiling.
Porcelain Lady ch. 6 p. 107.

She never kept a maid sitting up for her [1]).
Hichens, Ambition ch. 3 p. 29.

I don't like him behaving like that.
Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 3 § 3.

We don't want the women meddling.
H. Ward, Tressady ch. 3.

Is it possible, one can imagine the future historian demanding, that anyone could have been in those days altogether sane?
Masterman, Condition ch. 1 p. 14.

A book entitled "Education for Democracy", published last year for Miss Alice Davis by the New York Knickerbocker Press, started the ball rolling. Times Ed. S. 8/7, 20.

That minute's interval had brought the blood beating into her face. Hardy, Madding Crowd ch. 28.

Nominative-and-Present Participle

533. The verbs with an accusative-and-predicative present participle can also be used in the passive voice. In imitation of the similar construction with the infinitive (394 ff.) this may be called a nominative-with-participle, although it does not essentially differ from

1) After *to keep* the accusative is a real object; compare also phrases like *to keep the ball rolling, to keep the pot boiling.*

the predicative participle after copulas. The construction is chiefly found when the accusative is a real object, hence with the verbs of 531. Those of 532 never take it, except when the object character of the accusative is sufficiently clear, as after *to keep*.

During the whole of the period before the Norman Conquest that distinction can be seen gradually asserting itself.
Constit. Essays p. 276.

How, Henry James may be heard grimly asking, dare you pronounce any opinion whatever upon me?
Times Lit. 8/4, 20.

He had often been observed gazing with marked gravity at a dead flower. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 11 p. 124.

Medley Lock is now the nearest place to Oxford where the reed warbler can be heard singing.
Günther, Oxford Country p. 33.

Accusative-and-Past Participle

534. When the accusative of the verbs of 531 and 532 must be qualified by a verb that is passive in meaning, they are often construed with a past participle (*a*), very rarely with an infinitive without an accusative (*b*). On *to have* with this construction, see 671 ff.

a. She has seen her brother pointed out unmistakeably as the tailor-fellow. Meredith, Harrington ch. 14 p. 143.

I have seen it stated that his height was 5 feet 10 inches.
G. W. E. Russell.

In another moment I felt myself lifted.
Van Neck, Adv. Engl. Prose p. 126.

I've known him taken for a lord.
Meredith, Harrington ch. 22 p. 229.

He wants the Arabs departed [1]). Times Lit. 23/12, 20.

Mr. Osborne wished a tree cut down.
Gaskell, Wives and Daughters I ch. 8.

He told him to put his trolley somewhere else, and not

1) Compare footnote to § 558.

leave it stood in the orfice [1]) door. de Morgan, Vance ch. 1.

As early as the legislation of Athelstan we find the sheriff given a yet wider sphere of action. Constit. Essays p. 129.

b. She remembered hearing tell that some of the painted pictures on the walls were worth a power of money.

Jane Barlow, Everyman, Jan. 13, 1913, p. 372,2.

I have heard say that 'fools think that any fool can write a novel and many fools try,' possibly to their lasting regret.

Patterson, Stephen Compton, p. 266.

Nobody, even if he has never heard tell of the matter, likes topsy-turvy construction, that mark of the untrained mind. Brewster, Writing of English p. 19 f.

Most of us have from time to time read or heard tell of the wonderful feats of engineering skill which were accomplished during the war. Times Lit. 17,3, 21.

In the quotations under *b* the meaning of the infinitive is not clearly passive so that the exceptional character of the construction lies rather in the absence of the accusative. The finite verb and the infinitive (*say* or *tell*) form practically a compound.

535. Some other verbs that can take an accusative-and-infinitive with *to*, but no present participle, can also take an accusative-and-past participle. *To get* does so regularly; others, like *to wish, order*, etc. can also take an accusative and a passive infinitive with *to;* see 421.

He had always said that the difficulty, so far as the diplomatist was concerned, was not to tell the truth, but to get it believed when one had told it.

Sir Edward Grey, reported Times 13,3, '14.

Curious, how things still got themselves noticed when all her faculties were centred in gazing at his face.

Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 29 p. 369.

---

1) A spelling to denote [ɔfĭs] *office.*

The Queen, displeased with the play, ordered it stopped.
Wallace, English Drama p. 106.

She could not wish it changed.
Hichens Ambition ch. 9 p. 98.

And yet on that evening he had entered into his great friendship with Mrs. Manfield. He could not wish that annulled. ib. ch. 11 p. 121.

Monkley told the Baron that he did not wish anything said about Sylvester's father. Mackenzie, Sylvia p. 68.

536. The accusative-and-past participle is also found with verbs that take an accusative-and-plain infinitive when the meaning is active.

Art schools are making their influence felt and their possibilities recognized. Times Ed. S. 5/8, 20.

They give an impression of such feebleness, beneath the bluster, as a person who shouts to make himself obeyed.
Engl. Rev. Oct. 1913.

Winnie made it understood that the present engaged her attention. Pett Ridge, Garland ch. 13 p. 221.

Infinitive and Participle

537. The verbs mentioned in 524 as taking a present participle (*to go on smoking*) can also take an infinitive with *to*. In that case the finite verb is distinctly a word of full meaning and the infinitive is an adjunct of purpose.

1. A cock in the loft over our heads went on crowing, as if it would never stop. Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 63.

"Likewise your father may just as well have his," said my Mother.

And she went on to give me the details of the premises and the little office round the corner.
Morgan, Vance ch. 14 p. 121.

2. The clock stopped striking. Oxf. Dict.

Nevertheless, I could not stop to argue the matter with her. Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 56 p. 414.

538. In the preceding sections on the accusative-and-participle constructions and those on the accusative-and-infinitive (with *to* and without) it has been shown that some verbs can be construed:

1. with an accusative and active infinitive or with an accusative and present participle.

I saw him come (coming).
It was this, precisely, that had set the Prince to think.
H. James, Golden Bowl p. 4.
Grand plans that set my heart rejoicing.
Eng. Rev. May 1913.

2. with an accusative-and-passive infinitive (always with *to*) or with an accusative-and-past participle.

I wish it to be changed.
I wish it changed.
He left her a little impressed by his threats.
Phillpotts, Beacon II ch. p. 229.

539. In comparing the constructions with the infinitive and with the participle it is necessary to make sure that the participle is really a predicative adjunct. For we may also have an object qualified by an attributive participle, as in the following quotations.

The man trampled calmly over the child's body and left her screaming on the ground [1]). Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll.

It was interesting for me to see a cadet of this new generation obviously well adapted to his work, and so dissimilar from the average type of embryo officer.
Waugh, Loom of Youth, Preface.

540. In all the examples of 531 the slightest pause after the *personal* objects would make the participles attributive;

1) Compare the last quotation of 538.

but this would be impossible or hardly possible in the other examples. In the following quotation *steaming* is predicative, although a slight pause after *fields* would make it attributive.

> But when I looked out and saw the glory and beauty of the morning — when I saw the wide fields steaming in the morning sun.... Sweet, Spoken English p. 53.

541. Sometimes the accusative cannot be interpreted as the object of the finite verb so that it is nothing but the subject of the (predicative) participle.

> But I won't have that young man speaking of them so.
> Gaskell, Wives II. p. 14.
>
> It is altogether exceptional to find two of the greater states uniting for the humiliation of a third, as England and the Empire united against Philip Augustus of France.
> Davis, Med. Europe p. 158.

As in the case of the accusative-and-infinitive constructions, it is convenient to treat these cases together with those where the accusative might be considered as a real object. See 362.

Infinitive and Present Participle

542. Before explaining the difference between the infinitive- and the present-participle-construction it may be instructive to give some quotations with both.

> Long before he reached Piccadilly, he saw the very person approaching him. He was walking a little more leisurely than most of those whom he had seen. His top-hat glistened in the sunlight and a cane with a gold band swang loosely on his arm.
>
> As he came nearer, Johnny saw him take a gold cigarette-case from his pocket, and he stopped to light a cigarette.
> Temple Thurston, Thirteen I p. 23.
>
> Edwin in the darkness could see him feeling in hist waist coat pocket, and then raise his arm, and throw in the direction of the dimly lighted yard. Bennett, These Twain I ch. 5.

After lunch they walked to the Parks to watch Alan playing for the Varsity. Sinister Street p. 704.

Michael watched very carefully Alan's meeting with Stella, watched Alan's face fall when he saw her beside Maurice and marked how nervously he fidgeted with his gloves.

id. on the same page.

We heard the dog barking loudly, and ran to the place as quick as we could .... The next moment we again heard the dog bark, and when we came up to him, we found, etc.

Sweet, Spoken English p. 55.

He had seen her twice; he had rather liked a short speech of five sentences she made at a Flower Show, and he had heard her being extremely rude to a curate.

Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 5 § 1.

It was so funny that it set me thinking afresh.

H. James, Sacred Fount ch. 2 p. 21.

Martial set himself to amuse Rome. Times Lit. 18,3, 20.

"No," said Bags. "I don't want to give you three with a racquet-handle, as we made it up last night. And I don't want you turning everything upside down in my cubicle."

Benson, Blaize ch. p. 46.

543. An examination of the above sentences will show that the predicative participle has the same function as in the combination with *to be*: it expresses the imperfective aspect. See also in the quotations after passive verbs in 533.

The infinitive, on the other hand, is perfective. The Oxford Dictionary s. v. *see* ignores aspect (and the infinitive may sometimes be neutral in this respect) and explains that the infinitive is used in this construction to imply that the subject can 'give testimony as to the fact or the manner of the action'.

It is in agreement with the perfective character of the infinitive that it is always used after *to have* when accompanied by *will* expressing volition (see 672). The infinitive is used in the following quotation where a series of obser-

vations is mentioned, on none of which the author wishes the reader to dwell.

> Accordingly, when watching on the night after the festival (Venn) saw him ascend by the little path, lean over the front gate of Clym's garden, sigh, and turn to go back again.
> Hardy, Return of the Native IV ch. 4.

544. In accordance with the imperfective aspect expressed by the participle, this construction may not only express duration (*a*) but also frequent repetition (*b*).

> *a.* Through the still night I heard the nightingale calling, calling, until I could bear it no longer and went softly out into the luminous dark. Fairless, Roadmender V.
>
> We saw a tall gentleman standing looking at us intently and silently. So off we went again through the wood, while we heard the gentleman shouting: "Stop there, stop!"
> Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 61.
>
> Oftentimes in winter, when no doors or windows were open, I have seen the glass panes streaming with wet inside, and women carried out fainting. Rutherford, Autobiogr. p. 8.
>
> *b.* We shall have the young men coming to dinner pretty often, you'll see. Gaskell, Wives II p. 19.
>
> We saw the doves and starlings going in and out the tower, and the black swifts screaming round it.
> Sweet, Spoken English p. 58.
>
> I won't have you coming in here (i. e. the sick-room).
> Bennett, Clayhanger III ch. 16 § 1.

545. As the different aspects have no regular special forms in English, the feeling for them is not very strong. Hence it will be useful to see if the explanation given above is supported by those verbs that take an accusative-and-infinitive only.

546. The chief verbs that take an accusative-and-infinitive with *to* only, and not a present participle, are those expressing

command: *to order, persuade, get.* Of the verbs with an accusative-and-plain infinitive, the following never take a present participle: *to let, make, bid, help*, and *to have* when it means 'to cause.'

It is significant that all these verbs express the influence exerted by a person upon another in order to obtain a result. It is evident that such verbs naturally take a perfective form like the infinitive, not an imperfective (durative) present participle.

Passive Infinitive and Past Participle

547. All the verbs that can take an accusative with infinitive or present participle can also be construed with an accusative and past participle.

Some verbs can take either a passive infinitive (with *to*) or a past participle after the accusative. This applies not only to those that can take an active infinitive with *to* as well as a present participle (*to like, want, wish; to fancy, imagine*), but also to the verbs of command that can take an accusative with infinitive (with *to*) like *to order.*

548. The first question that rises is again: what is the difference, if any, between the construction with the passive infinitive and the one with the past participle.

If we compare two sentences like *I wish the thing to be done* and *I wish the thing done,* it is clear that there is some difference. In the former case (*to be done*) the action is looked upon with respect to its beginning in the future, in the second (*done*) the action is rather looked upon as completed. In other words, the passive infinitive is *inchoative,* the past participle is *terminative.* Compare also:

> No, I don't want Alan hurt — I want everyone in the world to be happy, happy — as I am.
>
> Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 9.

> I do not wish to show myself beaten before all Egdon.
>
> Hardy, Return of the Native II ch. 2.

When the durative aspect must be expressed the compound participle can be used (*She foresaw inquiries being made*); see 578 f.

549. As in the case of the infinitive and present participle, we will now examine why in some cases one construction only is found. For the past participle only is found after the accusative of the verbs with a participle or an active infinitive without *to* (*to see, hear, feel*, etc,; *to have* 'experience', *to find*, and *to know*), further after *to get*, and after *to have* meaning 'to cause', and 'to make'. An examination of the examples in the preceding sec ions will probably convince the reader that the explanation given above is correct. It is especially after *to get* that it is clear that the inchoative infinitive is impossible.

Perhaps it is worth drawing attention to the different nature of the accusative according as the predicative adjunct is an active or a passive form: in the former the accusative is personal, in the latter it is non-personal.

550. In one case the passive infinitive (without *to*) is regularly found: after *to let*. Occasionally, if rarely, the same construction is used with *to bid*. Neither of the two can take the past participle.

> In his busiest days Alfred found time to learn the old songs of his race by heart, and bade them be taught in the palace-school. Green, Short Hist. p. 51.

551. The only verbs remaining are *to set* and *to help*. These never take a personal object with a passive verbal form, naturally.

552. The accusative-and-infinitive with *to* and the accusative-and-present or past participle (as well as the accusative-and-gerund: 448 ff.) have a corresponding passive construction

(304, 374 ff., 452, 533). There is no nominative-and-past participle.

Participles in Free Adjuncts

Related Participle **553.** The simple participles are used in free adjuncts; see *Sentence-Structure*. The free adjuncts with participles express:

1. attendant circumstances.

She remained outwardly calm, seldom leaving the privacy of her own apartments. Buchanan, That Winter Night ch. 3.

Far away in Palestine General Allenby has won a great victory, smashing the Turkish line across the plain of Philistia, and taking Gaza. Spectator 10/11, 17.

2. cause or reason.

Born in the city of Oxford, he (i. e. John Richard Green) was from his childhood sensitive to the spirit of his native city. Hearnshaw, Municipal Records p. 8.

Finding Blanche determined, Father André presently took his leave. Buchanan, That Winter Night ch. 5.

3. time.

Nearing Joyfields he noted the Mallorings' park, and their long Georgian house. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 7 p. 71.

Arrived at the spot, the party lost no time in getting to work. Athenaeum, 7/10, 11.

And now, returned home from a long sea-voyage, he was coming to visit my mother.

Mary Lamb in Select Stories II p. 1.

554. Other relations are seldom clearly intended, although the participle in these free adjuncts may sometimes seem to imply condition (*a*), concession (*b*), or means (*c*). See 560.

a. Once seen it can never be forgotten.

Mair, Engl. Lit. p. 81.

Left in the positions which they [1]) had originally occupied, the tribes might have retained these institutions unaltered for centuries. Gardiner and Mullinger, Introd. p. 18.

b. She made her house one of the most attractive in London. Seldom seen at large assemblies, she was eagerly sought after in the well-winnowed *soirées* of the elect.

Bulwer, Pelham ch. 2.

c. Current taste seems to require of historians that they should minimize their office, abridging their functions as interpreters and leaving the student very much to his own devices among the facts laid before him.

Times Lit. 16,3, 22.

555. The relation between the adjunct and the rest of the sentence is sometimes indicated by conjunctions: *when, while, as if, though,* etc.

While possessing nothing like the genius of Plato, more truly a child of his age is Isocrates (436—338 B. C.).

Goodspeed, Hist. p. 196.

"Because I have seen her — that is to say, her head."

"When? Where?"

"Whilst dressing for dinner."

Baring-Gould in Swaen I p. 4.

But whether considered with awe, or mocked or summarily dismissed, the examiner is loved by none.

Times Ed. S. 11/7, 18.

One is lifted as it were into a serener air when pondering over them. Times Lit. 19/10, 16.

All changes of habit among birds are peculiarly interesting, as giving us a brief glimpse in our own lifetime of age-long processes of accommodation. ib. 7,8, 19.

He paused as if expecting her to answer.

Buchanan, That Winter Night ch. 2.

They were unlike, as though recognizing the difference

1) Viz. the Jutes, Saxons, and Angles.

between them by the circumstance of their births.
Galsworthy, Man of Property ch. 7.

If deceived I have been my own dupe.
Bulwer, Money III, 4.

556. When reason or cause must be expressed we often find *as* used with repetition of the subject and the auxiliary *to do* after the participle, which is more or less clearly attributive.

We hope this novel dealing as it does with much that is ignoble in politics and politicians will continue....
Athenaeum 3/10, 14.

In connection with this church, one of the most beautifully situated in England, standing, as it does, in a lovely fold of the sheep-cropped downs over the Bristol Channel....
Academy, 5/8, 1905.

The report of 1822, helping as it did to give direction to the energies of the Commissioners, led directly to the chief and most enduring work of his life. Times Lit. 22/5, 19.

The fourth volume, covering as it does the usual allowance of five plays, now brings the number up to twenty, out of the entire fifty-two. Athen. 14/12, 12.

557. The relation between a free participle and the rest of the sentence may be so vague that the relation can be said to be that of coordination.

But he had an approved tolerance for others; sometimes wondering, almost with envy, at the high pressure of spirits involved in their misdeeds. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll.

558. In all these constructions the present participle is far more frequent than the past participle. The latter is chiefly found when difference of time must be expressed; the use is chiefly found with transitive verbs (in which case the past participle has a passive meaning, of course). It seems

that intransitive verbs are only used when they are perfective [1]). The same observation applies to the following constructions.

Absolute Participle

559. The participle in a free adjunct sometimes has a subject of its own. This is often called the absolute participle-construction. It is little used in spoken English.

The subject is a noun or pronoun in the common case; personal pronouns are in the nominative [2]); occasionally the subject is a clause.

1. attendant circumstances.

He ate improvised meals there at odd times, Charmian acting as cook. Hichens, Ambition, ch. 18 p. 207.

When we reached Piccadilly Circus we separated, I finding my way to my lodgings, Lawrence Rivers driving to Arthur Place to make terms with my father. White, Strood p. 82.

He entered the room in his miner's dress, his hand and face stained with dust, his hair matted and hanging over his eyes. Shorthouse, Inglesant ch. 12.

At that moment Dick Oakley rushed up the steps waving his arms wildly, his face expressing the liveliest terror.

The cabmen on the ranks used to say, seeing James Winter passing with the pigtailed daughter of John Winter, she holding his sleeve, dancing by his side so that the pigtail danced too:

"There goes James Winter with his little pal."

Niven, Porcelain ch. 1.

The body was buried at Highgate Cemetery, and Steve and Pat followed it there, they and the cousin being the only mourners. Patterson, Steven Compton, p. 217.

2. cause or reason.

The sea was not visible, but I could hear it on the other

1) This would be intelligible, for these participles are closely related to adjectives. Compare the fifth example of 534.

2) The construction is sometimes called an *absolute nominative.*

side of the belt of firs; and the verandah facing south and being hot and airless, a longing to get into the cool water took hold of me. Eliz. in Rügen.

Brindle.... gave Steve a warm welcome, then introduced him to his sister, a much younger and very pleasant woman who kept house for him, he being a bachelor.
Patterson, Compton p. 147.

We having occasion to shut up our flat for a month or so, my wife was all for taking our silver round to a Safe Deposit in order to prevent its being stolen. Punch, 19 2, 13.

To Western civilization the Crusades contributed very little, the truth being that there was little to be learned from the Mohammedans in Syria. Davis, Med. Europe p. 212.

Dr. Tempest was also there, the rector of the parish, he being both magistrate and clergyman.
Trollope, Last. Chron. ch. 1 p. 68.

He had a high shining head, from which the hair had mostly departed, what little still remained being of a grizzled auburn. Anstey, Vice Versa ch. 1.

3. time.

The reading ended, the Prince took the oath of allegiance, and signed the declaration. Times W. 22/2, 18.

Yet, all deductions and qualifications admitted, Wordsworth's essays on his own art are valuable and instructive reading.
Magnus, Primer of Wordsworth, p. 166.

Morning traffic over, and the western part of Kentish Town provided with greens and fruit, and the midday meal cleared away, Mrs. Enefer said, with relish, "Now then, what's the programme for the day?" Pett Ridge, Garland.

560. The absolute-participle construction may also seem to indicate condition and concession, but it is difficult to distinguish these relations from attendant circumstances. See 554.

The limitations of her materials taken into account, she has produced a most interesting and always tactful biography.

Still, all allowances made it is a thousand pities.

When a true bill is found (viz. by the grand jury) then there will be a trial, unless indeed the person indicted is not in custody and cannot be apprehended.... But there being an indictment and a prisoner, the trial will go forward.
Maitland, Justice and Police p. 139.

The first parliament of Charles I. met on 17 May, 1625, and was dissolved on 12 August, the Commons protesting.
Maitland, Const. Hist. p. 292.

561. The subject of an absolute participle is very often indicated by a noun or pronoun preceded by *with*. This preposition [1]) is used to express attendant circumstances (*a*). In the last quotation the adjunct seems to express condition rather than attendant circumstances (*b*). Compare the gerund as a free adjunct: 426 and 441 f.

a. "What's up?" I cried, with a queer high note getting into my voice somehow. Wells, Country p. 239.

The little woman advanced slowly with her eyes fixed malevolently on the pink paper. Wells, Harman p. 2.

Now, she found it easier to pretend it was all a piece of agreeable imagination, interrupted only by occasional naps, wherein frightful disaster occurred, with steamer going down, steamer blown up, steamer making its way across on its side.... Pett Ridge, Garland ch. XII. p. 200.

He left China steadily settling down, with the authority of the Central Government steadily growing, with trade everywhere reviving, and with the unwieldy armies of the revolution being gradually disbanded and absorbed in the civil population.
Daily Mail.

b. Even now, with this conversion accomplished, we should be immensely strengthened. Times W. 2/8, 15.

---

1) Also with nouns in free adjuncts.

Presently after, he sat on one side of his own hearth, with Mr. Guest, his head clerk, upon the other. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll.

562. This prepositional adjunct is not always separated from the rest of the sentence by a clear pause (*a*). We occasionally have the same construction (i.e. without a pause) with *without*[1]), but in the case of forms in *-ing* it is not always clear that we must call them participles rather than gerunds.

a. Easter Monday opened with the sun shining brightly from a blue heaven. Times.

b. Should an untidy maid put her hand upon this the marks can easily be removed without any damage being done. Bibliophile 1909 p. 322.

My Father was often away all night without notice given, and my Mother postponed belief in disaster quite contentedly. Morgan, Vance ch. 15.

563. The absolute participle may also take the formal subjects *it* and *there* (*a*).

Occasionally this formal subject-word is not used (*b*).

a. The next morning the Jesuit took him to his father's house on the north side of the Strand, where he saw both his father and his brother, it not being the latter's turn in waiting at the Court. Shorthouse, Inglesant ch. 4 p. 47.

Meanwhile, Martha was more quiet and shorter of words than usual — except when she and Uncle met, there being a strong bond of friendship between them.
Patterson, Stephen Compton, p. 143.

There being no survivors the exact causes which led to the accident will never be known. Times W. 26/6 '14.

There was no attempt to answer this question, it being felt probably that it was, like the conventional "How do you do?" one to which an answer is neither desired nor expected. Anstey, Vice Versa, ch. IV.

b. It was now Miss Carnaby's turn to feel uncomfortable:

---

1) Note that *without* expresses attendant circumstances, like *with*. But it is negative.

being of a retiring disposition, she did not like the idea of dining in public; for being market-day at the nearest town, they were overlooked by plenty of farmers and pork-butchers.
Sweet, Elementarbuch, no. 78.

Being Sunday, we had service on deck after we left the bay. Froude, Oceana ch. 2.

564. In vulgar English the subject of the absolute participle is indicated by the oblique case (or absolute form) of a personal pronoun.

"It will be a very good match for me, m'm," said Jane, "me being an orphan girl." Wells, Country p. 16.

565. The *related* and the *absolute* participle are not rarely found combined in one sentence.

Completely drenched, the track lost, everything in dense gloom beyond the white enclosure [1]) that moved with him, Evan flung the reins to the horse, and curiously watched him footing on. Meredith, Harrington ch. 18 p. 185.

The look of his place had a sad effect, scaring me very greatly, and making me feel that I would give something, only to be at home again, with Annie cooking my supper, and our dog, "Watch," sniffing upward.
Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 7 p. 46.

The watcher wondered, with a little prick of jealousy, what they would be discussing in the large bedroom, her father's beard wagging feebly and his long arms on the counterpane, Constance perched at the foot of the bed, and her mother walking to and fro, putting her cameo brooch on the dressing-table or stretching creases out of her gloves.
Bennett, Old W. T. I ch. 2 § 2.

566. We seldom find the absolute participle connected by *and*.

---

1) viz. of the thunderstorm.

It was not a little thing for him to die, and he protecting his neighbour. Lady Gregory, Gaol Gate.

Unrelated Present Participles

567. A *present* participle is sometimes found in a free adjunct without a subject of its own and without a word in the sentence to which it refers. Sometimes the subject is easily inferred from the context.

Two doors from one corner, on the left hand going east, the line was broken by the entry of a court.
Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll.

Beginning with the July number, it is intended materially to widen the scope of this Quarterly.
Oxford and Cambridge Rev.

By the way, talking of tomatoes, who is that red-haired girl who has been about the house?
Baring-Gould, Swaen I p. 7.

Talking of owls, a curious thing happened to a boy about here. Sweet, Spoken English p. 69.

Strictly speaking, you have no right to come here at all.

Talking of subscriptions, here is one to which your lordship may affix your name.

Granting, though, that English farming has fallen below its opportunities, what are Mr. Wolff's remedies?
Times Lit. 3/5, 18.

568. The unrelated present participle is also found when no definite subject is thought of. This use is generally disapproved of, and may be justly called slipshod English.

Being your view of course you must express it.
Pilot 7/6, 1902.

Looking at Betty, as she sat amongst things familiar to Mark from childhood, it was difficult to believe that she was a married woman. Vachell, Brothers vol. II ch. 7 p. 85.

Looking ahead through the tunnel, all was black as night.
Grant Allen, What's Bred in the Bone ch. 2.

Being a Crescent with a reputation, there were householders determined the reputation should not go down.

Pett Ridge, Name of Garland, ch. 13 p. 218.

569. Cases such as those in 567 may lead to those of 568. Compare the second quotation of 567 with the following.

Successive commentators, beginning with Coke, misunderstood the genesis and effect of the instrument.

Times Lit. 28/12, 17.

570. If an unrelated present participle is followed by an object it may practically be considered as a preposition.

Considering the circumstances, you may be excused.

This explains the prepositional use of *barring*, *excepting*, *touching*, etc.

571. If an unrelated present participle is followed by a clause, it may similarly assume the nature of a conjunction.

Seeing that (= *since*) it was involuntary, he can hardly be blamed.

Seeing obedience is the bond of rule.

Tennyson, Passing of Arthur.

The Bill will bring about, assuming that (= *if*) it meets with good fortune in the remaining stages of its passage through Parliament, a very useful reform.

As for what construction others would put on Lady John's immediate flight — he cared nothing for such confirmation, providing that she went. Patterson, Compton, p. 305.

572. An absolute present or past participle sometimes precedes its subject, so that it has taken the first step towards becoming a preposition. Note, however, that the relation between participle and the following noun is one of verb and subject, not of verb and object as in 570. This is probably the reason why none of the following participles [1])

1) Not even *given*, though its front-position is the only usual construction.

would be taken for a preposition, except *notwithstanding*. But the original relation may be forgotten, as is shown by the last two instances with *failing*.

It was not due to him at all, but simply to the fact that the House wanted the measure passed into law; because the House, notwithstanding anything to the contrary, was very responsive to the general tides of feeling which flowed in the country. Times Ed. S. 8/8, 18.

The English kingship was hereditary and elective; that is to say, it was elective within the limits of a single family; failing that family it was elective absolutely.
Constit. Essays p. 21.

But, yielded all that obeisance, they did a good deal for the town. Gaskell, Wives I ch. 1 p. 10.

Given a king, a new order of nobility was sure to arise — nobility by service. Stubbs, Lect. p. 8.

They enjoy learning it, given sympathetic teachers.
Times Ed. S. 27/2, 19.

James's son-in-law, the Prince of Orange, would not have been accepted by the nation as king..., and, failing him, there was nobody but... Monmouth. Garnett, Age of Dryden p. 21.

The testator devised the Ardmore estate in trust for his eldest son for life, with remainder to his male issue in fee, whom failing to testator's other sons, according to seniority.
Wendt, Grammatik p. 35.

Tense and Voice of the Participle

Simple Present Participle

573. The simple present participle does not express tense. As far any time is thought of, it is the same as that of the rest of the sentence.

Occasionally the present participle refers to a time different from that of the rest of the sentence. This occurs only in free adjuncts. See also the last example of 580.

Passing through the wall of mud and stone, they found a cheerful company assembled. Dickens, Christmas Carol II.

574. The present participle of transitive verbs may be considered to express the active voice. In the case of intransitive verbs the voice is, naturally, neutral.

The present participle of transitive verbs is occasionally used in a passive meaning, chiefly in its predicative function. It may be dialectal.

> "Now, mater," said Cyril, "it's a pity you don't want that cake cutting into."
>
> Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 3 § 3 p. 494.

For the passive (or intransitive) function of present participles with a copula, especially *to be*, see 205 ff. on the progressive.

575. The passive or intransitive meaning of present participles is also found when they are used attributively, but in this case they always follow their headword.

> Christianity and civilization are alike humiliated by the spectacle now unfolding. Times W. 4/7, 13.
>
> In the hedges any man, unless his eyes were very dull, could see the mischief doing. Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 17 p. 109.
>
> A year or two ago it was calculated that the total debt owing by the older libraries in England and Wales amounted to more than a million pounds. Pilot 4/4, 1903.

Past Participle **576.** As its name implies the past participle refers to past time, as far as it refers to any time at all. The past participles of transitive verbs are passive with regard to voice; those of intransitive verbs are naturally neutral (520). The past participle rarely refers to a noun that would be the indirect object of the active verb (274).

> The labourers, stripped of their ancient rights and their ancient possessions, refused a minimum wage and allotments, were given instead a universal system of pauperism.
>
> Hammond, Village Labourer p. 141.

Compound Participles

577. The compound participles are rarely used attributively. The present participle (with *being*) is occasionally used as an attributive adjunct to a preceding noun.

> In the articles now being published Mr. Graham describes his return across Germany into Russia and down to the Caucasus. Times W. 6/2, 14.

578. The present passive participle in combination with the copula *to be* has been discussed in the sections on the progressive form (186 ff.; see also 524). It also serves to express the durative aspect after verbs construed with an accusative and present participle (548). See also the last quotation of 562.

> The side [1]) kept on being altered.
> Waugh, Loom of Youth III, ch. 1.
> She foresaw inquiries being made concerning her.
> Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 1 § 4.
> I like to see Lady Diana Duff-Cooper being applauded when she appears in the stalls. Observer, 31/10, 20.
> It is true and characteristic that in all the negotations with Germany during the 'eighties and 'nineties we find a permanent place being taken by Mr. Chamberlain as Colonial Secretary. Times Lit. 25/10, 23.

579. The use of this participle in the accusative-and-participle construction to express the durative aspect is literary rather than colloquial. In spoken English we often find the past participle even when the durative aspect is intended.

> I've never seen a burglar caught red-handed.
> Bennett, Grand Babylon Hotel.
> Come and see a plate made. Bennett, Anna ch. 8 p. 124.
> You wanted to see a trout caught, didn't you?
> Phillpotts, Beacon I ch. 11 p. 99.

---

1) The cricket eleven.

580. The perfect participles are used in free adjuncts only [1]; the passive participles are also most frequent in this construction.

1. Related Participles.

Having had his own way for innumerable years, he had earned a prescriptive right to it.
Galsworthy, Man of Property ch. 1.

They are equally loth to draw the sword, but, having drawn it, they are equally resolved not to sheathe it until its work is done. Times W. 3/5, 18.

Having found a pretext for making the expedition, he found another for making it in the guise of a Turkish peasant, thus establishing himself firmly in our affections.
Times Lit. 29/6, 16.

The right thus acquired was grossly abused; but the exercise of it, being expected, created at first but little alarm.

It seems that the author, being called a working-man poet, has written the latter poems as a duty.

2. Absolute Participles.

Probably it had come out of one of the old books for which he had shown such a fondness, he having always had "a habit of reading." Patterson Compton, p. 1. [2]).

Aunt Charlotte having been, in her day, a busy manufacturer of trouble, the world might well express relief at her departure.
Pett Ridge, Garland.

But we shall waste no sympathy on her, she having snapped at the Court physician. Snaith, Principal Girl.

The conference in Dublin between employers and trade union officials has been adjourned until Monday next, no settlement having been reached. Times W. 12/9, 13.

---

1) They are naturally frequent in those expressing time, but also occur in the other cases.

2) The absolute participle with a nominative-pronoun referring to the subject of the sentence is frequent in this book; see p. 114 f., 146. This construction is not generally approved of.

Thus, the nightingale and crow have vocal organs similarly constructed, these being used by the former for diversified song, and by the latter merely for croaking.

Darwin in Herrig-Förster, Brit. Authors p. 619.

The treaty having been settled with the Scots, and the writs issued for a new Parliament, the King returned to London. Shorthouse, Inglesant ch. 6 p. 71.

These things being remembered, it will not seem strange that the king should have exercised a power of dispensing with penal statutes. Maitland, Constit. Hist. p. 303.

It certainly seems to have been the common opinion that the king had a certain ordaining power. Regard being had to the past it was difficult to deny this. ib. p. 256.

Mr. Povey was playing a hymn tune on the harmonium, it having been decided that no one should go to chapel.

Bennett, Old W. Tale II ch. 2 § 2 p. 162.

The facts being thus made secure [1]), readers are to be left to judge of the inferences on their own merits.

Times Lit. 16/3, 22.

Character of the Participles

581. The participles are generally defined as verbal adjectives.

The adjective character is prominent when they are used attributively before their headword (514 ff.). Indeed, this is chiefly found when they have no verbal function or characteristic. As soon as the idea of time or of an agent is distinctly present the attributive participle must follow its headword; it is often connected with its headword by a conjunction. See 517 f. and the chapter on *Wordorder*.

On January 23rd Mr. Bonar Law asked a question of the Speaker about the effect of certain amendments given notice of by the Government to abolish the occupation franchise.

Everyman, 7,2, 13.

1) As the time is different between the adjunct and the rest of the sentence, *being made* is used here in the same function as *having been made* (573).

The lilacs and chestnut trees just crowding forth in little tufts, close kernelling in their blossom, were ruffled back, like a sleeve turned up, and nicked with brown at the corners.
Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 17 p. 108.

However great in actual practice the king's power may have been, there was always a central assembly, whether called the Witenagemot or the Great Council, the members of which were never dependent for their right upon the mere personal will of the sovereign. Constitut. Essays p. 159.

Mr. Wegg has gone deeply into the life of Antwerp in its various aspects, and his work, though dealing with a limited period, is a valuable contribution to civic history.
Times Lit. 15/6, 16.

582. The adjectival character of the attributive participles is shown by their conversion into nouns; see the sections on *Conversion.*

583. Predicative participles are more distinctly verbal in function. Participles in free adjuncts are almost purely verbal. In the absolute-participle construction the form in *-ing* is chiefly called a participle on account of the identical use of the past participle and also because of the similarity to the related participle; but see 561.

584. The participles forming the perfect tenses, the progressive and the passive voice are purely verbal.

The verbal nature of the participles is also shown by the existence of compound forms to express time and voice. The verbal character of these forms causes them to be rare in attributive use, and most frequent in free adjuncts.

585. The adjuncts of the participles are the same as those of the finite verb. Thus, participles are qualified by *much* (not *very)* and express comparison by *more* and *most*, even when they are monosyllabic. When a word with the form of a

participle takes *very*, it may be considered to be an adjective: *very pleased, tired, amusing.*

> His mouth was very set and determined.
> He began to be very satisfied with himself.
> Bennett, Old W. T. III ch. 1 § 1.

If we considered the meaning in the first place, we might call the adjectives derived from verbs with the suffix - *able* participles. They have even a verbal characteristic: in attributive use they follow their headword (see *Wordorder)*, and may take an adjunct with *by* to express the agent (see *Prepositions*). But they do not share the other characteristics of the participles: they do not take objects or adverb adjuncts of manner (e.g. *laughing heartily*) and are not used in free adjuncts; neither do they possess forms to express tense or voice.

586. An adjective may occasionally be used in the function of a participle.

> But from that time I never ceased pondering on the sad story of my dead [1]) mamma.
> Mary Lamb in Selected Short Stories II p. 4.

Gerund and Participle

587. The gerund and the present participle are names for two different syntactical functions of one and the same form. It has been stated that the gerund is a verbal noun, the present participle a verbal adjective. But as nouns and adjectives often have the same functions, it is not always possible to make the distinction.

588. In wordgroups the first element of which is a form in *-ing* the meaning often shows clearly whether it is a gerund

---

1) i. e. who had died (not: who was dead).

or a participle. Thus the first element would be called a gerund by most speakers in such words as *sleeping draught* (draught for sleeping), *walking-stick*, *boarding-school*, *training-college*, *dancing-master*, *frying-pan*, *writing-table*, *parting-word*, *parting-gift*, etc. And it would seem most natural to call the first element a participle in *leading article*, *falling star*, *working man*, *standing army*, etc.

In some cases it seems difficult to decide the question, as in *circulating library*, *acting drama* (drama for acting, meant to be acted, not read).

589. Sweet, remarking that in even-stress compounds the first element is usually an adjective (as in *public house*, *easy chair* or an adjective equivalent (as in *gold ring*, *meat pie*, explains *falling sickness*, *dying day*, *parting glass*, *sleeping draught* as containing a present participle.

This interpretation does not seem to do justice to the linguistic sense of speakers of present-day English [1]); it would seem far more natural to analyse the words as meaning: sickness one of whose symptoms is falling, day of one's death (dying) [2]), glass at parting [2]), draught for sleeping [2]). And there is no objection against modifying the rule about the occurrence of even stress, so as to include these groups as well as groups of attributive nouns with nouns.

The Oxford Dict. s.v. *-ing* admits that we generally have uneven stress when the combination is "an established expression," and that in such cases the first element is to be

---

1) It may not be superfluous for some readers to be reminded that what we are concerned with are the *facts* of present-day English, not their *origin* or *history*.

2) Thus also in the Oxford Dictionary (Murray and Craigie). Bradley s.v. *falling-sickness* interprets the first element as a participle, but adds that the word is obsolete (we now use *epilepsy*); his analysis is vitiated, moreover, by historical considerations.

considered as a verbal noun, as in *breeding-place, carving-knife, dancing-master, dwelling-house, fowling-piece, laughing-stock, meeting-house, reaping-hook, stumbling-block, spinning-wheel, thanksgiving-day, walking-stick.* "But, when the collocation is only occasional, and the verbal substantive stands in a simple attributive relation to the following sb., it approaches in function to an adjective, and is liable to be confounded with the present part. used adjectivally. The sense [1]) generally determines the nature of the collocation; thus, drawing lessons are not lessons that draw, but lessons in drawing..." For the same reason the first element is called a gerund in *fainting-fit, drinking-cup.*

590. Sometimes the distinction is impossible, as in the case of *cutting tool, advertising agency.*

We also seem to have gerunds in the following cases: *this is no laughing matter, purchasing power, spending power, the teaching profession, for teaching purposes, the learning age, the carrying power of the air.*

But what is the first element of *consulting engineer, our wandering tent* [2])?

We have even stress, and yet clearly a gerund, in Cowper's lines on Alexander Selkirk:

> But the sound of the church-going bell
> These valleys and rocks never heard.

591. When the form in *-ing* is used as an adjunct without a preposition it is sometimes difficult to tell whether the form in *-ing* qualifies a verb or adjective, or a noun (which is very often the subject of the sentence).

It is no use mending that boy's clothes. He tears his coat

---

1) Not stress, therefore.

2) Cotes, Cinderella Ch. 12. p. 137.

climbing trees, and wears out the knees of his trousers kneeling on the damp grass. Sweet, Elementarbuch, p. 119.

Here *climbing* and *kneeling* might be considered as adjuncts to the subject *he*, hence as participles; but it seems more natural to explain them as adverb adjuncts (to *tears* and *wears*), meaning *by climbing*, *by kneeling*, hence as gerunds.

592. The form in *-ing* may be apprehended as a gerund when it forms an adverb adjunct expressing cause, reason, purpose, or means. But it may also be looked upon as a participle. See also 524.

You don't know what you miss, Evelyn, not having a flat [1]).
Cotes, Cinderella, ch. 15 p. 174.

And when I showed Uncle Tom that suit-case, he nearly died laughing [2]). J. Webster, Just Patty.

He was a long time reaching Stanhope Gate.
Galsworthy, Man of Property ch. 7 p. 99.

I was engaged building my porch when the man said this.
Baring-Gould, Old Country Life ch. 3 p. 46.

He was hard at work ploughing.
Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 69 p. 528.

He made considerable money cherry-growing.
Vachell, Spragge p. 31.

"It just shows," he continued, "what these European markets are, when a fellow can make a reputation cooking peas."
Mrs. Wharton, Mirth, p. 174.

She had spent the day pottering about her bed-room.
Vachell, Quinneys' p. 65.

Similarly we may speak of a gerund or of a participle when *busy* is qualified by an adverb adjunct in *-ing*

It may be noted that these non-prepositional forms in *-ing* used as adverb adjuncts can very often be replaced by a

---

1) i. e. I advise you to take a flat.

2) Similarly *to burst out laughing*.

prepositional gerund in the same meaning, especially one with *in* or *by*. Thus we can use both a prepositional and a non-prepositional form with *busy (in), to spend one's life (in), there is no use (in), to be a long time (in), to delay (in), to be employed (in), to be long (in),* etc., *to lose no time (in), to spend (in), to cease (from), to have done (with), to excuse a person (for), to excuse a person (from), to prevent a person (from),* etc.

One woman was kept busy in supplying him with material. Bennett, Anna ch. 8 p. 125.

When he ceased from speaking he again put his elbows on his knees. Trollope, Last Chron. ch. 66 (vol. II p. 239).

But I've done with expecting any course of steady reading from Emma. J. Austen, Emma p. 35.

Dickens's Christmas books were so enormously popular that imitations were not long in making their appearance. Times Lit. 20/12, 24.

He kissed her cheek, and departed in great misery, which was several hours in lessening itself to a controllable level. Hardy, Return of the Native III ch. 6.

I lost no time in availing myself of the privilege which he proposed. Hole, Mem. p. 90.

We spend our time in searching for something that is not there. G. Murray, Eng. Lit. and the Classics p. 7.

593. When the finite verb is completely subordinated in meaning to the form in *-ing* (as in: *the young men who came courting her daughter* [1]), the latter cannot be interpreted as an adverb adjunct, but must be looked upon as a predicative adjunct connected with the subject of the sentence by a copulative verb. And this predicative adjunct is naturally a participle. On verbs like *to go on, to stop,* see 597.

We also seem to have participles in the following sentence.

---

1) G. Cannan, Round the Corner, ch. 5 p. 49.

I didn't mind it riding but it was rather awkward driving.
Sweet, Spoken English p. 72.

594. When the subject of the form in *-ing* is the nominative of a personal pronoun (*he, she,* etc.) we have a participle (556). When the subject is a possessive pronoun, or the genitive of a noun or pronoun, we necessarily have a gerund (441 ff.).

But in other cases the distinction must be made on the ground of the function of the form in *-ing*. Let us take the first sentence of 441: *There was a rumour of Martha marrying the son of a neighbouring farmer.*

Here both the attributive participle and the gerund are formally possible. The question is, therefore, whether *Martha* is the headword with the (participial) attributive adjunct *marrying*, or *Martha* should be considered as the subject of the verbal noun *marrying*. It is easy to see that the latter is the only natural explanation of the meaning; the same will be found true for the other examples.

595. Sometimes there is very little to choose between the two interpretations.

They (i. e. poets) see there hosts of words full of splendid power, words which the dictionaries say have gone out of employment: though to be sure you never know that any word alleged to be obsolete now may not be familiar to-morrow. This may be due to poets and other writers courageously using them; but more likely it is due to the way obsolete words have of surviving in dialect.
L. Abercrombie, Poetry and Contemporary Speech, p. 10.

Here we may explain: *this may be due to poets who courageously use them* (*using:* a present participle); or: *to the fact that poets use them* (*using:* a gerund). I believe the latter is the correct interpretation, partly on account of the meaning,

partly because the absence of a comma after *writers* suggests that the speaker used no pause there.

> We could not stand women speaking the truth. We could not bear it. Conrad, Chance I 181.

Here the form *it* in the second sentence refers to the words *speaking the truth;* hence we have a gerund.

Compare also:

> It is difficult to conceive the circumstances which would justify a soldier of whatever rank he might be disobeying a legal order lawfully given to him. Times W.

The correctness of this interpretation is also implicitly recognized by those Englishmen who disapprove of the construction. Compare the following reasoning (by Mr. John Dalzell in the Pilot, 1/2, 1902 p. 132).

> Then there is the false genitive, which seems to pass unchallenged almost everywhere. Here is an example from the leader in to-day's *Daily Chronicle:* "One of the Boer commandants captured the other day has stated that one of the reasons for the Boers remaining in the field was the issue," etc. I assume that the reason was not for the Boers, but for their continued presence [1]) in the field, but I arrive at that conclusion only by a mental correction which makes the sentence read: "reasons for the Boers' remaining in the field." The writer, if he were speaking of himself or of one Boer would not (I hope) say: "the reason for me remaining in the field" or "for him remaining", and I do not know why he should deny the genitive to the Boers generally.

596. Sometimes the gerund and the *predicative* participle do not differ greatly. Compare e. g. the quotation from Masterman in 532 with the following.

---

1) In other words, in the sentence quoted *remaining* is the headword for which the noun *presence* can be substituted; and *Boers* is the adjunct (subject).

The illustration would be apter if Mr. Milnes had imagined his man not walking out of the window himself, but advising some one else whose property he wished to secure, to do so. Times Lit. 22/5, 19, p. 270/2.

In the quotation of 532 the form in *-ing* is clearly a predicative adjunct, consequently a participle. But in the above quotation *walking* and *advising* seem to be objects rather to which *his man* is a subject. According to this interpretation they are gerunds.

We may interpret the forms in *-ing* as gerunds or as participles in the following passages.

The Quinneys watched the pilgrims coming and going in a never-ending procession. Vachell, Quinneys' p. 43.

Aristotle and Mr. Gradgrind, in their educational ideals, as in everything else, are poles asunder. If we can imagine them holding a conversation, we cannot imagine them discovering a single point of agreement. Times Ed. S. 5/8, 20.

Fancy him thinking about me *being* so lonely and wanting you to come and live with me. Mackenzie, Sylvia p. 266.

597. In the following two quotations the functions of the forms in *-ing* seem exactly similar, but on closer inspection they are found to be different.

We'll go on sailing till it's dark.
He continued talking.

In the first of these two sentences *sailing* is a pure predicative adjunct with the copulative verb *to go on*. But in the second case, though *to continue* may seem to be identical with *to go on*, it is evident that the form in *-ing* is more of an object (cp. *He continued his speech*), so that *talking* may be called a gerund. Yet, *to continue* may be connected with a predicative adjunct, as in *It continued cold all day*, and this seems to be the construction with *talking* [1]).

1) The noun *work* would generally be called an object in the following sentence. Yet, the absence of any qualifier (cf. *his* faggot) makes it iden-

The question to be answered in these cases is: Is the finite verb qualified by the form in *-ing*, or does it chiefly serve to connect the form in *-ing* with the subject?

598. The reasons for calling the form in *-ing* a participle in free adjuncts, especially in the absolute-participle construction, have been discussed above. See also 426, 561.

Sometimes the form in *-ing* must be called a participle on other grounds.

> A journalist may go a-picnicking. A journalist may go a-dancing. But the paper must not suffer. Proofs left unread by day must be read at night. Niven, Porcelain Lady (p. 217).

Here the *-ing* forms are preceded by *a* [ə], which is common in archaic and dialectal English (63); but apart from that we should be inclined to put them on a level with *to be picnicking*, etc., because *go* is little more than an auxiliary here [1]). And the most natural interpretation of the form would then be to consider it as an adjunct to the subject (not to the verb *go*), hence as a present participle. Students of the history of English will note that we have here a case of the shifting of functions that is so common in syntax; for the form in *-ing* in this construction was originally a noun, and *a* represents an old preposition.

We rarely find the old preposition *in;* in this case the form in *-ing* must be called a gerund, although it does not really differ in function from the preceding examples.

---

tical in meaning to *working* which could be substituted for it, and would seem to be most naturally interpreted as a participle.

> Looking upwards, a furze-cutter would have been inclined to continue work; looking down, he would have decided to finish his faggot and go home. Hardy, Return of the Native I ch. 1.

1) Hence also the weak stress on *go* and the strong stress on the forms in *-ing*.

The Palais Richelieu was at this time in building.
Stanley Weyman, Red Robe.
The two boys were again in grappling with each other.
Pett Ridge, Thanks to Sanderson.

599. These cases show that the difficulty of distinguishing between the gerund and the present participle i.e. between the verbal noun and the verbal adjective, is partly due to the fact that nouns and adjectives sometimes have the same or similar functions. But the gerund and participle can often be distinguished even though they serve to express the same meaning.

(Upon) hearing this I looked at him.
Lorna Doone ch. 21 p. 131.

The similarity in function between gerund and participle is also shown by the fact that the past participle is occasionally found in the same function as a gerund as in the following quotations. See also the chapter on *Sentence-Structure (Attributive Adjuncts)*.

Mind, surely, would triumph over muscle. A victory would justify the money lavished upon her education.
Vachell, Spragge p. 171.
Now chafing at his own great self denied.
Tennyson, Aylmer's Field.

600. It may finally be noted that in general (or abstract) statements the unrelated participle (*strictly speaking*, etc.) may have the same function as the unrelated infinitive (*To speak the truth*, etc.) [1]). But in legal language the infinitive

---

1) The unrelated past participle is less common than the present participle; but see 572. The Oxford Dict. s.v. *grant* notes that 'The imperative mood, the pres. pple. (used *absol.*) and the pa. pple. often introduce an adverbial (concessive) clause." Compare also:

Broadly judged the good outweighs, by far, the evil of the change.
Times.

is used, e.g. in wills, because the infinitive with *to* can better refer to future time. For a similar use of the imperative, see 222 f.

Auxiliaries

601. Some verbs have no meaning at all, but serve some grammatical function. Such are the verb *to have* when used to form a perfect tense, and *to be* when used to form a passive voice. Other verbs have some meaning although no independent meaning, e.g. *will* when expressing repetition, or *may* when expressing possibility.

These verbs are called auxiliaries.

602. We can distinguish auxiliaries:

1. of tense (*to have, to be, shall, will*).
2. of aspect (*to be*).
3. of mood and modality (*to do, to let, shall, will, may*).
4. of voice (*to be*).
5. of substitution (*to do*).
6. of periphrasis (*to do*).

Besides these auxiliaries there are some verbs that are occasionally used in the same function. They have been discussed in the respective sections on tense, aspect, and voice.

As we speak of an emphatic mood we must call *to do* an auxiliary of mood rather than of modality, also *to have, to be, shall,* and *will* when used in the emphatic mood.

603. Some verbs like *can* and *must* might be considered to have an independent meaning of their own. But they are really rather adjuncts to the following verb of full meaning (*I can write more neatly than that*). This subordination in meaning is often shown by the phonetic weakening of the verb (37 ff. and 320). Compare also 295.

These verbs show, besides, grammatical peculiarities that prove their close relation to the auxiliaries. For they generally

do not take the auxiliary *to do* in negative sentences with *not*, and in cases of inversion or of repetition of the auxiliary. They have also special forms in connection with *not* (27 ff.).

For these reasons we speak of a seventh class of auxiliaries: those of predication. Such auxiliaries are *can, to dare, to have, to let, may, must, need, ought, shalt* and *will.*

It is also convenient[1]) to include among the auxiliaries the copula *to be* (not the other copulas).

Preterites of Auxiliaries

604. The preterites of auxiliaries are used in the same cases as the preterites of verbs of full meaning (see the sections on the tenses). But the preterites of some auxiliaries are also used modally in cases that the preterites of verbs of full meaning cannot be so used. Some of these preterites are exclusively modal.

605. The preterites of the auxiliaries of modality and predication *could, might, should, would* are used in the principal clause of a hypothetical statement (*a*). We also find *must, need,* and *ought* in this function, and the preterite *had* in connection with a comparative (*better, rather*) or a superlative (*best*); see also 117 ff. on the pluperfect. The construction is also used to give a mild form to a statement (*b*); see further the sections on these auxiliaries.

a. "L'état c'est moi," observed the Roi Soleil, and certainly he could have added with equal truth, "Le Palais c'est moi."

Anyone might see that he is not well.

Minnie would have hidden it for the moment, until she was able to return home; but it could not be hidden.

Phillpotts, Beacon II ch. 4.

There were few passers in the Rue St. Antoine; and our party, which earlier in the day must have attracted notice and a crowd, crossed unmarked. Weyman, Red Robe.

1) It should be understood that the question whether a verb is to be counted among the auxiliaries is one of grammatical convenience.

If there were no domestic servants each of us must wait upon his own bodily needs. Daily News.

You had better consult a doctor.

b. Might I trouble you for a subscription, however small? Could you tell me the way to A?

The modal preterites refer to the present time. Past time is indicated by a perfect infinitive.

606. The preterites *could*, *should*, *did*, and *had* (whether used as a verb of full meaning or as an auxiliary of the pluperfect), may be used in adverb clauses of condition without a conjunctive word.

Imagine the feelings of Addison, could his shade revisit the earth, gazing down upon what once were the fields and woods of his "Old Kensington." Escott, England I 132.

Should fortune favour us, we may hope to drive the enemy still further back. Times W. 9/3, 17.

As [Bohun] lay there he thought of what he would do did Markovitch really go off his head.

Walpole, Secret City p. 404.

Had Mr. Redmond not been detained in Ireland by critical sittings of the Irish Convention, he too would have been directly consulted. Times W. 11/1, 18.

Had the greatest critics always power to make men love and admire that which they loved and admired, then Congreve were assuredly one of his country's favourites.

Times Lit. 4/10, 23.

607. In literary English the preterites of some auxiliaries, chiefly *could* and *might*, are used after interjections, to express an *idle wish*. If the wish concerns the present the present infinitive is used; if it concerns the past the perfect infinitive follows. The pluperfect is also used in this way. Note the inversion of the subject (*a*); there is no inversion when there is an introductory that (*b*). The subjunctive *were* is used in the same way : 232.

a. O might my love that in one heart has found
Such hope to cherish, and such joy to sound,
O might it grow....
Till in its clear profound
Part of thy peace were seen. L. Binyon, A Prayer.
Ah! could I control
These vague desires, these leaping flames of the soul:
Could I but quench the fire, ah! could I stay
My soul that flieth, alas, and dieth away!
R. Bridges, Prometheus the Firegiver 1477 ff.

b. O that we too might stand
Amid unrustling reeds,
That banner with dark plumes the shadowy strand!
. . . . . .
O that we too might glide
With eager eyes and happy lips a-quiver
Into the mist that veils the further side!
Gibson, Waters of Lethe.

She cried aloud "O that I had seen his face!"
Hardy, Return of the Native II ch. 2.

608. The auxiliaries are used without an accompanying verb of full meaning when the latter is mentioned in the preceding, or in the next clause. See also 624 f.

I could tell you but I won't.

Mr. C. could have said all he has much better if he had not wrapped it up in so many words. Athenaeum, 21/12, 12.

From the age of Milton to that of Wesley, puritanism, to all appearance, had been struck out of art, as it had out of the brilliant superficial life of the world.
Cambridge Hist. of Lit X, 1.

I don't think we could get a cart from Lymington to the cottage, although we can a horse perhaps.
Marryat, Children of the New Forest.

They stand where they ought not.
Oxford and Camb: Rev. no 16 p. 66.

The public opinion of his country wanted to know why he did not go to office daily, as his father had before him.

If she would, she could be useful. Kipling, Day's Work.

If you can without fatigue, dear, do come down to dinner to-day. Gaskell, Wives III p. 258.

609. The repetition of the auxiliary of a preceding sentence gives rise to some constructions that are worth discussing in some detail [1]).

Confirmative Questions

610. Both the auxiliary and the subject of a preceding statement are repeated in the form of a question, so that the two sentences form one, serving to invite the person addressed to express his agreement with the statement. Either the question or the statement is negative, never both. It should be remembered that such words as *hardly*, *scarcely*, *only* are considered to make a sentence negative.

John can do it, cannot he?

John cannot do it, can he?

You had rather a disturbed night, did not you [2])?

Cassel's Magazine of Fiction.

He need not go there, need he?

"I told you down the Embankment," Michael shouted through the trap [3]).

"I cannot go down the Embankment before I gets there, can I, sir?" the cabman answered reproachfully.

Sinister Street p. 837.

"Well, of course," Lord Lippington said seriously, "here in the house we hardly want it, do we?"

Cotes, Cinderella ch. 19.

We only played there for a few minutes, did we, Lucy?

Sympathetic Questions

611. When both statement and question are positive (*a*) or both negative (*b*), we have a

1) When there is no auxiliary the verb *to do* is used. It is convenient to include this case.

2) Note the auxiliary.

3) i. e. in the roof of the cab.

construction that is almost identical in form but differs considerably in meaning. It is not really interrogative but expresses the speaker's interest in the statement. The construction may express a friendly interest or surprise ; it may also be ironical. These feelings are shown by the context and, chiefly, by the intonation.

The construction also differs from the one discussed in 610 in that the statement is made on the ground of the words or the attitude of the person addressed. Hence we have essentially the same construction when the question follows on the statement by the first speaker (*c*).

a. So you are back from Norway, are you? — Yes.
Sweet, Element. no. 71.

"I thought it too good to be true when Edwin heard it from Mr. Biffen...." "Oh, Biffen told you, did he?"
Gissing, New Grub Street ch. 6.

"Any boy would love his grandfather," continued Lord Fauntleroy, "especially one that has been as kind to him as you have been."

Another queer gleam came into the old nobleman's eyes.

"Oh!" he said, "I have been kind to you, have I?"

"Yes," answered Lord Fauntleroy brightly.
Lord F. Gruno ed.. p. 97.

"Why," said Fauntleroy, "she has been thinking about me all the morning, and I have been thinking about her."

"Oh!" said the Earl, "You have, have you? Ring the bell!"
ib. p. 119 [1]).

"You are acquainted with Miss Jane Fairfax, sir, are you?" said Mr. Woodhouse, always the last to make his way in conversation. Jane Austen, Emma, end of ch. 23.

b. "Oh, oh! The bishop wouldn't like it — wouldn't he?"
Trollope, Framley p. 23.

(Casual angler who has left the packing of impedimenta to boy) "Haven't seen no rod, haven't you? What the deuce do you think I was going to catch fish with then? Punch.

---

1) Note that no answer is expected.

c. "Oh!" said Cedric, "that's like the President."
"Is it?" said Mr. Havisham.
Little Lord, p. 34 (also ib. p. 36, 151).
"The bishop, for instance, must attend the House."
"Must he?" asked Mrs. Grantley, as though she were not at all well informed with reference to this branch of a bishop's business. Frollope, Framley Parsonage, p. 168 (ib. p. 157).
"You have been wonderfully good to him."
"Have I?" The faint colour rose to her cheek.
Tale of a Lonely Parish, p. 73.
"Darling boy, it's a fairy tale."
"Is it?" he said doubtfully.
Compton Mackenzie, Sinister Street, p. 18.
"You are trying to fidget me into a passion." "Am I?" said Mrs. Gresham, standing opposite to a big bowl..."
Trollope, Framley P., p. 369.
"Now, I like this kind of thing, once in a way."
"Do you?" said Frank, in a tone that was almost savage.
Trollope, Dr. Thorne, Everyman Series, p. 211.

612. Sometimes we find the order of a declarative sentence (*a*). In negative sentences there is regularly inversion (*b*). See the chapter on *Wordorder*.

a. Baron. Nay, Sir, we think him a little reserved.
Duke. You do, now? Hope, Swaen I p. 28.
"I even know a girl who lives in a flat."
She sat up in surprise. "You do?"
"I do," he assured her. Wharton, House of Mirth p. 4 f.
b. Perhaps they wouldn't be earls if they knew any better," said Cedric, feeling some vague sympathy for their unhappy condition.
"Wouldn't they!" said Mr. Hobbs. "They just glory in it. It's in d'em. They're a bad lot." Burnett, Fauntleroy.

Compare the two quotations from Bennett's *Grand Babylon Hotel:*

"It won't do any good."

"Won't it?" repeated Racksole, with a sudden flash. ch. 11.

"I happened to see Jules to-day."

"You did!" Racksole remarked with much calmness. "Where?" ch. 21.

613. In both constructions (610 and 611) a second person with *will* is generally repeated by *will* (*a*), but also by *shall* (*b*). In the first person it is also possible to use both *will we* and *shall we* in the enclitic question, but only *shall I* (*c*).

a. "You'll tell me when there is any news, dear boy, won't you?" "Indeed I will. Or suppose I tell you now — Nolly has told about me and Janey Spencer — isn't it?[1])" "That's the ticket..." Morgan, Vance ch. 28 p. 268 f.

b. You will like to play, shan't you?

Eliot, Mill on the Floss VI ch. 7.

"You will not be afraid to stop in this house," she asked contemptuously, "and go on bathing Miss Hale's forehead, shall you? I shall not be ten minutes away."

Gaskell, North and South ch. 22.

c. Some day we too will come, will we not, to greet the sun on May-Day? Barbara.

"By Gad, what a glorious night," sighed Guy, staring out at the orchard. "We'll take a walk, shall we?"

Sinister Street p. 765.

We will be ready in a quarter-of-an-hour, shall we not, Mrs. Proudie? Trollope, Framley ch. 6.

"Did you count the number of seconds between the lightning and the thunder?"

"No."

"We will next time, shall we?"

---

1) Here *isn't it* seems to be used for *hasn't he.* But *isn't it* may refer to the speaker's thought: *that is in your mind.* In Eleanor Glyn, *When the Hour came* (p. 10) we find: "You think so too, isn't it?" But the speaker is specially called "a foreigner."

We would love to keep you, wouldn't we, Graham?
Cotes, Cinderella ch. 13.

c. I'll call the boys, shall I?

Compare also the following.

"You'll be just a counter in the game, no doubt."
"Shall I? Not much! I play my own games. You ought to know that." Phillpotts, Forest on the Hill ch. 2.
"I shall speak to him first."
"Oh no, you won't."
"Shan't I? You'll see." Bennett, Leonora ch. 7.

Appended Statements **614.** The repetition of auxiliary and subject may serveto emphasize the speaker's conviction of the truth of the statement. In the two preceding constructions the subject is repeated in the form of a pronoun; in this one the real subject is generally announced by a personal pronoun in the first statement, and expressed fully in the form of a noun in the second statement. As the noun-subject in this construction is emphatic, it has end-position.

My father had a kind heart, and there was snow on the ground that night. He could not turn her off, and she's done well by us, has Betsy. English Rev. 1914.
She's a dear, good woman, is my aunt de Courcy.
Trollope, Dr. Thorne, p. 192.
It is very gay, is Lacville on Sunday night.
Mrs. Belloc-Lowndes, Chink in the Armour (Tauchnitz), p. 34.
He's interested is George in all beasts and birds.
Vachell, Spragge's Canyon, p. 81.
Never saved a cent, did old Don Juan. ib. p. 16 v.
They're keen, are ghosts. New Numbers I, 14.
"He will have his joke, will the doctor!" Constance smiled, in a brighter world. Bennett, Old W. Tale IV ch. 3 § 2.

615. When the repeated subject is a pronoun it precedes the verb (*a*); the same order is occasionally found in the case of noun-subjects (*b*).

a. You look full of sense, you do.
Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 18.
Come on surprisingly, you have. Vachell, Quinneys'.
b. She takes hold of housework better than I do, Hannah does. Wiggin, Rebecca ch. 1.
Thinks things out for herself, Barbara does — surprises you sometimes. Cotes, Cinderella ch. 22.

616. The construction is sometimes found in combination with an emphatic tense.

He never did care for the river, did Montmorency.
Jerome, Three Men in a Boat ch. 1.

617. The three cases discussed above are sometimes found in consecutive sentences.

"What's this I hear about Roger?" said Mr. Gibson, plunging at once into the subject. "Aha! so you've heard, have you? It's famous, isn't it? He's a boy to be proud of, is old Roger..." Gaskell, Wives II p. 210.

Confirmative Statements

618. We also find repetition of auxiliary and subject to confirm a preceding statement. Positive statements are referred to by *so* (*a*); in the case of negative ones the confirmatory sentence opens with *no more* (*b*). See 1036 ff.

a. "Why, we've forgotten to call on Miss Mitchell!" "So we have. But it doesn't much matter; she would be sure to say she wasn't at home." Sweet, Element. no. 70.
"Someone told me you went to France with your brother." "So I did." ib. no. 73.
"But they told me that Lord Brock had sent for him yesterday."
"So he did, and Harold was with him backwards and forwards all the day." Trollope, Framley Parsonage, p. 170.
b. "Harriet, my dear, you've gone too far — we had no right to pry into Mr. Preston's private affairs."
"No more I had," said Lady Harriet.
Gaskell, Wives III p. 134.

"He thought you had no wish to see him."
"No more I have." White, Mr. John Strood ch. 8.

619. *So* and *no more* are, naturally, not used when the predicate is more or less fully repeated.

"He seems to be a very mature little fellow," Mr. H. said to the mother.
"I think he is, in some things," she answered.
Little Lord, p. 30.
"I cannot do it." "I am sure you cannot."

Denials **620.** We also find repetition of the auxiliary and subject to deny a preceding statement. In this case no connecting *so* or *no more* is used.

"And now you are angry with me," said Miss D.
"No, I am not."
"Oh, but you are . . ." Trollope, Framley Parsonage, p. 368.
"One of us has got a sunstroke," he exclaimed.
"No," returned Cedrie, "we have not." Little Lord, p. 18.
Cedric thought she had come to buy some sugar, perhaps, but she had not. ib. p. 13.
Mrs. C. Oh, I shall faint.
Bertha. No, you won't. But Martha will very soon if she continues to be fed at this preposterous rate.
Van Doorn, Dramatic Conversations, p. 49.

New Subject **621.** Repetition of a preceding auxiliary is also used to apply the preceding predicate to a new subject. In the case of positive sentences there is an introductory *so* (*a*); in the case of negative sentences we find *no more*, *neither*, *nor*. See also 1036 ff.

"I feel as if I had had enough walking for one day."
"So do I." Sweet, Element. no. 70.
"I am quite satisfied," said Juley quietly.
"Of course you are," Rose snubbed her cousin. "So would anybody be." Meredith, Harrington ch. 16.

"An earl is — is a very important person," he began.
"So is a president!" put in Ceddie. Little Lord, p. 34.

As there are anomalies in every history, so there is a history for every anomaly. Our constitution is full of such, so are our time-honoured customs, our laws and liturgy, our territorial divisions, our language written and spoken.
Stubbs, Lectures p. 1.

Mrs. Proudie was an imperious woman; but then so also was Lady Lufton. Trollope, Framley P. ch. 7.

He has no ground of complaint; neither have I.
Mr. Asquith, reported *Times* 29,7, 15.

"I can't make out how it has come about." "No more can I."
Gaskell, Wives III p. 151.

"I will try to speak to him myself if you like, but I don't feel that much good will come of it." "No more do I, Doctor, to say the truth." Morgan, Vance ch. 23.

Compare also the following example without any auxiliary.

"I never thought," she exclaimed, "that the Westminster House of Commons could be so cheerful." "Nor I."
Cotes, Cinderella ch. 11.

Answers to Disjunctive Questions

622. It is hardly necessary to say that the auxiliary is also repeated in the answer to a disjunctive question.

"Do you think you could do it?" he asked gruffly.
"I *think* I could," said Cedric.
Burnett, Fauntleroy p. 87.

"Do I look a great object?"
"Well, you do rather." Sweet, Element. no. 62.

623. It may be stated that the above list of cases of repetition of the auxiliary is not, and is not meant to be, exhaustive. They are the most important cases from a syntactic point of view. Some of these sentences will be examined with regard to their structure in the chapter on *Sentence-structure*.

624. The auxiliary is occasionally used as an independent verb. In this case it is nearly always a verb of motion that is implied. This usage is now limited to literary (archaic) English, and even there it is rare.

> Wherefore let us to our story, the froth being out of the bottle. Meredith, Diana of the Crossways p. 17.
>
> He must away; the carefully-worded wire [1])
> Heralds his advent, warns his anxious sire.
> Gilbert Frankau, One of Us II, 31 (p. 23).
>
> We must to Deutschland, *Deutschland über alles.*
> ib. II, 1 (p. 25).

625. In imitation of the phrase *Truth will out* we also find others, like the following.

> The tendency to be "smart" is kept under restraint, though epigrams will occasionally out.
> Millar, Mid-eighteenth Century p. 36.
>
> I tremble here at what I am going to say in this company of Elizabethan scholars, but my conviction will out.
> G. Murray, Essays III 25.
>
> Nay, his wickedness will out even in his contents table.
> Times Lit. 15/10, 14.
>
> One of the authors is French and the other English; and in war race-characteristics, like murder (and other "atrocities"), will out. ib. 27/4, 16.

To Be

626. Before discussing the auxiliary *to be* it may be useful to mention some other uses of the verb.

It is used:

1. to express *to exist (a); to happen (b); to go (c).*

> *a.* Tyrants and sycophants have been and are.
> There are photographs and photographs.
>
> *b.* The flower-show was last week.

1) Viz. by the headmaster, expelling the boy.

c. I have been to see Mr. J.
Have you been to the Crystal Palace?
I had been to see Irving that night.

Note that *to be* in the meaning mentioned under *c* is followed by a noun, or by an infinitive, with *to*, and occurs only in the perfect tenses. The present and preterite are not used in this sense, but express an arrangement (see 629).

2. with an adverb or prepositional phrase, to state *where* or *how* a person or thing is.

Your book is in your study.
"How is Mrs. Smith?" — "Very well, thank you."

3. with an adjective or a noun.

The work is very satisfactory.
He is a clever workman.

627. The question what is the function of *to be* in the above cases is sometimes difficult to answer. In the cases under 1 it closely resembles a verb of full meaning, less so in those under 2; it is clearly a copula in the third case. But in sentences like those under 1*c*, the verb *to be* might be considered to be a copula construed with an infinitive of purpose, very similar to the use of *to be* in 629.

628. *To be* is used as an auxiliary:

1. with a past participle to form the passive voice, see 261 ff.; or the perfect tenses, see 108 ff.

2. with a present participle to form the progressive, see 185 ff.

629. The present tense and the preterite of *to be* are also used with *to* and an infinitive (active or passive), to express an arrangement.

The arrangement may be:

1. an agreement made between two or more persons.

We were to meet at 5 under the Big Clock at the Station; we promised each other to be punctual.

If we are to be down before nine we shall have to be quick; and we ought to, for we have a lot of work to do.

Normandy was to be invaded on each side.

Freeman, Norman Conquest.

2. an arrangement made by one person for another.

The construction often expresses mere futurity.

With the verb in the second person (or in interrogative sentences in the first person) it is often equivalent to a command, for it states the thing to be done as something settled, about which discussion is not to be thought of.

The arrangement or command may proceed from the speaker (in interrogative sentences from the person spoken to), or from a third person.

In reported speech, *to be* may express a command from the subject of the principal clause.

Here is the plan I had made. A strong party under Sapt's command was to steal up to the door of the *château*. If discovered prematurely, they were to kill any one who found them — with their swords, for I wanted no noise of firing. If all went well, they would be at the door when Johann opened it. They were to rush in and secure the servants if their mere presence and the use of the king's name were not enough. At the same moment — and on this hinged the plan — a woman's cry was to ring out loud and shrill from Antoinette de Mauban's chamber . . . Hope, Zenda.

Large sums are now being spent on educational developments, and still larger sums are to be spent in the near future.

Times Ed. S. 25/9, 19.

(*Master to servant*): "You are to go to Mr. B. first, and then take these letters to the post."

"Write, Tom." — "What am I to write, father?"

I said you were to write the letter before you might go out.

You said I was to write the letter before I might go out, but how could I when I had no note-paper?

Remember the last thing papa told us at the window, Herbert: we were to keep our mouths closed and to breathe through our noses. Allen, Doctor's Christmas Eve.

In the New Year of 1914 Oswald was to take Peter to Russia for three weeks.

Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 11 § 19.

3. an arrangement in which the acting persons are rather vaguely thought of, or not at all.

Two papers by Ouida, which have been held over by express agreement until her death, are to appear in an early number of *Lippincott's Magazine*.

It was felt even then that a remedy of some kind would have to be found, if the empire was not to drift upon the rocks [1]).

630. The preterite of this construction sometimes expresses destiny.

Of the men who were to illustrate the Victorian age, only one or two had given earnest of their powers.

Forster-Gissing p. 49.

The year 1917 in Canada was full of great events, which were to determine the share that Canada should take in the future prosecution of the war. Times W. 4/1, 18.

A similar meaning is expressed by the construction with *to be destined*.

With Sydenham was an able young subaltern, Muir, the only other white man of the party. In that net of rivers, marsh and forest they were destined to spend some feverish months. Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 6 § 1.

631. The construction sometimes expresses what should be (*a*) or what can be (*b*).

a. Whether the story of Gottfried Plattner is to be credited or not is a pretty question in the value of evidence.

Wells, Country p. 204.

---

1) Compare the last instance of 629, 1, and also 632.

Meanwhile the critical party were by no means agreed among themselves as to the theory which was to take the place of the traditional theory. Times Lit. 22/2, 18.

Johnson's resolute insistance on life and reason, not learning or ingenuity, as the standard by which books are to be judged.

Both editor and contributors are to be congratulated on the performance of a great task.

Such answers are not be called rude when the rudeness, if such there be, is only one ingredient in a compound of which the principal parts are humour and felicity.

'What was one to do,' exclaimed Mrs. Fyne with almost comic exasperation. Conrad, Chance.

The construction is most likely to be regarded as elliptical.

b. How are we to know that you are not one of the enemy's spies? Buchanan, Winter Night ch. 8.

But how was I to gain admission to the house?
Weyman, Red Robe ch. 2.

How are we to get rid of this distinction we have made between the artist and the tradesman? How are we to recover for the artist the virtues of the craftsman and for the craftsman the virtues of the artist?
Times Lit. 15/6, 16.

London is not to be loved at first sight. You must get to know her. ib. 23/3, 16.

It seems that possibility is chiefly expressed in negative and interrogative sentences, as in all the cases above. But this meaning is also found in affirmative sentences. See also 429.

The twins were to be distinguished by their voices.

632. Sometimes it is difficult to decide whether duty, obligation or possibility is expressed, especially in conditional clauses. See also the last instance of 629, 1 and of 629, 3.

The experiment is one requiring many talents in the writer if success is to be ensured. Athenaeum 14/3, 1908.

But if this charge is to be rebutted it is time for Churchmen

to realize that the proposal for compromise should come from them. Pilot 17/10, 1903

The transitory mental aberration of Sidney Davidson, remarkable enough in itself, is still more remarkable if Wade's explanation is to be credited. Wells, Country p. 87.

We need to be equally frank in recognizing the existing drawbacks in the connexion between Church and State if we are to find a remedy for them. Times Lit. 11/1, 18.

633. Although *to be* in this construction is treated here as an auxiliary (of predication) it is evident that the meanings described are really due to the infinitive with *to*. Hence the infinitive with *to* is found with the same meanings after other copulas or words of full meaning. See also 351, and 665.

His language is substantially the ordinary literary English of his day, and he falls therefore to be considered among English authors. Chambers's Cyclopaedia of Engl. Lit.

(This) seemed to him the greatest danger that remains to be encountered by the Anglo-Saxon race.

Times Lit. 8/6, 16.

The execution leaves much to be desired.

634. *To be* is distinctly a copula in such sentences as *It is easy to do.*

Compare also:

She was by no means bad to look at.

That question was not easy to answer.

The puma never should be attempted single-handed, for it is so hard to kill.

But occasionally this construction is mixed with the preceding one so that the passive infinitive is used: *It is not easy to be done.*

To say what in her judgment was best to be done.

Rev. of Rev., Febr. 1901, p. 113/2.

635. We rarely find other forms of *to be* than the present tense and the preterite. See 626, 1.

But he could have followed, even guided only by the scattered pursuing units that came from far behind him, endowed with a mysterious knowledge (acquired Heaven knows how) that there was a fight, and that it would be to be found (if not too late) acrost [1]) the Gas-gardens on some land with a board up. de Morgan, Vance, ch. 1.

Can and Could

Ability or fitness **636.** *Can, could* expresses all kinds of ability or capability, power, or fitness.

He can do the work very well if he chooses.

Such language can do no good to the cause.

You can take a horse to the water but you cannot make him drink (*Proverb*).

The king can declare war and make peace.

In the year 1852 Livingstone made up his mind to strike into the interior, and find a healthy station which could become a centre for missionary work.

I tried to do the work but I could not; it is too difficult.

637. A special case of this function of *can* is its use to denote that a quality which a person or thing naturally possesses, appears now and then; see 765 ff.

Personality can be irresistible. Vachell, Quinneys' p. 286.

I am merely telling you all this to prove to you how silly a girl can be if she attaches too much importance to sentiment. Hobbes, Some Emotions I ch. 6.

"I used to be rather hot once."

"You could be peppery, my lady."

Meredith, Harrington ch. 28 p. 292.

(The story is a sad one). The question arises, Was this sadness inherent to the temperament of the man who in his private correspondence and conversation could be gay, humorous, and sometimes overflowing with high spirits?

Athenaeum.

---

1) Dialectal form of *across*.

Yet Jane Austen can be tart enough — insipidity is the last accusation which can be raised against her — only her gift of kindly humour prevents her from ever becoming shrewish. Lady Sackville.

638. The preterite *could* with a present infinitive may be modal or not. With a perfect infinitive it is always modal [1]).

Modal *could* when used in the headclause of a hypothetical statement (*I could finish it now if I cared to*) is equivalent to the preterite future *I should be able.* But when modal *could* is used to express a request (605), the preterite future is not possible. On the other hand, modal *could* does not serve when future time must be expressed, in subordinate clauses: *He expected that he would be able to finish it by eight o'clock.*

Possibility **639.** *Can, could* may also express possibility due to circumstances (*a*), especially in sentences that are more or less clearly negative in meaning (*b*). On *could* see 638.

a. We can expect opposition from vested interests. Times 16/3, 16, p. 9/2.

He looked round him in every direction. "I could swear that was Bellows. Why don't you show yourself like a a man, Bellows?" Wells, Country p. 89.

The book is a real contribution to our knowledge of historical Syntax, and we can look forward with interest to that larger work which M. Courmont promises us in his preface. H. T. Price, Beibl. z. Anglia 23.

Mr. Utterson thought he had never seen that part of London so deserted. He could have wished it otherwise; never in his life had he been conscious of so sharp a wish to see and touch his fellow-creatures. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll p. 67.

---

1) The same applies to *would*, also to *need*. The preterites *might, ought*, and *should* are modal in either case, apart from indirect style.

See 693, 711, 716, 725, 753 ff.

b. But I don't quite see what he can gain if our Party helps him through with his Bill for the payment of members.
Patterson, Stephen Compton, p. 245.

It is difficult to believe that the novel can have done much to advance these principles. Prof. Boas, Essays II, 48.

It cannot be true what he says. It can hardly be true.

That a new tax should be chosen that will seem to convey such indications is not what Mr. Balfour can desire. Pilot.

I knew it could not be true what he said.

No student of Dryden can fail to mark the force and sweep of an intellect impatient of restraint. Dennis, Age of Pope.

He could not have failed to anticipate — and events have proved that he did not fail to anticipate — the waylayings to which he was subjected. Poe, Select Stories II p. 94.

640. A special case of this meaning is found in interrogative sentences with a strong stress on *can* to express astonishment or impatience. Compare *may* (691).

"Well, Betsy, who is it?'

"Please, Miss, it's Mr. Austen, he wants to speak to Miss Beatrice by herself for a minute; so I've shown him into the library."

"How extraordinary; what *can* he want?"
Sweet, Element. no. 63.

A great poet may tax our brains, but he ought not to puzzle our wits. We may often have to ask with humility 'what *does* he mean?' but not in despair, 'what can he mean?'
Birrel, Obiter Dicta p. 30.

But where could he be at this time, and on such an evening, leaving his supper in this stage of preparation, and his door unfastened? George Eliot, Silas Marner ch. 4.

641. When followed by a passive infinitive *can* is often equivalent to *may*. In the following quotations *can* is used because the writer thinks of the personal subject which is understood. See also the Passive Voice.

Prof. Gregory Smith's proposed classification into periods seems very reasonable though he shows himself alive to the objections which can be urged against it (= which *we* or *scholars* can urge against it). Athenaeum.

He maintains further that the section now under discussion, Books VII.—IX., was the first part of the work that Herodotus wrote, and that when he completed it by adding the other books, he made a few slight changes which can be traced (= which we can trace). ib.

The Government can be excused (i. e. we can excuse the G.) for not being persuaded by arguments inspired by such motives. Daily News, 26/10, 11.

The points of agreement, some of which are on what may be called the major questions for consideration, can first be indicated (i. e. it is convenient first to indicate, etc.). Times, reviewing the majority and minority reports of the Royal Commission on Divorce.

642. We sometimes find both *can* and *may* in the same sentence without any difference of meaning.

The "Independent" can be had of any newsagent in the country or may be obtained direct from the offices.

The whole 27 Volumes can now be had in uniform style and binding for 3 guineas, or any volume may be had separately, price 2/6. Sampson Low, Marston & Co.

The lecture may be bought for 3 pence; and the slides can be had free of charge.

To Dare

643. *Dare* is completely regular (3 p. sing. pres. tense *dare;* preterite *dared)* as a transitive verb, meaning *to venture upon* (*something*), or *to defy* (*a person*).

I saw and felt London at last.. I dared the perils of the crossings.

To range the savage haunts, and dare
In his dark home the sullen bear.

He knew she was daring him to contradict her.

644. When followed by an infinitive without *to* the forms are *dare* in all persons of the present tense, *dared* in the preterite. When followed by an infinitive with *to* the third person singular of the present tense is *dares*, the preterite *dared*. When combined with an auxiliary *dare* is mostly followed by an infinitive with *to*.

1. — dare not go — dare(d) not go
2. — dares to go — dared to go
— does not dare to go — did not dare to go.

1. He dare not say no to anybody.

How dare she come? Sidgwick, Severins p. 219.

And though Sir Ensor Doone is now so old, and growing feeble, his own way he will have still, and no one dare deny him. Lorna Doone ch. 21 p. 130.

She hardly dared put her thoughts into words. Vachell, Spragge p. 190.

As for me, I dared not speculate as to the causes of the affability which shone upon me.

Even to visit his mother's tomb Horace Walpole dared not venture his fairy limbs in the precincts.

He tried to feel content, but he dare not.

Orestes knew well enough that the fellows must have been bribed to allow the theft; but he dare not say so.

2. If he dares to touch me!

He did not dare to meet his uncle.

Florence hardly dared to raise her eyes.

No one would dare to desert.

645. Occasionally the rules given are deviated from. The infinitive without *to* is often found although the forms *dares* (for the present tense), *dare* (without *not*, for the preterite), are used; also when inflected with an auxiliary.

Nature has caprices which art dares not imitate.

What man over thirty dares hope for the Republic before he die?

They positively loathe the woman who dares turn them into ridicule.

And no modern author dare reproduce the lust and rapine, murder, robbery and outrage that characterised the period of which Malory wrote.

There was none dare tell [1]) him that he was childless.

And as to the thing said, there are some who would dare mention the "Appreciations with an Essay on Style" in the same breath as "The English Humourists of the Eighteenth Century."

He did not dare turn his head. Wells, Country p. 228.

Gracious mercy, people will laugh at me so that I shall not dare show my head.

"Mind," in lower tones "don't you dare touch him whilst you're out."

At last we found shelter by the merest chance in the prettiest house in the place — we had not dared inquire there, certain that its room would be taken first of all.

As to the use of *to* before the infinitive it will in many cases be found that the stressed forms of *dare* are followed by an unstressed word, either *not* or *to* or an unstressed pronoun (in questions), or other unstressed syllable (dared *in*quire). If *dare* is unstressed itself the infinitive may follow immediately without *to*.

To Do

646. The auxiliary *to do* is used:

1. as an auxiliary of the emphatic mood; see 250 ff.
2. as an auxiliary of periphrasis.
3. as a substitute for verbs with full meaning.

To do **as an auxiliary of periphrasis**

647. The present and preterite of *to do* are used as an auxiliary of periphrasis in negative

1) Note the form of the preterite. The quotation is from Van Neck, Easy English Prose.

sentences with *not* [1]). As *not* is enclitic (unless emphasized) it must be added to some word; the function of *to do* in this case is to make it possible for *not* to precede the verbal predicate; *to do* further expresses the tense, person (and number) of the verb that follows in the form of an infinitive. It is strong-stressed; compare 649, 658 f.

I do not agree with you.

We did not get home in time.

"This cellar must be roofed, walled, and floored," repeated the archdeacon. "Now mind what I say, and don't let the architect persuade you that it will do!"

Trollope, Barchester Towers.

"Very well then," he concluded triumphantly, "don't let's have so much talk."

Do not you think so too?

He asked if we did not think so too.

Who did not know we were going at 8?

648. It should be noted that a negative sentence with *not* takes *to do* only when *not* qualifies the verbal predicate. The following sentences are affirmative (*a*). The last two are negative, but *not* qualifies the following noun (*b*).

a. I believe I asked him to hold his tongue about them — he says *not* (= *I did not ask*).

The present work has a much wider scope, for it *not only* treats the subject on wider lines, *but also* looks back to predisposing causes, and forward to subsequent developments.

Athenaeum.

Moreover, art and religion exist *not* even *chiefly* for the optimistic, *but* even *more* for the melancholy and dissatisfied.

ib. no. 1.

Sir Norman Lockyer seems *not to recognize* that there are many branches of human endeavour, notably that of history, that of criticism, biblical and other .... ib.

She tried *not to smile.* Meredith.

1) See 259.

"I am afraid we shall find him out." — "I hope not."

b. But Mr. Rhodes gave *not the slightest* indication that such was his desire. Oxf. and Camb. Rev. no. 10.

But at Pisa, where he (i. e. Addison) admires 'the great church, baptistery and leaning tower', and at Rimini, which 'has nothing modern to boast of,' he gives *not a thought* to the tragedies of Ugolino and Francesca.

Edinb. Rev. April 1908.

In none of these sentences is the adverb *not* used to make the inflected verb negative.

Note that the adverb *not* is pronounced with weak stress: [nt] when qualifying the inflected verb, unless emphasis requires a strong stress on *not;* but it is always pronounced [not] when it qualifies another word than the inflected verb.

649. *To do* with weak stress is also used periphrastically when the ordinary order of subject and verb must be inverted (inversion of the subject: see the chapter on the *Order of words).*

What do you want?
Did he speak to you?
Never did mortal suffer what this man has suffered.

650. In all the cases mentioned in 647—9 *to do* is not used with the verb *to be,* neither when a verb is combined with *to have* (auxiliary), *can*, *may*, *must*, *ought*, *shall*, *will.* For *dare* and *need* see 643 ff. and 708 ff. *To let* generally takes *to do;* see 647, but also 685*a*.

Perhaps it is also owing to its function of an auxiliary of aspect (181) that *to come* is used without *to do* in the following quotation.

'How comes he to have stayed?' he mused.

Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 25.

651. In colloquial or careless English we find *to do* used with *ought (a);* its use with *to have* as an auxiliary of

predication (not of tense) cannot be considered incorrect, and is often found in printed English *(b)*.

a. I didn't ought to have done that.

Didn't I ought to shut the door?

b. "I wish you didn't have to go!" he had replied.

J. L. Allen, Choir Invisible.

You don't have to meet your young man on the pier, because there isn't a pier. Bennett, Anna ch. 10 p. 155.

I think I'm glad I don't have to wear a scholar's gown.

Sinister Street p. 509.

So Michael did not have to walk to the station beside a gown that reminded him of Mrs. Walsingham's drawing-room chairs. Sidgwick, Severins ch. 4 p. 43.

He did not have to lift the knocker. Conrad, Chance.

We don't have far to go to the kitchen.

There's one thing I am thankful for; that's that I don't have to wear skirts.

I have got some linen I want to send off laundry rate. Do I have to fill in a form?

652. Instead of *don't have, didn't have* it is more usual to say *haven't got, hadn't got,* not only as an auxiliary of predication, but also in the meaning 'to possess.' See 664, 668; also 171.

I wish you hadn't got to go.

He has not got any money now.

653. The auxiliary *to do* is generally used with the verb *to have* with full meaning.

When do you have breakfast? Sweet, Element. 53.

We don't have many visitors.

Whom did you have for dinner?

Thackeray, Newcomes I ch. 19.

What the precise virtue of this invocation was, we did not have an opportunity of testing.

Benson, Thread of Gold p. 29.

F. T. Bullen did not have the style, the imagination, the passion for involved psychology which characterise the genius of Mr. Conrad. Williams, Modern Engl. Writers p. 393.

"Let me see, you didn't have any golf-clubs, did you, sir?" asked the porter. Sinister Street p. 499.

"So you are back again from Norway, are you?"

"Yes."

"Did you have a good passage?" Sweet, Element. no. 71.

Did Margaret really have a suspicion that he was in love with Pauline? Mackenzie, Guy and Pauline ch. 2 p. 93.

654. It is not used when the object is a permanent possession or attribute.

Has she blue eyes?

He had not a good character [1]).

To do as a substitute

655. The verb *to do* is found as a substitute [2]) for a verb just used, to avoid its repetition.

He used to direct and superintend our games with the strictness that some parents do the studies of their children.

The fourth volume, covering as it does the usual allowance of five plays, now brings the number up to twenty.

Athenaeum.

In connection with this church, one of the most beautifully situated in England, standing, as it does, in a lovely fold of the sheep-cropped downs over the Bristol Channel, we may recall one of Mr. Andrew Lang's happiest poems. ib.

His simple seafaring men pursue their duty, as did the alchemists the philosopher's stone. Times Lit. 7/8, 19.

But serious harm has not yet accrued, and a change should be made before it does. New Statesman 18/1, 19.

"Won't you come into the drawing-room?" she said. And they did, looking rather sheepish.

Haggard, Mr. Meeson ch. 15.

656. On *to do* in the cases that an auxiliary would be repeated, see 608 ff. There is naturally no example of the

1) Bradley, The Making of English, p. 71.

2) A frequent name for this function is *vicarious verb* (*verbum vicarium*). It is convenient to treat of this function of *to do* here, although it is not really an auxiliary, of course.

use of *to do* in the answer to a disjunctive question unless the question itself contained *to do* (see 621).

In the following case *you did* is the emphatic preterite; it does not repeat the preceding auxiliary.

'She's quite capable of having told him herself,' affirmed Fyne with amazing insight. 'But whether or no, *I've* told him.'
'You did? From Mrs. Fyne, of course.' Conrad, Chance. [1])

657. Occasionally no auxiliary is used at all.

Come, Mrs. Anthony, don't let me carry away from here the idea that you are a selfish person, hugging the memory of your past happiness, like a rich man his treasure, forgetting the poor at the gate. Conrad, Chance II 253.

To Do in Literary English

658. In literary English weak-stressed *to do* is frequently used in sentences made negative by *but*. See 647.

The Government has lost several of its members, and the newcomers do but poorly replace those who have gone.
Pilot.

These days of spring which I should be enjoying for their own sake, do but turn me to reminiscence.
Gissing, Ryecroft X.

In choosing *The English Humourists of the Eighteenth Century* as the subject of his first course, he (Thackeray) did but follow the natural bent of his mind.
Whibley, Thackeray, p. 168.

659. Weak-stressed *to do* is used in affirmative sentences:
1. as an archaism in liturgical and legal phraseology.

We praise Thee, o God: we acknowledge thee to be the Lord.

---

1) A quotation from Conrad may be said to afford no proof, as he was a foreigner. I prefer to leave the passage as it stands, however, because I believe it is perfectly natural English. The same applies to the next section.

All the earth doth worship thee, the Father everlasting.
Te Deum.

My lovers and my neighbours did stand looking upon my trouble; and my kinsmen stood afar off. Psalm 38, 11.

2. in verse to obtain an extra syllable.

The flowers she most did love. Longfellow, Reaper and Fl.

A little child, he did begin
The Heaven of Heavens by storm to win;
At eighty years he entered in.
Lionel Johson, Chalkhill (p. 32).

660. In literary English *to do* is often not used in negative sentences with *not*, and in interrogative sentences. Note, however, that in the last quotation the sentence is not necessarily negative, as *not* may be understood to qualify the words immediately following (*of acts of violence, of the secret death*); see 647 f.

There, Raleigh shone; there, toiled Franciscan feet;
There, Johnson flinched not, but endured alone.
Lionel Johnson, Oxford (p. 33).

Poor Ermyntrude, what cared you for their cricket,
Who knew not which was umpire, which was wicket!
Gilbert Frankau, One of Us II, 6 (p. 15).

He himself had always known his own mind, and had let others know it, too; reminding his wife that she was an impracticable woman, who knew not her own mind, and devoting his lawful gains to securing the future of his progeny.
Galsworthy, Fraternity, p. 25.

"All lotteries," says a daily paper, "are illegal in this country, and no announcements concerning them are allowed to appear in our columns." How comes it then that our contemporary permits itself to publish marriage announcements? [1])
Punch, 20/11, 12.

Everything was very quiet. The clock, for one, was not in a hurry. Its tick showed that Time rests not — but hastes not.

1) Compare 650.

I speak not of acts violence or murder, or of processes which, though clothed under legal form, were without precedent in our history. I speak not of the secret death of Henry the Sixth or of the open execution of Charles the First. I speak of the regular process of the Law. Freeman, Growth of the English Constitution.

661. A negative verb without *to do* is usual, also in colloquial English, in some stereotyped adverbial or parenthetic phrases, such as *I know not how, I doubt not, if I mistake not.*

It had, I know not why, the mysterious air of romance all about it. Benson, Thread of Gold, p. 31.

I had a vague sense of a duty overlooked — I knew not what. Wells, Country p. 165.

Nature is wise in her young children, though they wot not of it [1]), and are always trying to rush away from her. Meredith, Harrington ch. 34 p. 364.

(She) seemed to thirst to make him show his qualities, and excel, and shine. Billiards or jumping, or classical acquirements, it mattered not — Evan must come first. Meredith, ib. ch. 20 p. 207.

To Have

662. The auxiliary *to have* is used with the past participle of verbs to form what are called the perfect tenses.

663. In other functions the verb *to have* may be considered an auxiliary of predication, but approaches the character of a verb with full meaning. It is used with an infinitive with *to*, expressing a duty or a necessity imposed by circumstances.

I had to send it off before I had finished with it.

I have to write several letters.

In October the expedition sailed, but it had to make its way against adverse winds.

1) This is distinctly literary.

You have not surely to be reminded that it hurts them.
Meredith, Beauchamp ch. 27 p. 245.

It may have been worth while to pay the price for the new greatness of poetry that came in with the nineteenth century; but it is at any rate right to remember that there was a price, and that it has had to be paid. Bailey, Johnson.

664. Instead of *to have* we also find *to have got*, especially in colloquial English. See 171.

It is no good to put the work off any longer; you know you have got to do it.

665. If *to have* is followed by an object [1]) that is qualified by an infinitive with *to*, it is usually still more clearly a verb of full meaning.

The ice arrived by motor-cycle just before her watch began. It was some comfort to have that definite thing to see to.
Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 29 p. 373.

Ursula was happy to have somebody to look after.
Sinister Street p. 624.

(The Englishman), too, has a national ideal to set against the German. Edinb. Rev. April 1915.

In Henry I. Anselm had another kind of man to deal with.
Gardiner and Mullinger, Introd. p. 52.

Of Wake, Archbishop from 1716 to 1737, Mr. Rowden, as is right, has nothing but good to say. Times Lit. 16/3, 16.

The relation of the infinitive to the noun is the same as that of the infinitive after *to be* (629 ff.): in the first two quotations it expresses arrangement or necessity; in the third, possibility; etc.

666. Sometimes this construction is contrasted with the one discussed in 663.

1) The question in what sense the noun or pronoun in this construction and in the similar ones with a plain infinitive or participle can be considered as an object, is discussed in the sections on the *Accusative with Infinitive* (296 ff. and 352 ff.). See also 342.

She had never expressed an opinion, and the inference was that she had no opinion to express.

Princess Priscilla's Fortn. 6.

There are two kinds of speeches; there is the speech which a man makes when he has something to say, and the speech... when he has to say something.

Such practised speakers as Dr. W. and Sir Lewis D. who had something to say which the Congress manifestly wanted to hear, had just cause of complaint. Pilot.

667. In other cases the difference between the two constructions is very small (*a*). Occasionally they may be considered as identical in meaning (*b*). The latter is the case when the infinitive expresses the relation of arrangement or necessity (see 665).

a. Towards the solution of this question the present Dublin Week [1]) has a valuable lesson to contribute.

Times W. 29/8, 13.

'I have a favour to ask,' I stammered desperately.

Weyman, Red Robe ch. 1.

For criticism has also its part to play.

Times Lit. 9/12, 15.

b. We had some miles to drive, even from the small station.

Shorthouse, Inglesant, ch. 1.

I have several letters to write to-night.

What the state of our knowledge of the boy's home means is that he had his own way to make. Times Lit. 7/5, 14.

668. When the object has front-position, as in adjective clauses (with a relative pronoun or without) and in interrogative sentences, the wordorder does not show whether it is the object of *to have* or of the infinitive with *to*. In such cases the context only decides which construction is meant. See 675.

---

1) i. e. The Dublin Horse Show.

Such was the story which Commander Evans had to tell, and it stirred the sympathetic admiration of his hearers.

Times W. 23,5, 13.

The only suggestion we have to make about this and similar good plans in other volumes is that they well merit a canvas lining, or else should be placed in a cover-pocket.

Athenaeum, 4,1, 13.

What I have to say is not for other ears.

Vachell, Quinneys' p. 194.

Annie heard the General's voice reply: 'Let her come in at once".... "Well, my little girl," said the General, "I am General Cornwallis [1]); what have you to say to me?" — "I want my cow."

In the last quotation the sentence with *to have* means *'What is it that you wish (want) to say to me?'* But the question *'What have you to say now?'* might also be put by a mother wishing a child to repeat a message she had given it. In that case *to have* would express the meaning treated of in 663.

In both cases *to have got* may also be used:

Mother: "What have you got to say now?"
What have you got to say for yourself?

669. There is no double construction when the noun- or pronoun-object is negative.

I have no letters to write to-night.
She had no suggestion to offer.
We had nothing to say to each other.
The English Protestants had no help to expect from their brethren on the Continent.

Gardiner and Mullinger, Introd. p. 116.

She seems respectable, and she does her work systematically. I have no fault to find with her, none whatever.

Baring-Gould, Swaen I p. 1.

1) Annie had asked to see the General.

The drinking public in general took no notice, but went on as before; they made compulsory restriction inevitable, and had only themselves to thank for it.

Times Lit. 25/1, 18.

670. The infinitive in this construction may also have its subject expressed, when necessary, by an adjunct with *for*.

Father St. Clare, after an interview with the King, told Inglesant that he had a mission for him to perform in London.

Shorthouse, ch. 10 p. 115.

You are very young, but you are years older than most of your age, and your youth renders you all the more fit for the work I have for you to do. ib. ch. 3 p. 43.

671. The verb *to have* is also construed with an accusative and past participle. This construction expresses 'to get something done'.

I want to have these books bound.

In the meantime the Mayor was having the prisoner's apartment searched for treasonable papers.

The full verb *to have* may express the same meaning; see the last quotation of 681.

672. When construed with an accusative and plain infinitive or a past participle, *to have* may also express 'to experience'. The construction with an accusative and plain infinitive is most frequently found when the auxiliary *will* is used; it is often indifferent in this case which meaning (*get* or *experience*) is taken as the basis of the interpretation. See 674.

a. But I am not sorry to have my place look its best.

Allen, Kentucky Cardinal ch. 4 p. 28.

I am fifty-one next year, and the only thing I ever had happen to me was seeing a man stop a runaway horse and cart. Jacobs, Dialstone Lane II.

For Mr. Gibson he had a warm respect, a strong personal liking, which he should be glad to have ripen into friendship,

if there was time for it in this bustling world.
Gaskell, Wives II p. 291.

We would not have later generations know the whole agony of our own unhappy day. Times Lit. 9/11, 17.

He would have us consider what are the facts in history which really count, and he proves to us that we have not yet done with the Greeks. Times Lit. 26/10, 17.

He talked his extremest Fabianism. He would have the Government control all railways, land, natural products.
Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 2 § 1.

Why would photographers not leave her alone? Why would theatrical managers have her accept boxes gratis which they could sell for money? Bennett, Roll-Call I ch. 6 § 4.

b. "I have had my best chairs for fifteen years, and have never had them sat upon", sobbed an old lady in Sheffield County Court yesterday when claiming damages for injury to her furniture during removal. Daily News.

Recent studies have made a change. Bohemian history has had much new light thrown upon it. Times Lit. 23/3, 16.

We think of religion as something moralized; we have even had it defined, inadequately enough, as 'morality touched with emotion'.
G. Murray, in Engl. Lit. and the Classics. p. 10.

This again has been completely reformed in the present grammar, in which the spoken language has had its proper importance assigned to it. Sweet, N. E. G. Preface p. X.

I deemed it no small matter to have all the various productions of the sea with which he was acquainted pointed out to me. Hugh Miller, My Schools ch. 4.

Note that the verb of full meaning may also express 'to experience', as in some of the quotations of 681.

673. The construction with the participle seems to be used in order to enable the writer to make the psychological subject the grammatical subject of the sentence.

Pope has three chapters devoted to his genius as exhibited

in his character, his poetry, and his optimism. (instead of: Three chapters are devoted to the g. of P. etc.).

Athenaeum, 1/2, 13.

I have had my imagination deeply thrilled lately by reading about the discovery in America of the bones of a fossil animal called the *Diplodocus.* Benson, Thread of Gold.

No new version can have its goodness finally assessed at first; obvious badness is somewhat more easily determined.

Omond, Essays III 72.

Once more we have Sterne set before us — this time by the deft hand of Mr. Walter Sichel. Everyman 29/11, 12.

Not far from the scene of the disaster (a munitions explosion) there were five cotton mills. (One of the mills was set on fire)... The other mills had their windows shattered.

Times W. 22/6, 17.

We are no longer children, but men: ... who have had our hearts bruised and cover them with armour ...

Meredith, Harrington ch. 41 p. 420.

The aristocracy to whom the leadership of the state now fell had a twofold task imposed upon them.

Goodspeed, History.

Never mind, I won't have Miles led into any more mischief.

I was myself for seven years at Eton and for nearly four years at Cambridge, and I never had a piece of English writing criticised, as my Greek and Latin exercises were criticised, by any of my instructors.

Benson, J. of Engl. Studies I 151.

The Village told how Farmer Blaize had his rick feloniously set fire to. Meredith, R. Feverel.

674. It is the context only which decides whether *to have* in this construction expresses 'to get', or 'to experience'. But it is often indifferent in which meaning we take it. Indeed, the verb *to get* itself sometimes means 'to experience', not 'to cause'.

He exposed ruthlessly the sort of peace these men would have us accept. Times W. 6/7, 17.

I haven't done anything to have you send money for.
Mackenzie, Sinister Street p. 974.

They get wrong impressions shoved into their heads, cease to think at all, lose all sense of honesty and morality.
Waugh, Loom of Youth III ch. 8.

675. When the accusative has front-position (see 668) these meanings of *to have* with a past participle are distinguished from a perfect tense by its vowel (682), and, of course, by the context.

How on earth was he to find words to say that which he now wished to have said? Trollope, Framley ch. 39 p. 379.

In the pause that followed her words, Mrs. Sawbridge appeared from the garden smiling with a determined amiability, and bearing a great bunch of the best roses (which Sir Isaac hated to have picked) in her hands.
Wells, Harman ch. 3 § 7 p. 73.

These beds were the only sign of any attempt at gardening to be seen,...., and these I had sown with ipomaea, the whole eleven....; being entirely ignorant of the quantity of seed necessary, I bought ten pounds of it and had it sown not only in the eleven beds but round nearly every tree.
Elizabeth, Solitary Summer.

676. The accusative can also follow if the context prevents ambiguity.

Thus by a process of bribery, cajolery, and threats the working classes are to have thrust upon them a reactionary system of education which would secure a more efficient system of child slavery, while the parent and the Labour world are to be kept quiet by the policy of small bribes.
Times Ed. S. 28/2, 18.

677. When the perfect tense of *to have* is followed by a past participle, the place of the accusative is indifferent, for it cannot be anything but the construction discussed here.

The Scottish members of Parliament have had sent to them a memorandum from the Business Committee of the General Council of the University of Edinburgh, protesting against....
Everyman, 6,12, 12.

What but spiritual solaces could assist me to live after the degradations I have had heaped on me'?
Meredith, Harrington ch. 44 p. 446.

678. Occasionally *to have* with an accusative and infinitive with *to* expresses the same meaning as the construction without *to*.

Now, having achieved so capital a marriage, Caroline, worthy creature, was anxious that her sisters should not be less happy, and would have them to visit her in spite of her husband's protests. Meredith, Harrington ch. 3 p. 17.

What, I'll have you to know....
Vachell, Quinneys' p. 259.

679. It may also be noted that the same meaning as by the accusative with infinitive without *to* after *will have* may be expressed by *will* with a subordinate clause.

I would not for worlds have you do so for my sake.... I would not for worlds that you should do that.
Trollope, Framley ch. 29 p. 287.

680. *To have* may also be construed with an accusative and a present participle to express 'to experience'.

Nonsense, dear. I can't have you giving in to the silly fancy of being affected by the weather.
Gaskell, Wives III p. 73.

"You had better take care," said Percy Beaumont, "or you will have an offended father or brother pulling out a bowie-knife." H. James, Daisy Miller p. 138.

On the difference between the two constructions, see 538 ff. on the *Infinitive and Participle.*

681. In many cases the verb has completely the character of a verb with full meaning. See 654.

How many shares have you in the company?

February has twenty-eight days.

The worst administration which we have ever had.

She had intended to have a stormy scene. But she did not have it. Rosalind Murray, Moonseed.

I have no doubt the Italian is at the bottom of all this.

We had a very pleasant walk.

Women are all hypocrites alike. You never know when you have them.

Sir Edward Grey went on to deal with current politics. He said that if they did not have a great industrial crisis they should proceed with the ordinary business of the Session.

Daily News 19/2, 12.

What the precise virtue of this invocation was, we did not have an opportunity of testing.

Benson, Thread of Gold, p. 29.

It would indeed hardly have surprised me if I had been had into a room, or shown strange symbols of good and evil.

ib. p. 26.

She did not have time to understand.

Conrad, Chance II 15.

She had two sons married in New York, and another who was now in Europe. H. James, Daisy Miller ch. 2 p. 28.

She had the steps up into her bedroom and reached down from the dusty top of the wardrobe the box which she had put there after Samuel's funeral.

Bennett, Old W. Tale ch. 8 § 1 p. 269.

682. When *to have* is an auxiliary of tense it is generally weakly stressed, with the vowel [ə] or no vowel at all. In its other meanings it is generally pronounced with [æ] even when unstressed.

Juwl hæv -tə -hæv -jɔ hɛə :kʌt.

Sweet, Hist. Engl. S. § 45.

In his Primer of Spoken English Sweet distinguishes stressed [hæv] 'must', from weak-stressed [-hæv] 'cause, let' and from weak-stressed [(h)əv] as an auxiliary of tense.

But compare the following.

I've a proposition to lay before you, Joe.
Vachell, Quinneys' p. 194.

To Let

683. When construed with an accusative and infinitive without *to*, the verb *to let* is a word of full meaning, expressing 'to allow'; see the *Accusative with Plain Infinitive.*

Sometimes, however, the wordorder shows that *to let* has lost most of its independent meaning. It is sometimes construed with the infinitive followed by the object, this shows that *to let* is felt to be an adjunct to the infinitive, like an auxiliary of tense or predication.

I remember when I let fall a remark.
Gissing, Henry Ryecroft, XIV.

James Thomson was another writer of great ability who let pass no opportunity of doing admiring homage to Mr. Meredith.
W. Jerrold, Meredith, p. 19.

Clarendon, the historian of those mutable times, lets pass no conspicuous actor in the struggle without weighing his character and summarizing it. Sir Arthur Q. Couch.

For reasons best known to himself Chaucer lets slip this opportunity. Raleigh, History of the Novel, p. 6.

Later on I was vexed with myself for letting slip this unique opportunity for acquiring some genuine undergraduate slang. Barbara.

She picked up the brush which she had let fall.
Garvice, Staunch p. 8.

This wordorder is chiefly found in combinations of *let* with a restricted number of verbs, such as *to fall, slip, pass.* These combinations are even used as compound participles, and in the passive voice. The subordination of *let* in these combinations is also shown by its weak stress.

It was as clear as daylight from hints let fall in "The Bible in Spain", that (his adventures) must have been very strange and outlandish.

Borrow, Lavengro, Introd. to Everyman ed. p. VII.

But the opportunity was let slip after the days of Bishop Bedell. Everyman.

A man ought not to be let drift to the point of unteachable incapacity. Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 11 § 11.

684. *To let* is also used with an accusative-and-plain infinitive to express exhortation. Thus *Let us go* may mean *Allow us to go*, but it may also be used as an exhortative [1]). Compare also *Let him write his letters in peace* with *Let him pay his own bills before meddling with mine. Let* is an auxiliary of modality (exhortation) in the following instance.

Now, don't let's have any nonsense.

Bennett, Clayhanger II ch. 17 § 5.

685. *To let* as an auxiliary of modality is also used in optative (*a*) and in concessive (*b*) sentences. The last instance may be compared with the construction of 222 ff.

a. But let not the public misjudge me.

White, Strood, ch. 1 p. 1.

Let there be no mistake about the real meaning of the speech. Times 16/3, 16 p. 9/2.

It does not follow that this is the only explanation, but if there are others let them be ascertained.

The Mail, 22/9, 20.

b. And the time will never come when the other towns — let them swell and bluster as they may — will not pronounce the name of Bursley as one pronounces the name of one's mother. Bennett, Old. W. Tale I ch. 1, p. 20.

---

1) Dutch distinguishes the two meanings formally, using *Laat ons gaan* for the first, *Laten we gaan* for the second. In the second case *laten* is clearly an auxiliary.

Let them look at the matter in any way, the punishment was very heavy. Trollope, Framley ch. 42 p. 412.

They two, let their loyalty to Lady Lufton be ever so strong, could not justify it. ib. ch. 31 p. 306.

The son of a tradesman, if a boy fell under the imputation, was worthy of honour with him, let the fellow but show grip and toughness [1]). Meredith, Ormont ch. 1 p. 10.

Jekyll was now my city of refuge; let but Hyde peep out an instant, and the hands of all men would be raised to take and slay him. Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll p. 126.

The character of *let* as an auxiliary is emphasized by the absence of *to do* in the first sentence; see 650.

May and Might

Present *May* **686.** The present tense *may* expresses:

1. permission, given by law, rule, morality, reason, as well as by a person.

You may go out when you have finished your work.

I am sure he may go out if he wants to.

The efforts required for these protracted hostilities may be said to have ruined both states.

Margoliouth, Mohammedanism p. 18.

The delight and affection which he inspired in his own day he still inspires in ours, and will, one may be sure, in all that are to follow. Times Lit.

You may well look astonished. Kingsley (Poutsma I p. 75).

2. uncertainty (*a*), sometimes in the form of a concession (*b*).

He may get there in time if he walks fast.

He may not have done it although appearances are strong against him.

b. This may or may not [2]) be true.

---

1) For the function of the imperative in this and the next quotation, see 222.

2) *May not* is [mei not] here, as *not* is emphatic owing to the contrast; see 648.

It (i. e. Reason) may not be a perfect guide, but it is all we have, and he (Mr. Balfour) will not consent to forgo its use. Times Lit. 7/5, 14.

3. possibility, but only in affirmative sentences.

In considering the equipment of the novelist there are two attributes which may always be taken for granted.
Eng. Rev. July, 1913.

Of the three Bills returned to the Lords this week under the Parliament Act, it is still possible that one may be passed with the consent of both Houses. Nation, 12/7, 13.

You may force fruit, but you cannot force flavour.

Fools may ask more questions than wise men can answer.

A woman with fair opportunities, and without an absolute hump, may marry whom she likes.

A tactful teacher may get them to take pleasure in preserving every drawing or map which they may make.

687. In literary English *may* is also used as an auxiliary in optative sentences.

May he be successful.
Long may he live.

688. We can say: *You may go* and *You can go.* But there is a difference. *You may go* expresses that the speaker (or somebody else) gives the permission. *You can go* expresses that there are no conditions that prohibit the person's going. It would be said e.g. to a boy who had been informed that he would have to finish his work before going out. When he tells his father that his work is ready the father may answer: *You can go then,* i.e. the circumstances prohibiting your going have been removed. See 648.

Alice, if you have finished your breakfast, you can go.
Benson, The Weaker Vessel.

689. Prohibition is expressed by *must not;* whereas *may not* expresses the absence of permission. Hence

may not is often a polite form of prohibition. This is well illustrated by the story of a railway-guard telling a traveller: "You may not smoke here, Sir." At the next station: "You must not smoke here, Sir." At last, in an angry tone: "You shan't smoke here, Sir!" See 707.

690. The defective forms of *may* are made up by *to be allowed*. But note that there is a difference in the present tense between the two constructions:

You (he) may go expresses that the permission is given by the speaker, or by somebody else.

You are (he is) allowed to go can be used only when the permission is given by another than the speaker.

691. In questions *may* expresses wonder or curiosity, as well as uncertainty. Compare *can*, 640.

What may he be doing there down in the garden?
Sisters and brothers, little maid.
How many may you be? Wordsworth.

Who Mrs. Drayton might be, society did not know, and did not, now, very much care. Garvice, Staunch p. 31.

I wonder what I may have done to offend him.

692. The idea of possibility is sometimes mixed with that of capability so that both *can* and *may* could be used. See 639 ff. In the above quotations *may* is used because the idea of possibility predominates.

Examples are also frequent with *to imagine, fancy, suppose, guess, think*.

The Preterite **693.** The preterite *might* is used modally, *might* usually to express possibility or uncertainty.

"Do you think I dislike your company, Sibyl?" — "Well, no, not exactly, but you might if I gave you too much of it."

Tacitus was not quite impartial in his account of the

Germans ... But Tacitus, though he might have been rather inclined to favour the Germans, was mainly a scientific observer. Ker, Medieval English Literature.

Might it not be well to warn Brian it was not well to play fast and loose with a girl's affections?

Some leading hounds had fallen to rise no more; others had retreated yelping to their kennels, to lie quiet for a while, till time might give them courage for a new attack. Trollope, Three Clerks p. 394.

As the preterite is modal, past time must be expressed by a perfect infinitive. See 638.

Peter might have known, and very likely did, the inside of a pawnbroker's. Dickens, Christmas Carol st. III (p. 88; compare also ib. p. 99. 5).

694. The preterite *might* is also used modally to express what would be reasonable (*a*). Sometimes it is difficult to distinguish this meaning from that of possibility (*b*).

a. At this hour he should have been working at his book; and the fact that his idleness did not trouble him might well have given him uneasiness. Galsworthy, Fraternity ch. 20 p. 164.

b. The old farm, now that the trees are bare, the skies bleak, and the roads frostbound, is far other than it was in July, and a stranger, coming here for the first time might well wish, if he could, to recall the warmth, the foliage, and the sounds of the summer season. Times W. 10/1, 18.

695. Modal *might* is also used in a concessive meaning.

Progress might be slow, but it was sure .... Dr. Hall might snort when he heard of it, asking, with a growl, what a soldier wanted with a tooth-brush; but the good work went on. Strachey, Eminent Victorians p. 132 f.

696. The use of the non-modal *might* to express permission (or prohibition) is rare. In the following quotation it is clearly due to the parallelism with the preceding *may*.

The wounds that hurt are the unintended ones, the side blows dealt by the professed lovers of poetry, by the professed friends of the poets. We may not quarrel with these, for they are genuine friends; but it would be hard if we might not describe them to themselves, in the hope of a better understanding.

Henry Newbolt, English Rev. April 1914 p. 11.

697. *Might* is freely used to report the present tense *may*.

He said that I might go out when I had finished my work.

May, might **in Subordinate Clauses**

698. *May* and *might* are used in subordinate clauses in the same functions as in head-clauses. But the two forms are also used in subordinate clauses in a more or less clearly modal meaning.

699. *May, might* occurs, in a meaning that may be defined as uncertainty or possibility:

1. in clauses subordinate to a head-clause expressing *wish, desire, demand, hope,* or *fear*.

We hope that this may be of some interest to the general reader.

Sir Walter Raleigh expresses the hope that voluntary helpers may be found to give their services. Times Lit. 2/9, 15.

Of course he hoped that his boy might succeed.

When Jasper took leave of Alfred Yule, the latter expressed a wish that they might have a walk together one of these mornings. Gissing, New Grub Street ch. 2.

I desired he might come to me into my study.

He demanded that a large vessel might be detained.

I had still my hopes that all this folly would gradually die away; that the Lambs might move out of the neighbourhood; might die, or might run away with attorneys' apprentices, and that quiet and simplicity might be again restored to the community.

He was only afraid that something might have occurred to vex you.

Their father felt ..... not a little anxious lest his children might be going to thaw too.

2. in clauses subordinate to an affirmative headclause expressing probability (*it is probable, possible, likely*, etc.).

It is possible that he may come to-morrow.

It was just possible, he thought, that the trick he was going to play, might succeed.

3. in relative clauses referring to an antecedent with an indefinite meaning.

A tactful teacher may get them to take pleasure in preserving every drawing or map which they may make.

It was not easy to find any expedient which might avert the danger.

4. in adverb clauses:

a. of purpose, introduced by *that, so that, lest.*

I say all this that you may understand what I mean to do.

She looked at the clock; she had a little spasm of nervousness lest Cyril might fail to keep his word on that first day of their new regular life together.

Bennett, Old W. Tale II ch. 6 § 1, p. 245.

In a sudden flutter of fear lest the Bigwigs might observe the operation, she drew back.

Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 8, p. 94.

"I didn't know about earls", he said rather hastily, lest Mr. H. might feel it impolite in him not to have wished to be one. Burnett, Fauntleroy ch. 2.

b. of concession.

Whatever faults they may have had, neither Tacitus nor Carlyle was dull. Times Lit. 29/7, 15.

But it was a fresh discovery for all that, a new mode of thought, whatever its source might be.

Ker, Engl. Lit. p. 88.

Outside the assembly, as well as within it, all freemen were equal, however much they might differ in influence and wealth. Gardiner and Mullinger, Introd. p. 17.

700. In all these cases, except the clauses of purpose, we also find a verb without an auxiliary. The clauses of purpose introduced by *that*, which cannot by itself express purpose, also take *should:* 737.

a. He was not in the last afraid that she would cause his feelings to change towards Kate. Patterson, Compton.

I have no fear that there will be any permanent estrangement between the public opinion of the two countries. Daily News.

The telegram which our Vienna correspondent sends us lends strength to the hope that a definitive settlement in the Balkans will be reached. Times W.

b. Whatever happens, it (viz. the effort) will, we are convinced, not be wasted. New Statesman 11/1, 19.

Must

***Must* as a Present Tense**

701. *Must* is used in the function of a present tense to denote:

1. a necessity imposed by the will of a person. If it is the will of another person than the subject of the sentence, *must* expresses an urgent command or an insistent request *(a);* if it is the will of the subject of the sentence, *must* expresses a firm determination *(b)*.

a. I must go home now; father told me to be quick.

Tom, you must go with us to Mr. B.

You must obey nurse, children.

You must not expect me to help you.

b. I must and will have my own way.

He is not content with a ring and a bracelet, but he must have rings in the ears, rings on the nose — rings everywhere.

2. a necessity imposed by circumstances in general (*a*) or relative to some end (*b*)[1].

a. All men must die.

People who live in an island must be tolerant of the sensitiveness of races less happily situated, in the matter of their neighbours and their landmarks. Times Lit. 6/1, 21.

b. A considerable latitude must be allowed in the discussion of public affairs, *or the liberty of the press will be no benefit to society.*

The judges criticise Parliament, and they in their turn must accept criticism upon their order.

The room, you must know (i. e. in order to understand what I am going to tell you), was long and low with a raftered ceiling. Bar. Orczy, Meadowsweet ch. I.

3. the inferred or presumed certainty of a fact.

You must be aware of this.

He must be an old man, now.

Those who are in the habit of remarking such matters must have noticed the passive quiet of an English landscape on Sunday.

Coleridge must have earned a substantial sum by these lectures.

Between two and three hundred thousand written papers of one sort or another must have passed under my view.

If he says so it must be true.

Under such conditions there must have arisen mixed dialects, mainly English, but containing many Danish words.

Bradley, Making of English p. 31.

Must as a Present and Preterite

702. *Must* is used both as a present (*a*) and as a preterite (*b*) with a present infinitive, with reference to some foolish or annoying action or some untoward event. See also the last example of 701,1.

1) The end is sometimes expressly stated; in the first quotation this has been denoted by italics (not in the original).

a. So you must always be meddling, must you?

The goal was immensely far off. His hat was as absurd and as fine as that of a man who, starting to cross Europe on foot, must needs run to get out of Calais and be fairly on his way. Bennett, Roll-Call, I ch. 8 § 3.

b. This fellow had no money, but she must needs become engaged to him — a harum-scarum, unpractical chap, who would get himself into no end of difficulties.

Galsworthy, Man of Property I ch. 2.

His ridiculous pride must nevertheless inquire whether Caroline had been begging this for him.

Meredith, Harrington ch. 39, p. 404.

He had sketched these personages for good or evil, in his Lectures, and there he might have left them to the judgment of posterity. But he must needs ask them to play their part in the drama of *Esmond;* and it may be said that his characters are never further from reality than when they bear real names. Whibley, Thackeray p. 182 f.

Must **as a Preterite** **703.** *Must* is used as a modal preterite in the principal clause of a hypothetical statement, especially in the sense of 701, 3.

If he had looked, he must have seen the light of the approaching train.

Even if Rembrandt had not been an artist of genius, he must have aroused our interest more than almost any other Dutch painter: so rich and varied is the work he left behind him.

Had he (i. e. Gibbon) attempted to know the ultimate causes of the decline and fall of the Roman Empire, he must have failed egregiously, childishly.

704. *Must* is also used to report the present tense *must.*

(701,1) *a.* She told them that they must get everything ready themselves.

b. It was her own design — her own scheme, small as

it was, compared with that other vast project. She was anxious about it. It had to succeed; it must succeed.

(701,2) *a.* She felt she must talk with him.

To be sure, there was an intense trouble and disquiet in the thought that she and Mr. Elsmere must meet again, probably many times.

b. S. began to know exactly how far he could lead or drive, and when he must follow.

Charlotte's eye told her that she must give up just at present for the good of the family.

Trollope, Barchester Towers.

Wilberforce and Clarkson saw that they must awaken the public conscience.

(701,3) In a few words she related the fearful scene of the garden, and concluded that the spectre must have carried off his bride.

I was terribly hampered by the publicity which attended my movements. Michael must know by now of my expedition; and I knew Michael too well to suppose that his eyes would be blinded by the feint of the boar-hunt. Hope, Zenda.

705. In many cases there is no word to show that it is the speaker's thought, not a fact.

There was no comfort to be given. They were settled in Milton, and must endure smoke and fogs for a season.

Gaskell, North and S. ch. 8 p. 72.

She had not stayed to get a hat and therefore must wait for him outside (i. e. outside the church).

Mackenzie, Guy and Pauline p. 39.

As, however, he must pass Wareham Station on his journeys to and fro, Sir Everard wrote to beg him, if possible, to stop for one night on his way.

Montgomery, Misunderstood.

706. Occasionally we find *must* in what is undoubtedly direct (not reported) speech, to express necessity.

When nobles entertained the King or other noblemen, they must needs furnish the entertainment adjudged at Court as best. But few kept a household on the petty royal scale of the Earl of Northumberland .... So they must find other means to provide singers, dancers, jugglers, tumblers, and actors as occasion required. Wallace, Drama p. 118f.

In this case the boy had a right to the stage, and so the mother must stand in the wings. Malet, Calmady, ch. 6.

At last the moment had arrived when Lord Fane must get down to the (race) course. Garvice, Staunch p. 251.

The criticism which he puts forward could not be suppressed, it must find light some time or another.
Times Lit. 15/1, 20.

He laboured indefatigably, partly because his life was a long struggle to keep the wolf from the door; partly because a man of his temperament and active brain must so labour, willy-nilly [1]) Athenaeum 2/12, 11.

Must not **707.** *Must not* often expresses a more or less urgent prohibition. See 689.

She screamed out all at once, "You mustn't speak like this of Papa!"

"Who cried stop?" said Squeers turning savagely round. — "I," said Nicholas, stepping forward. "This must not go on." .... "I say *must not*," repeated Nicholas, nothing daunted; "shall not! I will prevent it." Dickens, Nickleby.

This volume must not be taken into Great Britain or the Colonies. Nelson's Continental Libr.

Need

708. *Need* is used both as a verb with full meaning and as an auxiliary. The third person singular is *need* in negative sentences or sentences that are equivalent to a negation; in such sentences the simple verb is followed by an infinitive

1) It is possible to interpret *must* as a neutral present here.

without *to;* after a compound tense we invariably find an infinitive with *to*. Compare *to dare,* 644 f.

709. As a verb with full meaning *need* expresses 'to stand in need of, to require, to be required'.

Pickwick needed no second invitation.

Such a deed needed a worse man than was needed for any of William's earlier deeds.

There needs no better picture of his destitute and piteous situation, than that furnished by the homely pen of the chronicler.

710. As an auxiliary *need* means 'to be under a necessity or obligation to do something'; or, when the infinitive is passive, 'to require'.

I need not tell you more.

I need hardly ask again.

It is very plain that an inquiry of this kind needs to be fixed by reference to a given set of social circumstances tolerably well understood. Morley, Compromise.

Ideals are always destructive things; part of their business is the destruction of something which needs to be replaced by something else. Times Lit. 6/1, 21.

Those readers who know Dr. Cox's book on that other "Garden of England", his "Rambles in Surrey", will not need to be told that he does not write merely for the lover of the country or the casual tourist. Athenaeum, 3/5, 13.

We need to look a little more closely into the matter before we can accept the suggestion.

They (viz. the landlords) needed to spend much less on labour in pasture lands. Athenaeum 8/11, 13.

711. *Need not* is also used modally but only with a perfect infinitive to refer to the past *(a); need not* can also report the present in indirect style *(b).* See 638.

a. We need not have been in such a hurry after all.
Who knows whether I need have fled?
b. The waiter was told that he need not stay.

712. In literary English we find *to need* in negative sentences followed by an infinitive with *to;* in such cases the third person is *needs.*

If it were true — and he believed every word his father said — then it must be possible. You only needed to ask — that was all. Temple Thurston, Thirteen I.

713. In literary English we also find *need* in negative sentences with *not* taking the auxiliary *to do.*

The relevancy of the foregoing features in the earlier history of the study of Greek to the whole current of classial learning in subsequent times does not need to be explained to the well-read scholar. Edinburgh Rev., Oct. 1905.

Our family doesn't need to do things. Hope, Zenda.

But Thackeray did not need to go back to the eighteenth century for an example. Whibley, Thackeray p. 46.

But the unity of *Germania* — the community of sentiment among the early German nations — does not need to be proved by such philological notes as the opposition of "Dutch" and "Welsh." Ker, Engl. Lit. p. 27.

Ought

714. *Ought* is used in the function of a modal preterite to express a moral obligation, also what is befitting, proper, correct, advisable, or naturally expected.

We ought to call on them; let us go this afternoon.

He was close to her just then, gentlemen, so he really ought to know.

715. Occasionally *ought* expresses that an occurrence or state is certain or probable. See 727 f. on *should.*

There ought to be some high bidding at Messrs. Sotheby's on Dec. 18th, when a valuable series of autograph letters and literary Mss. will be disposed of. Everyman.

Jonson and Dryden .... were men from whom prosodic discussion might naturally have been expected, and from whom it ought to have been exceptionally valuable.

Prof. Saintsbury in Cambr. Hist. of Lit. VIII, 238.

"Land ought to be very dear about here," he said.

Galsworthy, Man of Property ch. 3 p. 54.

716. *Ought* refers to the past when followed by the perfect infinitive *(a)*; also in indirect style *(b)*. See 711 and 638.

a. We ought to have done that long ago.

b. The judge did not think that the defendant ought to be kept in prison any longer.

He asked me what ought to be done.

Shall and Should

717. The use of *shall* and *should* to form the future tenses has been treated in 120 ff. and 152 ff. It has been already noted that as auxiliaries of tense *shall* and *should* are usually unstressed.

718. *Shall* and *should* are also used as auxiliaries of predication and of modality. It is not always possible to distinguish between these two functions.

***Shall* as an auxiliary of predication**

719. In declarative sentences *shall* is used in the second and third persons. It expresses the will of the speaker. When used strongly stressed *shall* often expresses a command, but also a promise or determination on the part of the speaker.

Won't he do it? He shall.

He shan't have any; he has been most rude.

Mrs. Liddell said one day: "Oh, Mr. Thackeray, you must let Dobbin marry Amelia." "Well," he replied, "he shall, and when he has got her, he will not find her worth having."
Whibley, Thackeray p. 96.

720. *Shall* also occurs in the Ten Commandments: *Thou shalt not steal.* In this case it may now be understood to express a moral duty rather than a command.

721. The use of *shall* to express an impersonal command is obsolete.

When any person is sick, notice shall be given thereof to the Minister of the Parish. Prayer Book.

722. *Shall* with weak stress is used to express a promise, warning or threat (*a*). We have really the same use when it occurs in prophecies (*b*).

a. Although the doctor says my heart is wrong, you shall always find it in the right place. Ainger, Life, p. 346.

I fear your master is one who looks to the sense more than to the grammar! But never mind, you and I shall be much together, and as you are so fond of Plato you shall read him with me. Shorthouse, John Inglesant. ch. 2, p. 25.

Well, get to bed quickly and Ruth shall send up cups of hot gruel.

"You shall hear from me before long," shouted Powell.
Conrad, Chance.

Then, Kitty, let 'yes' be the answer.
We'll dance at the 'Varsity Ball,
And the morning shall find you a dancer
In Christ Church or Trinity Hall.
A Letter, in Echoes from the Oxford Magazine.

What think you he said in my hearing, Andreas? That mine was a dog's vocation! Well, he shall find that a dog can bite. Buchanan, That Winter Night ch. 8.

"Well, are you ready?" "I don't feel quite right." "Oh, I see, your stirrups are too long; Alfred shall shorten them a little." Sweet, Spoken English p. 71.

You shall repent it before long.

Wait awhile here and watch. You shall see that no two men, women, or boys, no two horses or ponies, will go through this performance, which seems no simple, in the same temper and style. His prophecy was exactly fulfilled. Dean Hole, Mem. p. 31.

"Let's make the experiment." "Why 'experiment'? Is it such a difficult or dangerous enterprise?" "You shall see." Sweet, Spoken English p. 77 [1]).

b. Heaven and Earth shall pass away, but my words shall not pass away.

723. *Shall*, whether weak- or strong-stressed, may also express a determination in the first person, but in this case it may be looked upon as an auxiliary of the future tense.

"Grandmother," she whispered, "I shall not wait for the sermon." Allen, Mettle of the Pasture.

There is a little wayward word
That won't agree or give or grant,
A negative too often heard —
The female "shan't!"
"I won't!" a man will flatly say,
Or helplessly admit he can't;
But ladies have another way —
They always "shan't". Punch, Febr. 20, 1907.

Shopkeepers' wives hailed her appealingly —
"Sha'n't (*sic*) keep you half a second! Do tell us!"
Pett Ridge, Name of Garland.

724. In interrogative sentences *shall* is used to ask after the will or wish of the person spoken to. It occurs in all

1) The phonetic transcription is [;juw šl sij].

three persons, but in the second it may be considered an auxiliary of tense.

"Shall I shut the door Mother?" — "Please, darling."
Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 16.

Shall John go first?

Should as an auxiliary of predication

725. *Should* is used as a modal preterite in all persons to express an obligation or duty, generally of a social or moral nature. See 638.

I should call on them, I know; but I must say I hate calling on people I have nothing to say to.

You should not speak so loud; it is bad manners.

Why should I be the first to go home?

Why in the world should I do anything?

A friendly dog lay among the croquet hoops on the lawn, a pleasant, silent dog, who wagged his tail when I came round the corner and saw no reason why he should bark and sniff. Eliz. in Rügen.

As it should do, the death of Nelson inspires Mr. Hardy; and in the part which relates thereto we find his versification at its best.

Should all the legends of the nursery, of the hamlet, and of the village fireside be considered merely as an amalgam of the superstitions of the uneducated with the finer fancies of some poetic minds?

726. *Should* is also used as a modal preterite to express the will or promise of the speaker. Like *shall* in this meaning, it occurs in all three persons, but the first person with *should* may be looked upon as a past future tense.

If the book were in the library it should be at your service.

You should do it if we could make you.

They should have had it if they had asked for it.

727. We also find *should* used to express that an occurrence or state is c e r t a i n o r p r o b a b l e.

Providing that the Megantic meets with favourable weather she should make Belle Isle to-morrow night and Liverpool by noon on Saturday. Morning Leader.

To-day should be an ideal one for the London skaters, as it is probable that the ice in some of the London County Council ponds may reach the official minimum of three inches. Daily News, 3/2, 12.

Farmers in the late districts are better off (viz. than in the early districts) for even now, if they can get continuous sunshine, they should have a satisfactory harvest; but in the earlier districts considerable damage has been done, the rains being so heavy as to beat the corn to the ground. Daily Chronicle.

We gather from *Notes and Queries* that a book on Anonymous and Pseudonymous Literature is to be expected at the end of the year from Mr. W. P. Courtney. A work from so careful and competent a hand should be of considerable value. Athenaeum.

728. That this is a special development of *should* expressing a moral obligation seems to be shown by the following quotations.

Compare a similar development in *ought*, 715.

Sir Percy Cox, the new High Commissioner for Mesopotamia, should reach Baghdad this week, if his movements are not impeded. The Mail, 22/9, 1920.

The August number of *The Dickensian* should appeal to the many Americans now staying in this country, for it is devoted entirely to Dickens and America. Athenaeum.

As an old pupil and assistant of Lord Kelvin, Prof. Gray is particularly fitted to write such a book, which should appeal to all interested in the history of physical science. ib.

729. *Should* is used as a preterite referring to the past in indirect style.

It is now realized by Servian statesmen that they made a mistake in promising Germany that, in the event of their

realizing their ambitions as to a sea-port on the Adriatic, Germany should have their orders for a fleet.

Punch 4/12, 12.

He had promised the boys that they should go in the dogcart. Montgomery, Misunderstood.

The villains watching him from above called out, that unless he despatched James, his own life should pay the penalty. Van Neck, Adv. Engl. Prose.

There was some contention as to who should have the ears of the pig. Lamb, Essay on Roast Pig.

Shaftesbury's anger vented itself in threats that the advisers of the dissolution should pay for it with their heads.

She engaged that her children should be brought up in the faith of the Catholic Church. Meredith, Harrington ch. 3.

The question was whether Italy should, once for all, accept a German yoke; whether the Papacy should become a German patriarchate. Davis, Med. Europe p. 241.

The Council of Ministers yesterday discussed the question whether they should make any statement before the Duma.

Times W. 26/1, 17.

Shall, should **as an auxiliary of modality**

730. *Shall* and *should* are used modally in rhetorical questions. *Shall* is chiefly found in literary English only.

So the general impression left by this book is that the unity of Western civilization is still a matter of speculation and hope. But in mere faith there is something magnificent, and who shall say that it shall not prevail?

Times Lit. 24/2, 16.

Mr. Partington's book has its shortcomings, and yet who shall dare to lower his thumbs? ib. 16/9, 20.

Last Sunday we drove over to Dunkeld to Church, and whom should I meet coming out but Sir John Millais.

Ainger, Life p. 142.

Who shall describe their surprise when they at last turned round and beheld standing before them a beautiful lady exquisitely dressed!

Just as little Red Riding Hood came to the wood what should she meet but a great ugly wolf!

Midas was enjoying himself in his treasure-room one day as usual, when a shadow fell over the heaps of gold; and, looking suddenly up, what should he see but the figure of a stranger, standing in the bright and narrow sunbeam!

731. *Shall* and *should* are used archaically in the following examples. It will be found that *shall* is mostly used to bring in illustrations of a point already laid down; *should* seems, in many cases, to serve to express a slight doubt.

You shall hear the same persons say that George Barnwell is very natural, and Othello is very natural.

But what a world of difference there may be 'twixt library and library! You shall enter one man's study and at the first glance of your eye at his treasures you find yourself, let us hope involuntarily, breaking the Tenth Commandment.
Times 25/8, 20.

A company of old comrades shall be merry and laughing together, and the entrance of a single youngster will stop the conversation. Thackeray, Newcomes I ch. 16.

But it should seem that, as soon as her husband had lost her, he began to reproach himself for having neglected her wishes.

Spoken English has *will* and *would* in these cases, or uses a different construction.

You may know a man for twenty years, and in the twenty-first year he will do something which will make your twenty years' experience count for nought.
Hobbes, Emotions I ch. 1.

Shall **and** *should* **in subordinate clauses**

732. The use of *shall* and *should* in subordinate clauses is mostly the same as that in principal sentences. But some modal uses deserve special mention.

In many of the following cases the use of *shall* is limited

to literary English, whereas *should* is used both in colloquial and in literary English.

733. *Shall* and *should* are used to represent a future action or state as more or less uncertain:

1. in clauses expressing an act of the will, sometimes a wish, such as is expressed by *to determine, propose, demand*, etc. in the head-clause.

It has been decided that the second reading shall not be opposed. Times Ed. S. 28/2, 18.

Miss Una L. Silberrad has contrived that her character study *Co-Directors* shall present itself with the allurements of a full-blooded story of adventure. Times Lit. 22/4, 15.

The business of this Conference is to make sure that the resolutions shall be so thought out as to cover the whole field and that the practical measures shall correspond with them. Times W. 30/11, 17.

His plan is that Lord Fauntleroy shall be educated under his own supervision; that he shall live with him.
Burnett, Fauntleroy ch. 2.

The Turks (not unreasonably) are demanding that the Bulgarians shall retire behind the Enos-Midia line.
Nation, 12/7, 13.

Before they all retired it was settled that the whole party should drive over on the following day to inspect the parsonage.
Trollope, Barchester.

It was no wonder that Dr. Grantley did not like John Bold and that his wife's suggestion that he should become closely connected with such a man dismayed him.
Trollope, Barchester.

He could not but wish that Dorothea should think him not less happy than the world would expect her successful suitor to be. Eliot, Middlemarch ch. 10, p. 60.

Her maidenliness had not permitted that she should show herself to Mr. Scales.
Bennett, Old W. Tale I ch. 6 § 2 p. 116.

If he is not to come back to me victorious, I should prefer that he should never come back. Times W. 26/1, 17.

He had prayed that a speculation involving some thousands of pounds should be successful.

Temple Thurston, City I ch. 2.

He reached for the marmalade and requested that a bowl of Devonshire cream should be passed along.

Fergus Hume, Red Money p. 10.

For a short time they walked in silence. It was Grace's suggestion that they should walk.

Hobbes, Some Emotions II ch. 1.

It was Cynthia's wish that the engagement should be kept secret. ib. I ch. 4.

Michael had been careful that all his heavy luggage should be sent in advance. Sinister Street p. 499.

2. in relative clauses; this construction is limited to literary English.

It requires a highly cultivated style which shall select the best and reject the second best,.... and a musical ear which shall detect and discard every discord. Pilot 21/11, 1903.

The idea of every translator, I imagine, is to produce what shall affect the best judges just as the original affects them.

Omond, Essays II 72.

We are much nearer a definite discussion of the peace which shall end this war.

President Wilson, Times W. 26/1, 17.

He would be a bold man who should declare that its popularity has very materially diminished at the present day.

Ward, Dickens, ch. 2. p. 20.

He who should (i.e. if there were such) pretend to learn a language by theory and rules would resemble a person who would (i.e. should want to) learn to walk by the theory of equilibrium.

It is difficult to conceive a generation which should be indifferent to the mellow charm, the rich rustic poetry of Blackmore's 'Lorna Doone'.

3. in adverb clauses of time.

There is much to be done before every child in the country shall speak English as could be wished.

Wyld, Evolution p. 41.

There is a month yet, and I promise you to be back ere it shall have elapsed.

I also beg the forgiveness of his children when they shall be old enough to know the crime I have committed.

He had bound himself not to take the crown till a new parliament should have acknowledged his right.

734. In colloquial English *shall* is not used in the cases of 733. Hence, when the verb of the principal clause is in a present tense another construction is taken. If the subjects of the two clauses are the same, *will* is used according to the principal rule for *will* as the auxiliary to express the will of the subject; or a simple infinitive is used.

He proposes to draw up a new agreement.

I will take care not to offend him again.

The undersigned solemnly resolve that they will do no more geography. Punch.

I gather that some days must elapse yet before the station will be opened.

I will beat you till you will be glad to let me go.

As foreign subscriptions cannot reach the Office of the Times before the offer will be withdrawn, subscription forms mailed from abroad will be accepted till June 15.

735. It is also possible to use *should* even though the verb in the headclause is in a present tense, according to 733, 1.

It is generally unfair to demand that an analogy should be complete down to minute details. Times Ed. S. 31/7, 19.

They recommend that classes in secondary schools should be smaller. ib. 28/2, 18.

It follows, therefore, that the important thing is to secure that those who teach history in schools should be qualified by their knowledge and special gifts to do so.

Prof. Firth, History IV no. 14 p. 79.

The proposal is that each year the Board should submit to Government a budget estimate of the sums required.

Times Ed. S. 25/9, 19.

We suggest that you should ask him first.

736. Instead of *should* we can also often use *to be to* whenever an arrangement is referred to.

It was settled that he was to go the next day.

It may perhaps be added that other constructions are also possible.

I was determined to make him write the letter.
He consented to the marriage taking place.

737. The preterite *should* is used, both in colloquial and in literary English, with the verb in the principal clause in a present or in a past tense. If *should* is followed by a present infinitive, the clause refers to the present or to a future time, when past time must be expressed *should* with the perfect infinitive is used, or the simple preterite of the verb.

In this way *should* is used:

1. in clauses depending upon a clause that expresses a personal feeling or opinion, hence after words of *rejoicing, grieving, wondering, complaining;* also when the principal clause contains the impersonal expressions *it is probable, improbable, not possible, impossible* (also: *Is it possible ....?*), *likely, unlikely; it is right, wrong, necessary, strange, wonderful, funny, fortunate, a blessing,* etc.; even after *a fact.*

He was surprised that she should be so glad.

Walpole, Duchess of Wrexe I ch. 6.

It seemed almost dreadful they should be able to sing like that. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 29.

Strange that he should have rushed into his dream with eyes open. Meredith, Harrington ch. 18.

"Oh, Dick!" exclaimed Hilary in a mock woeful voice, "that I should live to hear you make pretty speeches [1])."
Sidgwick, Grasshoppers ch. 7.

We all should be very sorry that you should have any just ground of complaint.

If Mr. Bold had any ulterior proceeding in view, perhaps it would be desirable that any necessary information should be sought for in a professional way by a professional man.
Trollope, Barchester.

It was quite probable that a young man should become used to a grand name quicker than he had himself expected.

It is impossible that he should have deceived me like that.

It is an interesting record of the pulse of the present day that 'An Englishwoman's Love Letters' should have taken Society by storm in the way it certainly has.
M. Fairless, Road-Mender.

It seems odd that we should have met again after so many years in the very place where we used to go to school together.
Sweet, Element. no. 65.

Moreover, we could not bear the idea that she should labour for her keep.
Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 46 p. 318.

He well deserves that we should say a few words about his own work first. Athenaeum, 16,11, 12.

It is characteristic of Addison that a political paper like the *Freeholder* should be flavoured with the humour and badinage he found so effective in the Spectator.
Dennis, Age of Pope p. 133.

"I am always glad to see your countrymen," Mr. Westgate pursued. "I thought it would be time some of you should be coming along." James, Daisy Miller p. 123.

---

1) Note that the sentence is formally independent, except for the introductory *that*.

Unlike Mr. Justice Darling, we are disposed to treat with the utmost gravity the fact that such charges should even be possible. Times W. 7/6, 18.

2. in adverb clauses:

a. of purpose, introduced by *that, so that, that .... not, lest.*

She saw them begin to mount the steps, those behind raising their arms so that the hurdle should be level.
Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 29 p. 367.

Peter's father turned about very sharply so that she should not see he was fool enough to weep.
Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 1 § 1.

b. of condition.

If he should come tell him I shall be back soon.

Should it be thought that a menace from Central Asia is still remote, we may point out that the way into Persia from Armenia and Transcaucasia lies open and ready for immediate use. Times W. 29 3, 18.

c. of concession.

He would sit on a wet rock, with a rod as large and heavy as a Tartar's lance, and fish all day without a murmur, even though he should not be encouraged by a single nibble.
W.-Irving, Sketch-Book.

738. Occasionally, though rarely, *shall* is found.

In view of this fact, it is highly desirable that all the aspects of the question shall be fully discussed. Everyman.

We may also conclude that, in all verse of this kind, it is not essential that every disyllabic cadence shall be filled out with sound — shall be a spondee and not a trochee.
Omond, in Essays III, 89.

It is very important that the teacher of reading .... shall consider this point. Wyld, Teaching of Reading, p. 17.

Japan will adhere to her pledge of neutrality unless Russia shall violate hers.

739. The plain indicative is also used in all the clauses of 737.

It is something of a pity that the reconstruction of any work of this kind entails as a rule the laying waste of all its predecessors.

It is inconceivable that Huysmans — whatever he may have said — was not ravished by the secret beauty of his subjects, and did not exult in it.

Arnold Bennett, in English Rev., June 1913.

Under these circumstances it is scarcely surprising that Mr. Mason considers some explanation necessary.

Everyman, 8/11, 12.

It is really remarkable that so large a field has been covered in one by no means unmanageable volume.

Athenaeum, 16/11, 22.

It is surprising that the late Bishop of Salisbury receives no separate treatment.

It was unfortunate that Mr. Mosher had completed his work before the appearance of Mr. Herbert's invaluable catalogue. Mod. Lang. Notes, Nov. 1912.

It is impossible that he and we can look on this question from the same point of view. Times W. 2/2, 17.

Sophia was such a woman as, by a mere glance as she utters an opinion, will make a man say to himself, half in desire and half in alarm lest she reads him too: "By Jove! she must have been through a thing or two. She knows what people are!" Bennett, Old W. Tale III ch. 4 § 1.

Yet, even though the work is still not finished, we cannot regret the time and labor bestowed.

Wallace, Evolution p. X.

740. After the impersonal constructions an infinitive with a prepositional subject is also possible.

It was natural for those who knew him and his work to trace the influence of Hooker and Dean Church.

Athenaeum, 21/12, 12.

It seems a great pity for the Postmaster-General to press

the Marconi contract at a critical moment in the history of wireless telegraphy. Nation, 12/5, 13.

Functions of *shall* (*should*) and *may* (*might*) in subordinate clauses

741. After words expressing an act of the will the use of *shall* and *should* is really the same as in principal sentences: it expresses the will of the speaker; but in the subordinate clause the speaker is sometimes only vaguely referred to.

When *may* or *might* are used, possibility only is expressed; hence we specially find these auxiliaries after verbs that convey a milder expression of a person's will, such as *wish*, *desire*. Note, however, that it is possible to use *should* also after these verbs; hence also we find *should* in a clause dependent upon a verb denying the speaker's intention to impose his will:

I do not desire that others should go where I went.
Benson, Thread of Gold, p. 27.

742. After words expressing a feeling or opinion (*to rejoice, grieve,* etc. and such impersonal constructions as *it is right, wrong, necessary*, etc.) *should* has more or less the same meaning as *should* in principal sentences, expressing 'what is proper or befitting.' *I am sorry that you should be compelled to sell your horse*, e.g., expresses the speaker's opinion that the person addressed ought not to be in that situation, if things were only as he (the speaker) would wish them to be.

743. After some words expressing an opinion *should* helps to express the uncertainty of the statement; in many cases the uncertainty only consists in its being future, Hence it is used after *it is not probable, improbable,* etc. But it cannot be used after *it is certain, it seems, appears*, etc.

Not infrequently a verb with *should* is combined with a plain indicative.

> She wondered why this should have been so, and why its strangeness had not impressed her before.
>
> Bennett, Leonora ch. 7.

744. In adverb clauses of purpose *should* has the same function as after verbs expressing a feeling (742).

May, might in these clauses express possibility. When they are introduced by *lest* the auxiliary *should* expresses a contingency of which there is danger; *might* expresses an unpleasant possibility.

In adverb clauses of time and of concession *should* (and *shall* in literary English) serves to express the sometimes very slight degree of uncertainty that is inherent in all future actions, whereas *may, might* express possibility.

Have, Must and Shall Compared

745. *To have, must,* and *shall* agree in expressing necessity, so that it is sometimes of little importance which of the three is used. There is generally a difference, however, and mostly a well-marked difference.

746. *Shall* (not *should*, apart from indirect style) is usually quite distinctly different from the other two, because it clearly expresses the will of the speaker. But *you must* may also express that. The difference between *you must* and *you shall* is that *shall* suggests that the person spoken to has given reasons to suppose that he will refuse to obey, or has in fact expressed this intention.

747. Both *must* and *to have* may express necessity. But necessity, if due to a personal will, can only be expressed by *must* (subjective necessity). If it is due to circumstances it may be expressed by *must* or by *to have* (objective necessity).

It may be useful, therefore, to compare *must* and *to have* in so far as they are used to express an objective necessity.

748. Objective necessity is expressed by *must*, not by *to have*, if it is the result of a logical inference 701,3), or of a law of nature. In these meanings the present tense only is wanted, apart from indirect style.

749. In other cases objective necessity can be expressed by either *must* or *to have*. The difference, if any, is that *must* is more emphatic.

Used

750. *Used* expresses what formerly existed or happened; it serves to emphasize the contrast between past and present.

What did it all mean? England used to be a place to live in. Galsworthy, Freelands ch. 20.

I knew him by his voice. I should never have known him by sight because of his beard. He used only to have a moustache. Sweet, Element. no. 43.

It (viz. the hair) doesn't curl as it used once.
Trollope, Dr. Thorne p. 315.

I was half inclined to jump in, and swim through such glorious scenery; for nothing used to please me more than swimming in a flooded river.
Blackmore, Lorna Doone ch. 46 p. 318.

"You don't mean to say you get German bands in this out of the way place?" "Oh, yes, sometimes two or three a week, or rather, we used to have them. They don't come now; the dogs keep them away."
Sweet, Spoken Engl. p. 69.

I used to think that actresses paid their maids to go into the pit and applaud them as they entered the auditorium, but this was a very foolish and unjust belief.
Observer, 34/10, 20.

751. *Used* often implies repetition, so that it expresses what was generally or repeatedly seen or done at a past period.

> The 60 mile section of the line from the new Baghdad station north of Adana eastward to Mamureh used, in peace-time, to be covered in five hours. Times W. 5/1, 17.
>
> Turning criticism into what Swinburne used sneeringly to call 'finger-counting'. Quarterly Rev. July 1915.
>
> "Used I to grumble?" asked Michael.
>
> Sinister Street p. 890.
>
> Michael, when Sylvia had said something particularly broad, used to look away from Lily; and yet he knew he need not have bothered, for Lily was always outside the conversation.
>
> ib. p. 1010.
>
> You don't practise as much as you used. ib. p. 603.
>
> Aunt Sarah, who usen't to talk to Nina, turned to her and said ... . Aunt Sarah and the War.

752. Both functions of *used* are found successively in the following quatation.

> Father used to tell me that in each guest-chamber, at the foot of the bed, there used to stand a table loaded with silver, piles of dollars covered with a cloth.
>
> Vachell, Spragge p. 17.

Will and would

Will of the subject

753. *Will* and *would* with strong stress are used in all persons to express the will of the subject.

> "Well, I try to get the people what they want. It's hard work," said the young man.
>
> "Well, I suppose, if you didn't some one else would. They will have it, won't they?"
>
> "Yes, they will have it." H. James, Reverberator.

"Why, you unnatural little rascal!" cried the justly enraged father, "do you mean to defy me? I tell you I will have that stone! Give it up this instant!"

Anstey, Vice Versa ch. 2.

A Britannia metal tea-pot which would not pour properly.

Vachell, Brothers I ch. 2.

The nation had settled that it would not have conscription.

John (i. e. King John Lackland) believed that the Papal protection would enable him to rule as tyranically as he *would*.

"Yes," twittered Maria, "Mr. Critchlow would come in to-night. Nothing would do but he must come in to-night."

Bennett, Old. W. Tale IV ch. 2 § 2 p. 463.

754. Weak-stressed *will* is used in the first person to express an intention (*a*). In the other persons weak-stressed *will* is an auxiliary of the future tense; but in a sentence with a negative meaning it may have somewhat more stress and express that the subject is not prepared (not willing) to do something *(b)*.

a. I will tell you presently what I have heard.

We'll begin soon, won't we?

But I will not weary you with more of my experiences that day and the next. Wells, Country p. 164.

b. The Entente demands too much and the Central Powers will concede too little.

755. *Would* without strong stress is used as a preterite, whether modal *(a)*, or not (*b*), and further in indirect style (*c*). See 638.

a. I would not for a moment desire to breed a feeling of security and complacency at home. Times W. 5,4, 18.

The very portraits on the walls, especially the full-length ones, seemed to look down with interest at the proceedings, as if they would say: "Now this is something *we* know about." Cotes, Cinderella ch. 19 p. 209.

Who would not be grateful to him for so fine an addition to his Kentucky romances, and so fine an addition, we would also say, to English literature.

She would have prolonged the journey indefinitely, and yet she intensely desired the jail, whatever terrors it might hold for her. Bennett, These Twain II ch. 15.

The sight of the bloody work was too much for the Graeme, who, now that he saw his enemy bleeding at his feet, would have held back (viz. if he could have done so).

I wish Sam would carry his news to other houses than mine. Hardy, Return of the Native III ch. 3.

b. At first some of the surgeons would have nothing to say to her, and, though she was welcomed by others, the majority were hostile and suspicious.

Strachey, Eminent Victorians p. 132.

c. The cabinet met immediately afterwards and decided that they would not resign. Times W. 15/11, 12.

It was with such resolve as this that he reached Barchester. He would at once ascertain what the truth might be as to the lady's wealth, and having done this he would be ruled by circumstances in his conduct respecting the hospital. If he found that he could turn round and secure the place for Mr. Harding without much self-sacrifice he would do so; but if not, he would woo the daughter in opposition to the father. But in no case would he succumb to the archdeacon.

Trollope, Barchester Towers, ch. 15.

Before the morning following he had resolved that, however deep the wound might be, he would so live before the world that all the world should not see the wound.

Trollope, Prime Minister ch. 17.

756. *Will* with ordinary stress is used in interrogative sentences to ask after the will of the person spoken to. The will may be positive (*wish*) or negative *(absence of objections)*.

Will you have another cup of tea?

"Will you let me see your face?" asked the lawyer.

Stevenson, Dr. Jekyll.

"What shall we do to amuse ourselves?"
"Will you sing one of your German songs?"
"I'll go upstairs and get my music."
Sweet, Element. no. 63.

757. Interrogative *will* naturally occurs in the second person, but in indirect style both *will* and *would* are also possible in the other persons. See 157 f.

'What! and will you shake them in for me?' she asked....
'Will I!' said Troy. 'Why of course I will. How blooming you are to-day!' Hardy, Madding Crowd ch. 27.

Here's my mother writing to say that, as she has never been to Cambridge, she thinks this term would be a good opportunity for a visit, and will I let her know the best days for a visit and get rooms and take tickets for the balls.
Lehmann, In Cambridge Courts, p. 87.

Is there any one among Unionists who will still contend that the Constitution can be left exactly as it is, unchanged?
Oxf. and Camb. Rev. no. 15.

Jean the waggoner hailed me as he passed — he was going to the mill — would I ride with him and come back atop of the full sacks? Michael Fairless, Roadmender VI.

On this, for a little, they sat face to face; after which, without comment, she asked him if he would have more tea.
H. James, Golden Bowl, p. 21.

758. *Would* is used in literary English in the first person singular, sometimes without the pronoun *I*, followed by a subordinate clause, to express a wish of the speaker that cannot be, or is very unlikely to be, fulfilled. See 605.

O would, beloved, that you lay
Under the dock-leaves in the ground,
While lights were paling one by one.
Yeats, Wind among Reeds.

Would that I had never been there.
Lorna Doone ch. 64 p. 485.

759. In ordinary English *I* (*we*) *wish* is used in this meaning.

> It is quite apparent that the editor is relying absolutely on the conclusion of certain very eminent German scholars. We only wish he had applied his own mind to the problems.
> Oxf. and Camb. Rev. no. 15 p. 205.

What is generally seen or done

760. *Will* and *would* are also used to express what is generally or repeatedly seen or done. In this meaning *would* is used in all persons; but the *present* tense *will* in the third person only.

> In his most scholarly moment, in the Preface to the *Dictionary*, he (Samuel Johnson) will throw out such a remark as.... Bailey, Johnson, p. 30.
>
> He is an Irishman as well as a ready writer on literature. Ireland, and politics of one sort or another, will keep breaking in. Times Lit. 21/6, 18.
>
> He was a man between fifty and sixty years of age, with grey hair, rather short, and somewhat corpulent, but still gifted with that amount of personal comeliness which comfortable position and the respect of others will generally seem to give. Trollope, Last Chron. ch. 1 p. 3.
>
> Of Bosinney himself Baines would speak warmly with a certain compassion.
> Galsworthy, Man of Property ch. 8 p. 103.
>
> I remember when we were boys, I would always be asking my tutor for a holiday, which I would pass very likely swinging on a gate, or making ducks and drakes over the pond. Sweet.
>
> I remember a holiday of mine being completely ruined one late autumn by our paying attention to the weather report of the local newspaper. "Heavy showers, with thunderstorms, may be expected to-day," it would say on Monday, and so we would give up our picnic, and stop indoors all day, waiting for the rain. And people would pass the house, going

off in wagonettes and coaches as jolly and merry as could be, the sun shining out, and not a cloud to be seen.

Jerome, Three Men in a Boat, Ch. V [1]).

A certain change had come over the great and powerful Marquis since we last saw him. He looked thinner and less stern and cold; at times, in the dimly lighted room, he would sigh heavily and, when the gout was not too rampant, would get up from his chair and pace the room. Garvice, p. 24.

761. The use of *will* as an auxiliary of the iterative aspect seems to be a development of its use to form the future. This is also suggested by the comparison of French, where the future is used in this function (Brunot *La Pensée et la Langue* p. 456). Note, however, that the first person with *would* (not *should*) is also found.

A special case of this meaning of *will* is its use to express an action or state that follows from the nature of the subject. See also the second example of 760.

The simple fact is that Montenegro, being a peasant state, will not produce millionaires That is why it will produce soldiers. Everyman, 20/12, 12.

762. *Will* and *would* are found as an auxiliary of modality in concessive clauses opening with the infinitive. See 292 f.

Say what I will (would) to the contrary, he tells (told) the story everywere.

We look forward to seeing far greater liberty of thought, and possibly greater freedom in the choice of form; but form, vary how it will, must still be dramatic form. Academy.

763. *Would* is also used modally in clauses subordinate to *to wish* to express a wish that is unlikely to be fulfilled.

---

1) See the rest of the passage, and also the story of 'Uncle Podger' in the third chapter.

An artist wishes that when discussing aesthetics philosophers would argue with examples rather than phrases.
Times Lit. 23/8, 18.

764. *Will* is also used as a verb of full meaning, especially in literary English.

As we will the end, we must will the means.
Times W. 18/1, 18.

When I will to move my arm and the movement takes place, I am distinctly conscious that the volition was the movement's cause. Strong, Why the Mind has a Body.

Constance, alone, could find nothing to do. She had willed that the walls should be built, and they had been built.
Bennett, Old. W. Tale II ch. 7 § 3.

Miss Muriel, will you look at the needle, and see if you can will me? Punch 28/2, 1906.

The Fates have so willed that the present editor is able to include poems by Robert Browning....
Leonard, A Book of Light Verse p. V.

Ludwig's (of Bavaria) main interests were artistic, but the irony of fate willed it that he should play an important part in German politics. Athenaeum.

Can, Will, Used

765. *Can* and *will*, expressing what is repeatedly seen, can be used both in the present and the preterite; *used* always refers to the past.

The present of *can* and *will* in this function is the neutral present, not referring to any definite time. The difference in use between these two is, in the first place, that *can* is also found in the first person, *will* in the third only.

You know how stupid I can be at times.
Conrad, Chance.

766. The general difference in meaning between *can* and *will* is that *can* lays more stress on the *occasional* nature of

the phenomenon, *will* on its *regularity*, in other words: *can* expresses the frequentative, *will* the iterative aspect. Thus *can* could not be substituted for *will* in the first sentence (*a*). The difference is also clear in the following sentences (*b*).

a. Every one who has studied the matter knows that *tea* and *meat* were once sounded [1]) in England as they now are by the Irish peasant.... The Irishman never says "praste" for *priest*, "greece" for *grace*, still less 'Profissor," or "thafe," or "bist," or "wake" (week), though he will say "wake" for *weak*. Athenaeum 1/2, 13.

b. All married women know how trying girls can be.

Boys will be boys, and girls will be girls for the matter of that.

Oh, then, he could be cruel and I thought wicked! he would exultantly snatch the screen from poor shrinking wretches. Brontë, Vilette ch. 29.

Compare also the quotation from Meredith in 637.

767. *Would* and *used* are not identical in meaning. *Would* suggests a picture of the past; it implies personal interest. *Used* is employed to contrast the past with the present, and does not necessarily imply repetition.

In the following quotations *would* and *used* could not change places. It would also be impossible in the examples of 750.

Catastrophe of any kind overwhelmed him at first, and then his vitality, his recuperative qualities, would come to the rescue. Vachell, Quinneys' p. 225.

"Doesn't he like you?"

"He used to like me," she answered mournfully.

".... You say that James used to like you. Why has he cooled off, hey?" ib. p. 253.

"You used to love me."

"Used?" ib. p. 268.

---

1) i. e. pronounced.

> It was a well-remembered road..... He would walk down the same rusty path, and his heart would quicken as it used to quicken at the thought of seeing Dolly.
>
> Wells, Joan and Peter ch. 9 § 11.

768. *Used*, when implying repetition, is very nearly related in meaning to *would*, so that both are often used in the same sentence.

> Sometimes he used to tell us of his expeditions through the woods and fields round his home, and how he explored the solitary brooks and ponds; and then he would describe the curious animals and birds he saw.
>
> Sweet, Spoken English p. 50.
>
> But all through the sermon, to which she never gave the slightest attention, her mind would feel mute and stilled, and she used to come out of church silent and preoccupied, returning unwillingly to the commonplaces of life.
>
> Wells, Harman ch. 4 § 2 p. 81.

In these sentences *used to* might be replaced by *would*, but it would hardly be correct to substitute *used to* for the *would* of the text.

769. It may be of some use to consider all the ways of expressing repetition in the past [1]):

1. He went on saying.
2. He kept saying.
3. He would say.
4. He used to say.
5. He always said.
6. He was always saying.

As to no. 1 compare 524, 597; the aspect may be called terminative. The second and third form seem both to express

---

1) Note that 2, 3, 5, and 6 occur also in the present. The first might perhaps occur in the historic present.

the iterative aspect, the difference being that *keep* suggests hardly any interruption whereas there is no such restriction in the case of *would*. For the fourth, see 767. The fifth does not seem to have such a definite meaning; it could often be used as an alternative of both 3 and 4. On the sixth, compare the sections on the progressive.

WESTFIELD COLLEGE
LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF LONDON

Uitgaven van KEMINK & ZOON, over den Dom te Utrecht.

KRUISINGA: Handbook of Present-Day English. Part I. English Sounds. Third Edition. Geb. *f* 5.20.

Das buch sei allen denen empfohlen, denen es auf ein gründliches studium der phonetik ankommt.

Beiblatt zur Anglia, Mai 1920. Dr. H. MUTSCHMANN.

Es ist kein einleitendes elementarwerk, sondern führt durchaus an die letzten und schwierigsten probleme der lautlehre ..... An die allgemeine darstellung schliesst sich die sonderuntersuchung der englischen laute und lautverbindungen, die mit pädagogischem takt von den bedingungen des holländischen studenten ausgeht. Doch ich möchte gleich bemerken, dasz wir auch von unserer deutschen grundlage aus diese Kruisingasche phonetik ausgezeichnet verwerten können.

Herrigs Archiv, 1922. Dr. A. EHRENTREICH.

Bearbeiter von schulausgaben und lehrbüchern seien auf diese quelle nachdrücklichst aufmerksam gemacht, die überhaupt ... jedem, der sich eingehender mit phonetischen studien beschäftigt, unentbehrlich ist.

Neuere Sprachen, 1923. Dr. F. KARPF.

Für Deutsche, die nicht Holländisch wie ihre muttersprache kennen, ist diese methodisch nur zu lobende rücksichtnahme auf das Holländische natürlich keine erleichterung ... Nicht destoweniger ist eine fülle feiner einzelbeobachtungen für jeden Anglisten von wert.

Englische Studien 57 (1923). Prof. Dr. A. SCHRÖER.

KRUISINGA: An English Grammar for Dutch Students.

Vol. I. A Shorter Accidence and Syntax. Third edition. *f* 3.50.

Vol. II. Grammar and Idiom. Second Edition. *f* 3.50.

Voor meergevorderden, in het bizonder voor de akten L. O. en M. O. Deel II kan ook als supplement op de Primer gebruikt worden.

A Shorter Accidence and Syntax ist speziell für schulen bestimmt, gibt aber auch studierenden eine gute übersicht über den grammatischen stoff in knapper fassung. Prof. Dr. J. HOOPS, *Englische Sprachkunde (1923).*

In Collaboration with J. H. SCHUTT:

Lessons in English Grammar. *f* 3.25.

So sind allen kollegen die **Lessons in English Grammar** zu empfehlen, die für die einführung in die e. syntax neue oder viel vernachlässigte wege weisen, und die K. mit J. H. SCHUTT glänzend ausgearbeitet hat.

Der Mittelschullehrer, 1923, no. 2. Dr. F. KARPF.

Le principe excellent dont s'inspirent les auteurs de ces Leçons est que „si grammaires et manuels sont indispensables, le but d'un entraînement linguistique solide doit être de porter l'attention de l'étudiant sur les faits eux-mêmes de la langue vivante".

Revue Germanique, 1922. Prof. F. DELATTRE.

Selections from English Literature.

General Editor: Dr. E. Kruisinga.

1. GOLDSMITH, Selections. Ed. Kruisinga. *f* 1.60.

   Contents: Introduction — She Stoops to Conquer — The Deserted village — Essay XXII.

---

2. DICKENS, A Christmas Carol in Prose. Ed. Kruisinga. Second edition. Geïllustreerd. *f* 1.65. Geb. *f* 2.15.

---

3. DE QUINCEY, Selections. Ed. W. van Doorn. *f* 1.35.

   Contents: Biogr. Notice — De Q. as an author — De Q. on style: "On Language" — The Incognito, or Count Fitz Hum — Early Memorials of Grasmere — Our Ladies of Sorrow.

---

4. VAN DOORN, A Primrose Path. An Easy Introduction to English Poetry. *f* 1.50. Geb. *f* 1.90.

---

5. CHARLOTTE BRONTË, Jane Eyre. Abridged and with notes by A. A. E. S. Roukens. Geïllustreerd. *f* 1.75. Geb. *f* 2.15.

---

6. STEVENSON, The Strange Case of Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde. Ed. J. H. Schutt. Geïllustreerd. *f* 1.75. Geb. *f* 2.05.

---

7. GEORGE ELIOT, Silas Marner. Ed. A. Vechtman—Veth. Geïllustreerd *f* 1.95. Geb. *f* 2.30.

8/9. England in the Nineteenth Century. By Prof. Dr. P. Geyl and Dr. E. Kruisinga. Vol. I. (1835—1860). Geïllustreerd. *f* 1.95. Geb. *f* 2.30. Vol. II in bewerking.

---

10. THOMAS HARDY, Life's Little Ironies. Ed. J. H. Goedhart. (In bewerking).

WITHDRAWN
FROM STOCK
QMUL LIBRA